# Scalar <sup>®</sup> Distributed Library Controller <sup>™</sup> 2.7 Reference Guide

Scalar Distributor Library Controller Reference Guide, 6-00658-04, September 2007, Made in USA.

Quantum Corporation provides this publication "as is" without warranty of any kind, either express or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Quantum Corporation may revise this publication from time to time without notice.

#### **COPYRIGHT STATEMENT**

Copyright 2007 by Quantum Corporation. All rights reserved.

Your right to copy this manual is limited by copyright law. Making copies or adaptations without prior written authorization of Quantum Corporation is prohibited by law and constitutes a punishable violation of the law.

#### TRADEMARK STATEMENT

Quantum, DLT, DLTtape, ADIC, the Quantum logo, and the DLTtape logo are all registered trademarks of Quantum Corporation.

SDLT and Super DLTtape are trademarks of Quantum Corporation.

Published: September 2007

Document Number: 6-00658-04 Rev. A

# Table of Contents

| 1 About This Guide and Your Product | 1          |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| Explanation of Symbols and Notes    | . 1<br>. 1 |
| Getting More Information or Help    | . 2        |

| 2 Desc | ription |
|--------|---------|
|--------|---------|

| System Description              |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Logical Library Concepts        |  |
| PC System Requirements          |  |
| Redundant Solution Requirements |  |
| Tape Library Requirements    7  |  |
| Remote Browser Requirements     |  |
| Graphical User Interface        |  |
| Command Line Interface          |  |
| Service and Maintenance Alerts  |  |

# 3 Configuration

| Autostart Installation                      |   |
|---|---|
|   | 1 |
| Scalar DLC Management GUI                   | 1 |
| Resizing Windows and Panes                  | ) |
| Browser Pre-Installation                    | j |
| Launch the Management GUI from a Browser 14 |   |
| Launch the Management GUI as an Application | j |
| Configuration                               | j |
| Automatic Configuration                     | , |
| Manual Configuration                        | 5 |
| Advanced Configuration                      | ; |
| Additional Configuration                    |   |
| Viewing Tape Alerts.                        | ; |
| Operating the Tape Library Doors            | , |
| Managing the Database 27                    | , |
|   |   |

3

| 4 Management GUI    | 31 |
|---------------------|----|
| Main Menu Bar       |    |
| Screen Refresh Icon | 33 |
| Connection          |    |
| Wizards             | 34 |
| Extended Service    | 60 |
| Help                | 66 |
| GUI Tabs            | 67 |
| Tabs Structure      | 74 |
| GUI Log             | 75 |

# 5 Library Tab

| 5 Library Tab             | 77 |
|---------------------------|----|
| Library                   | 79 |
| Library Properties        | 79 |
| Library Diagnostics       | 80 |
| Cartridges                | 82 |
| Cartridge State           | 84 |
| Home Position             | 85 |
| Move Cartridge to Element | 86 |
| Drag and Drop Operations  | 87 |
| Pool                      | 88 |
| Mailbox                   | 90 |
| Drives                    | 91 |

# 6 Configuration Tab

| ogical Tab       | 93  |
|------------------|-----|
| l ihrany         | 97  |
| Dartition        | 101 |
|                  | 101 |
|                  | 103 |
|                  | 107 |
| Mailbox          | 110 |
| Storage Slot.    | 112 |
| Mailbox Slot     | 113 |
| Drive            | 115 |
| Create Library   | 120 |
| Assign Partition | 122 |
| Create Pool      | 123 |
| Create Mailbox   |     |
| Physical Tab     | 126 |
| Library          | 127 |
| Pohot            | 127 |
|                  | 104 |
|                  | 134 |
|                  | 136 |
|                  | 137 |
| Storage Slots    | 140 |
| Mailboxes        | 141 |
| Drives           | 142 |
| Create Partition | 143 |

| Scalar DLC Reference Guide |  |
|----------------------------|--|

Database Tool

9 Tools and Utilities

| Tools and Utilities | 221 |
|---------------------|-----|
| abase Tool          |     |
| Extended Mode       |     |
| Database Compact    |     |
| Database Restore    |     |

| Command Log      | )0 |
|------------------|----|
| Error Log        | )2 |
| gnostic Tab      | )3 |
|                  | )5 |
| erator Panel Tab | 11 |
| ster Tab         | 14 |
| MP Tab           | 15 |
| Agents           | 16 |
| Traps            | 17 |
| Security         | 19 |
|                  |    |

|          |    | V | eı | 1 | lS | aD |
|----------|----|---|----|---|----|----|
| <b>.</b> | ~~ | т | h  |   |    |    |

8 Service Tab

| Queue Tab       | 190 |
|-----------------|-----|
| Monitoring Tab  | 192 |
| Acknowledge Tab | 194 |
| History Tab     | 195 |
| Rules Tab       | 195 |

# 7 Evente Tab

| DAS1                      | 51 |
|---------------------------|----|
| DAS Client                | 51 |
| Create DAS Client         | 60 |
| SCSI 1                    | 63 |
| SCSI Client               | 64 |
| Create SCSI Client        | 71 |
| ROBAR                     | 72 |
| ROBAR Client              | 74 |
| Create ROBAR Client       | 76 |
| CSI Target Tab            | 78 |
| Port                      | 80 |
| Target                    | 82 |
| Logical Unit Number (LUN) | 84 |
| Create Target             | 85 |
| Create LUN                | 86 |

|  |  | 225 |
|--|--|-----|
|  |  | 228 |

#### 199

vi

| SCSI Target Port Tool         | 33 |
|-------------------------------|----|
| Cluster Configurator Tool     | 35 |
| Problem Report Tool           | 36 |
| Log Viewer Utility            | 37 |
| Trace Manager Utility         | 12 |
| Trace Viewer Utility          | 16 |
| Scalar DLC Software Licensing | 18 |
| Standard License.             | 18 |
| Cluster License               | 53 |

# A Application Notes

| ssary  | 55 |
|--|----|
| nent Addressing                              | 60 |
| Translating HCC Coordinates for ROBAR HACC 2 | 61 |
| lication Notes.                              | 63 |
| Media Types                                  | 63 |
| Storage Types                                | 64 |
| Mailbox Types                                | 65 |
| Drive Types                                  | 66 |
| Error Codes                                  | 67 |

# **B DAS Guide**

| System Description           |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Starting DAS Client Software |     |
| Commands Overview            |     |
| Media Management             | 278 |
| DAS Management               | 278 |
| Client Management            |     |
| Scratch Pool Management      |     |
| Define and Reserve           | 279 |
| DAS Commands                 |     |

# C SCSI Guide

| Installation and Configuration | . 285 |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| General Characteristics        | . 286 |
| SCSI Bus                       | . 287 |
| SCSI Communications            | . 288 |
| SCSI Message System            | . 289 |
| SCSI Commands                  | . 290 |
| SCSI Operations                | . 292 |

285

255

# D ROBAR Guide

# Installation and Configuration295ROBAR Commands296ROBAR Command Format298Command Header298Command Structure299ROBAR Coordinates301

# Figures

| Figure 1  | Client Connection                              | 4  |
|-----------|--|----|
| Figure 2  | Physical Libraries connected to the Scalar DLC | 4  |
| Figure 3  | Partitions and Logical Libraries               | 5  |
| Figure 4  | Clients and Logical Libraries                  | 5  |
| Figure 5  | About Scalar DLC                               | 10 |
| Figure 6  | Scalar DLC Home Page                           | 12 |
| Figure 7  | Tools and Utilities Page                       | 13 |
| Figure 8  | Scalar DLC GUI Logon Dialog                    | 14 |
| Figure 9  | Host Connection Window                         | 15 |
| Figure 10 | Configuration Window                           | 16 |
| Figure 11 | Management GUI                                 | 32 |
| Figure 12 | Main Menu Bar                                  | 32 |
| Figure 13 | Select Physical Library                        | 35 |
| Figure 14 | Select Logical Library                         | 35 |
| Figure 15 | Select Configuration Method                    | 36 |
| Figure 16 | Select Media                                   | 37 |
| Figure 17 | Select Library Prototype                       | 37 |
| Figure 18 | Select Mailbox                                 | 38 |
| Figure 19 | Select Client                                  | 38 |
| Figure 20 | Configuration Summary                          | 39 |
| Figure 21 | Configuration Complete                         | 40 |
| Figure 22 | Partitions Contained                           | 40 |
| Figure 23 | Partitions Not Contained                       | 41 |
| Figure 24 | Partition List                                 | 41 |

| Figure 25 | Partitions Summary 42                 | 2 |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|---|
| Figure 26 | Ticket Registration                   | 3 |
| Figure 27 | Ticket Priority and Description       | 3 |
| Figure 28 | Ticket Category 44                    | 4 |
| Figure 29 | Ticket Device, Library, and Client 45 | 5 |
| Figure 30 | Ticket Service Code                   | 3 |
| Figure 31 | Ticket Summary                        | 7 |
| Figure 32 | Rule Name                             | 2 |
| Figure 33 | Rule Event                            | 2 |
| Figure 34 | Rule Event Location                   | 3 |
| Figure 35 | Rule Notification Sent Dialog 53      | 3 |
| Figure 36 | Rule Notification Receiver            | 4 |
| Figure 37 | Rule Email Destination                | 5 |
| Figure 38 | Rule Email                            | 3 |
| Figure 39 | Rule Summary                          | 3 |
| Figure 40 | Select Physical Library               | 7 |
| Figure 41 | Activate Cleaning                     | 3 |
| Figure 42 | Slot Count                            | 3 |
| Figure 43 | Create Cleaning Partitions            | 9 |
| Figure 44 | Waiting Message                       | 9 |
| Figure 45 | Create Cleaning Partitions Finish 59  | 9 |
| Figure 46 | Registration Information              | C |
| Figure 47 | Connect to RMU                        | 1 |
| Figure 48 | View Log: standard mode               | 2 |
| Figure 49 | View Log: advanced mode               | 4 |
| Figure 50 | Log Message Details                   | 5 |
| Figure 51 | Scalar DLC Software Version Code 66   | 3 |
| Figure 52 | GUI Tabs: Working Areas               | 7 |
| Figure 53 | GUI Log                               | 5 |
| Figure 54 | Library Controller                    | 3 |
| Figure 55 | Library Properties                    | 9 |

| Figure 56 | Library Diagnostics                    |
|-----------|--|
| Figure 57 | Stop Current Test                      |
| Figure 58 | Random Move: Select Media Type    81   |
| Figure 59 | Random Mount: Select Media Type    82  |
| Figure 60 | Cartridges                             |
| Figure 61 | Multiple Mailbox Selection             |
| Figure 62 | Move Cartridge to Destination          |
| Figure 63 | Pool                                   |
| Figure 64 | Mailbox                                |
| Figure 65 | Drives                                 |
| Figure 66 | Logical Tab                            |
| Figure 67 | Tape Alert         95                  |
| Figure 68 | Report Criteria                        |
| Figure 69 | Logical Library Properties             |
| Figure 70 | Logical Library Resources              |
| Figure 71 | Logical Library Statistics             |
| Figure 72 | Logical Partition                      |
| Figure 73 | Inventory Elements Range               |
| Figure 74 | Normal Cartridge                       |
| Figure 75 | Foreign Cartridge                      |
| Figure 76 | Tape Alert         106                 |
| Figure 77 | Report Criteria                        |
| Figure 78 | Pool                                   |
| Figure 79 | Assign/Unassign Cartridges to Pool 109 |
| Figure 80 | Mailbox                                |
| Figure 81 | Assign/Unassign Slots to Mailbox 111   |
| Figure 82 | Storage Slot                           |
| Figure 83 | Mailbox Slot                           |
| Figure 84 | Drive Properties                       |
| Figure 85 | Drive Statistics                       |
| Figure 86 | Tape Alert         119                 |

| Figure 87  | Report Criteria                  | 20 |
|------------|----------------------------------|----|
| Figure 88  | Logical Library Creation         | 21 |
| Figure 89  | Partition Assign                 | 22 |
| Figure 90  | Pool Creation                    | 23 |
| Figure 91  | Mailbox Creation                 | 25 |
| Figure 92  | Physical Controller              | 26 |
| Figure 93  | Physical Library Properties      | 27 |
| Figure 94  | Media Rules                      | 29 |
| Figure 95  | Media Rule Creation              | 30 |
| Figure 96  | Apply Media Rule                 | 31 |
| Figure 97  | Physical Library Statistics      | 31 |
| Figure 98  | Robot Online                     | 32 |
| Figure 99  | Robot Offline                    | 33 |
| Figure 100 | Auto Clean Cartridges Pane 1     | 34 |
| Figure 101 | Auto Clean Cartridges Properties | 35 |
| Figure 102 | Physical Partition               | 36 |
| Figure 103 | Offline Cartridges               | 38 |
| Figure 104 | Offline Cartridge                | 39 |
| Figure 105 | Physical Storage Slots 1         | 40 |
| Figure 106 | Physical Mailboxes               | 41 |
| Figure 107 | Physical Drives                  | 42 |
| Figure 108 | Partition Creation               | 43 |
| Figure 109 | User Controller                  | 46 |
| Figure 110 | User 14                          | 47 |
| Figure 111 | User Creation                    | 49 |
| Figure 112 | DAS Interface Pane               | 51 |
| Figure 113 | DAS Client Properties            | 52 |
| Figure 114 | DAS Client Drives                | 55 |
| Figure 115 | Define Drives                    | 56 |
| Figure 116 | DAS Client Volsers               | 57 |
| Figure 117 | Reserve/Define Volser Range      | 58 |

| Figure 118 | DAS Client Aliasing             | 159 |
|------------|---------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 119 | DAS Client Creation             | 160 |
| Figure 120 | SCSI Pane                       | 163 |
| Figure 121 | SCSI Client Properties          | 164 |
| Figure 122 | SCSI Client Mode                | 166 |
| Figure 123 | SCSI Client Drives              | 168 |
| Figure 124 | SCSI Client I/E Slots           | 169 |
| Figure 125 | SCSI Client Storages            | 170 |
| Figure 126 | SCSI Client Creation Properties | 171 |
| Figure 127 | ROBAR Interface Pane            | 172 |
| Figure 128 | ROBAR Client Properties         | 174 |
| Figure 129 | ROBAR Client Creation           | 176 |
| Figure 130 | Port: SCSI                      | 180 |
| Figure 131 | Port: Fibre Channel             | 181 |
| Figure 132 | SCSI Target                     | 182 |
| Figure 133 | SCSI LUN                        | 184 |
| Figure 134 | SCSI Target Creation            | 185 |
| Figure 135 | SCSI LUN Creation               | 186 |
| Figure 136 | Queue Tab                       | 190 |
| Figure 137 | Monitoring Tab                  | 192 |
| Figure 138 | Acknowledge Tab                 | 194 |
| Figure 139 | History Tab                     | 195 |
| Figure 140 | Rules Tab                       | 196 |
| Figure 141 | Command Log                     | 200 |
| Figure 142 | Email Data                      | 201 |
| Figure 143 | Error Log                       | 202 |
| Figure 144 | Diagnostic Tab                  | 203 |
| Figure 145 | Diagnostic Description          | 204 |
| Figure 146 | Tickets Tab                     | 205 |
| Figure 147 | Start Repair                    | 207 |
| Figure 148 | Repair                          | 208 |

| Figure 149 | Fixed Problem Confirmation                            | 209 |
|------------|---|-----|
| Figure 150 | Not Fixed Problem Confirmation                        | 209 |
| Figure 151 | Repair History  | 210 |
| Figure 152 | Operator Panel Tab for the Scalar 10K                 | 211 |
| Figure 153 | Operator Panel Tab for the Scalar 1000                | 213 |
| Figure 154 | Cluster Tab   | 214 |
| Figure 155 | SNMP Agents   | 216 |
| Figure 156 | SNMP Traps  | 217 |
| Figure 157 | SNMP Service Configuration: Trap Destination          | 218 |
| Figure 158 | SNMP Security   | 219 |
| Figure 159 | SNMP Service Configuration: Security                  | 220 |
| Figure 160 | Log On Dialog   | 222 |
| Figure 161 | Database Backup                                       | 223 |
| Figure 162 | Backup Schedule Dialog                                | 224 |
| Figure 163 | Database Extended Mode Dialog                         | 225 |
| Figure 164 | Backup Log Schedule Dialog                            | 226 |
| Figure 165 | Database Compact Dialog                               | 228 |
| Figure 166 | Compact Schedule Dialog                               | 229 |
| Figure 167 | Database Restore Dialog (by backup)                   | 230 |
| Figure 168 | Database Restore Dialog (restore from device)         | 231 |
| Figure 169 | Database Save Dialog                                  | 232 |
| Figure 170 | SCSI Target Port Tool                                 | 233 |
| Figure 171 | Advanced Port Settings                                | 234 |
| Figure 172 | Cluster Configuration Utility: no configuration       | 235 |
| Figure 173 | Cluster Configuration Utility: configuration complete | 235 |
| Figure 174 | Problem Report Tool                                   | 236 |
| Figure 175 | Log Viewer Main Window                                | 237 |
| Figure 176 | Log Viewer: Command Tracking                          | 238 |
| Figure 177 | View Event  | 238 |
| Figure 178 | Result Description                                    | 240 |
| Figure 179 | Search  | 240 |

| Figure 180 | Goto Event                                    |
|------------|---|
| Figure 181 | Logging Options                               |
| Figure 182 | Filtering Options                             |
| Figure 183 | Viewing Options                               |
| Figure 184 | Trace Manager Main Window 242                 |
| Figure 185 | Group Level                                   |
| Figure 186 | Class Level                                   |
| Figure 187 | Add Object                                    |
| Figure 188 | Add Existing Object                           |
| Figure 189 | Object Level                                  |
| Figure 190 | Start Tracing                                 |
| Figure 191 | Tracing Options                               |
| Figure 192 | Trace Viewer Main Window 246                  |
| Figure 193 | View Trace Record                             |
| Figure 194 | Licensing Dialog 248                          |
| Figure 195 | About License                                 |
| Figure 196 | License Request File                          |
| Figure 197 | Licensing Review                              |
| Figure 198 | Send License via Email 251                    |
| Figure 199 | Licensing Before Installation 251             |
| Figure 200 | Authorization String                          |
| Figure 201 | Time-based License                            |
| Figure 202 | Finishing License                             |
| Figure 203 | Element Addressing (single-aisle library) 260 |
| Figure 204 | Element Addressing (dual-aisle library) 261   |

# Tables

| Table 1  | SCSI and Fibre Channel Adapters                        | 3 |
|----------|--|---|
| Table 2  | Required Firmware Version                              | 7 |
| Table 3  | Scalar DLC Service State                               | ) |
| Table 4  | Scalar DLC Home Page Name 11                           | 1 |
| Table 5  | Management GUI Default Users 14                        | 1 |
| Table 6  | Object name limitations                                | 3 |
| Table 7  | Wizard Buttons   | 1 |
| Table 8  | Event Specification                                    | 7 |
| Table 9  | Tree Objects   | 3 |
| Table 10 | Logical Library States                                 | ) |
| Table 11 | Physical Library States                                | ) |
| Table 12 | Robot States   | ) |
| Table 13 | Partition Class and State                              | 1 |
| Table 14 | Storage Slots  | 1 |
| Table 15 | Mailbox Slots  | 2 |
| Table 16 | Drive Slots  | 3 |
| Table 17 | Element Properties: Icons                              | 3 |
| Table 18 | Operational Buttons                                    | 1 |
| Table 19 | Cartridge States                                       | 1 |
| Table 20 | User Access Level                                      | 1 |
| Table 21 | User Rights  | 5 |
| Table 22 | SCSI Target Icons                                      | 3 |
| Table 23 | SCSI and Fibre Channel Adapter Target-LUN Settings 179 | 9 |
| Table 24 | Event Classes  | 2 |

| Table 25 | Event Data 1                               | 93  |
|----------|--|-----|
| Table 26 | Database Archive                           | 32  |
| Table 27 | Log Viewer Operations 2                    | 39  |
| Table 28 | Terms 2                                    | :55 |
| Table 29 | Element Mapping (Single-aisle libraries) 2 | :60 |
| Table 30 | Element Mapping (Dual-aisle libraries) 2   | 61  |
| Table 31 | ROBAR Client - Re-mapping 2                | :62 |
| Table 32 | Media Types 2                              | 63  |
| Table 33 | Storage Types 2                            | 64  |
| Table 34 | Mailbox Types 2                            | 65  |
| Table 35 | Drive Types 2                              | :66 |
| Table 36 | Error Codes 2                              | :67 |
| Table 37 | Usage of Define and Reserve 2              | 79  |
| Table 38 | Media Management 2                         | 81  |
| Table 39 | DAS Management 2                           | 82  |
| Table 40 | Client Management 2                        | 83  |
| Table 41 | Scratch Management 2                       | 83  |
| Table 42 | ROBAR Commands 2                           | :96 |
| Table 43 | Command Header format 2                    | 98  |
| Table 44 | Command format                             | 99  |
| Table 45 | ROBAR Coordinates                          | 01  |

# About This Guide and Your Product

This manual contains reference information and instructions for configuring and operating the Scalar Distributed Library Controller (Scalar DLC) software. This guide is intended for customers and administrators who use the Scalar DLC software.

## Explanation of Symbols and Notes

The following symbols appear throughout this document to highlight important information.



# INDICATES A POTENTIALLY HAZARDOUS SITUATION WHICH, IF NOT AVOIDED, COULD RESULT IN DEATH OR BODILY INJURY.

Indicates a situation that may cause possible damage to equipment, loss of data, or interference with other equipment.

W Note Indicates important information that helps you make better use of your system.

### Other Documents You Might Need

The following documents are also available for this product. These documents can be found on the product

CD or at www.quantum.com/support:

- Scalar DLC Installation Guide
- Scalar DLC Release Notes (6-00335-xx)
- DAS Administration Guide (6-00345-xx)
- DAS/ACI Interfacing Guide (6-00346-xx)
- Scalar 10K SCSI Reference Guide
- Scalar 1000 SCSI Reference Guide

- SCSI Primary Commands 2 (SPC-2)
- SCSI Primary Commands 3 (SPC-3)
- ROBAR Interfacing Guide
- Scalar 10K Operator Guide
- Scalar 1000 Operator Guide
- RMU Reference Guide

# Getting More Information or Help

More information about this product is available on the Service and Support website at <u>www.quantum.com/support</u>. The website contains a collection of information, including answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs). You can also access software, firmware, and drivers through this site.

For further assistance, or if training is desired, contact Quantum:

| Global Call Handling                | 1-800-284-5101           |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| For additional contact information: | www.quantum.com/support  |
| To open a Service Request:          | www.quantum.com/esupport |



This chapter provides an overview of the Scalar DLC software that supports the Scalar 10K (single- and dual-aisle) tape library.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- System Description on page 3
- Graphical User Interface on page 8
- <u>Command Line Interface</u> on page 8
- <u>Service and Maintenance Alerts</u> on page 8

#### System Description

The Scalar DLC software runs as a service under Windows 2000/2003. It serves as a centralized library management tool that simplifies and automates the tracking and management of all system resources for optimal performance and maximum availability. The Scalar DLC software provides network and System Administrators with a Java-based interface that allows library monitoring from anywhere on the Web.

W Note If a firewall is being used, outside access by web browsers might be denied.

The Scalar DLC also allows administrators to select parameters that define which library events provide notifications to customers and Quantum Service via email and, sometimes, the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) alerts.

The main working tool of the Scalar DLC software is the Management GUI. Refer to <u>Graphical User</u> <u>Interface on page 8</u>. This tool executes all the actions of management and configuration.

The Scalar DLC provides the connectivity between the library and the customer (client). The connection type depends on client configuration. See <u>Figure 1 on page 4</u>.



The Scalar tape libraries are connected to the Scalar DLC software host via the SCSI bus or the Fibre Channel cable. See <u>Figure 2</u>.





For each tape library found during **Scan SCSI Bus** operation, the Scalar DLC software creates an object called *physical library*. This object represents all aspects of the real tape device.

#### Logical Library Concepts

To provide clients with a flexible way of sharing common resources (*physical library*), the Scalar DLC uses virtual objects called *logical libraries* to represent the real device for the client. The Management GUI is used to create and configure these logical libraries. The connection between the logical library and the device is implemented by means of the partitioning features that are unique to the Scalar DLC software. The partitioning operation creates a number of element ranges called *partitions* that are used by the physical library. These partitions are then assigned to the logical libraries (see Figure 3 on page 5) so that the client who uses a certain logical library can access the appropriate part of the physical library. This feature is useful when clients use a single physical library while the client has access to only a certain resource. The logical library represents these resources, and the assigned partitions provide a connection between the logical library and its physical equivalent.

This logical library concept is based on a partition containing the continuous range of elements of a single type (for example, storage) and media domain (for example, DLT). The partitions cannot overlap; however, a single partition can be assigned to two or more logical libraries. In that case, two logical libraries will have a shared area, and the clients of the first library can access this area as well as the clients of the second library.



Sharing the single partition between two or more logical libraries may cause access problems, thus it recommended you use this feature with caution.

Note The partition cannot contain both storage tower and storage shelf elements, even if they consist of the identical storage slots (for example, Generic DLT). This means for the single-media library with a storage tower (for example, Scalar 10K), no less than two storage partitions should be created in order to cover its storage area completely; the first partition will cover the tower, and the second will cover the linear storage (storage shelves).





Two or more clients either of the same type (for example, DAS-based) or of different types (for example, DAS-based and ROBAR-based) may use a single logical library. This means that they have rights to use common resources that are part of this library (cartridges, drives, and so forth). See <u>Figure 4</u>.

Figure 4 Clients and Logical Libraries

Scalar DLC host Library1 Continent1 Continent2 Library2 Continent3

#### PC System Requirements

The minimum PC system hardware requirements are based on Microsoft PC 2000 System Design Guide Specifications. The following list summarizes the Scalar DLC system requirements:

Required:

- 800 MHZ or faster Inter Pentium <sup>TM</sup> or equivalent CPU (minimum 4 free PCI slots in chassis)
- 256K L2 Cache
- 256 MB RAM
- Dual matched Hard Drives (10GB or more)
- CD RW
- 3.5" Diskette Drive

- 15" or greater SVGA Display
- NT/2000 compliant SCSI adapter
- Standard keyboard and mouse
- Windows 2000 SP4 or Windows 2003 pre-installed

#### Optional:

- SCSI target HBA LSI 20860, LSI 8751D, and/or LSI 8951U
- Fibre Channel target HBA QLogic 2200F-33 and/or QLogic 23xxF

Refer to Table 1 for a description of SCSI and Fibre Channel adapters that can be used in the system.

| Adapter               | Туре          | Connection (external)                 | Max cable length, m |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| LSI 20860             | SCSI          | 50-pin high density SE                | 5                   |
| LSI 8751D             | SCSI          | 68-pin high density HVD               | 25                  |
| LSI 8951U             | SCSI          | 68-pin very high density LVD/SE       | 12(LVD), 5(SE)      |
| QLA 2200              | Fibre Channel | SC duplex multi-mode                  | -                   |
| QLA 23xx <sup>a</sup> | Fibre Channel | Small form factor multi-mode optic LC | -                   |
| Local <sup>b</sup>    | SCSI          | -                                     | -                   |

a. 'xx' means 00, 10, 40, and 42. No other models are currently supported.

b. The driver is designed to execute the SCSI backup applications right on the Scalar DLC server PC. No SCSI/FC hardware is required.

### **Redundant Solution Requirements**

The Scalar DLC Redundant (failover) solution is provided using the Microsoft Cluster service. The user has a shared disk with the Scalar DLC database and two hosts with the installed components of Scalar DLC software; for redundancy reasons, one host is online and the other is offline. If an error occurs and the online host goes offline, the other host turns online immediately, thus it is a seamless transition. The problem can be resolved without stopping the Scalar DLC software.

The Scalar DLC Redundant solution is based on Microsoft Cluster service. The special requirements are:

- Two PCs, each meeting the standards described in <u>PC System Requirements on page 5</u>.
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server or Windows 2003 Server installed on each PC.
- Microsoft Cluster Service installed on each PC.
- For each PC, there should be a minimum of two disk controllers. The two disk controllers do not need to be the same type. For example, using on-board IDE and SCSI is acceptable.
- At least one external (shared) RAID disk. The disk partition should have NTFS formatting.
- RAID adapter (on each PC) to access a shared disk.



The Scalar DLC failover solution in a redundant configuration requires the Windows 2000 Advanced Server or Windows 2003 Server operating system. By default, this system is configured without password protection for network access. It is recommended that companies using this product use all customary security procedures to protect Scalar DLC servers from external threats.

For the details about Scalar DLC Redundant solution, refer to the Scalar DLC Installation Guide.

## Tape Library Requirements

The library firmware and hardware requirements are described in this topic.

#### **Operating mode**

The Scalar 10K library supports only native mode.

For the Scalar 10K DA (dual-aisle) library:

- Both medium changers (aisles) must run in *native* mode.
- Both medium changers (aisles) must operate in non-compressed mode.
- At the time of the first configuration, both medium changers (aisles) must be in the *online* state. *Ready* state is not required.



The Scalar DLC software may not work properly if the tape library operates in an unsupported mode.

Additionally, for the libraries with towers (Scalar 10K and Scalar 10K DA), at the time of the first configuration, all towers (if any) must be in the *library* (*online*) state.

#### **Firmware Version**

Make certain the firmware version of each tape library meets the Scalar DLC requirements (Table 2).

 Table 2
 Required Firmware Version

| Tape Library Required Firmware |                                 | Comment |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------|
| Scalar 10K                     | 320A or later                   |         |
| Scalar 10K DA                  | 320A or later (for both robots) |         |

#### **Remote Browser Requirements**

The Scalar DLC Management GUI takes advantage of Java 2 features that are not supported by all browsers. The browser updates can be initiated from the Scalar DLC software splash page by selecting the *Tools and Utilities* tab. Refer to Figure 7 on page 13 and Browser Pre-Installation on page 10.

#### Graphical User Interface

The Scalar DLC software GUI (also called Management GUI) is based on web browser technology that guarantees a consistent user interface across all UNIX and Windows platforms. The GUI is available to users, system administrators, and customer engineers. The Management GUI consists of the following components:

- Main Menu bar
- GUI Tabs
  - Library tab
  - Configuration tab
  - Events tab
  - Service tab
- GUI Log

## **Command Line Interface**

The command line interface is supported by the DAS version 3.12 SP2 application. The DAS interface supports numerous third party software applications.

Additional information about DAS is contained on this CD-ROM in the DAS Administration Guide document.

## Service and Maintenance Alerts

The Scalar DLC software monitors all system resources and automatically notifies the Global Call Center whenever a service call is required. The information supplied includes:

- Error detection
- Event logging and tracing
- Error recovery

Notification is generated by means of applications in the following list:

- GUI Messenger
- Email Home
- Call Home
- SNMP

# 3



This chapter provides information about logical configuration of the Scalar DLC system for the customer.



Local administrator rights are required to install the Scalar DLC software and all required components.

The sections are:

- <u>Autostart Installation</u> on page 9
- Scalar DLC Management GUI on page 9
- Configuration on page 16

#### Autostart Installation

To launch the autostart program, insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. If the autostart program does not launch, use the *Run* option from the **Start** button on the task bar to execute the *autorun.exe* program.

For a description of the installation process, refer to Scalar DLC Installation Guide.

Note The Adobe Acrobat Reader version 4.0 or later is required to view the documentation in PDF format. Download the most recent version of the software from the Adobe Web site at <a href="http://www.adobe.com">http://www.adobe.com</a>.

### Scalar DLC Management GUI

The Scalar DLC Management GUI is started by either the browser-launched applet or the supervisory desktop application. Before launching the GUI, determine that the Scalar DLC service is running.

😻 Note

Before starting the SDLC Management GUI, verify that the display resolution setting is 800 x 600 pixels or higher and the display color setting is more than 256 colors

To check the service state (refer to <u>Table 3</u> on page 10), examine either the **Control Panel > Services** or the task bar.

#### Table 3 Scalar DLC Service State

| Task Icon   | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>1</b> 15 | The Scalar DLC supervisor service is <i>stopped</i> ( <i>Offline</i> for the Scalar DLC Cluster solution). Double click the icon to display Figure 5. |
| <b>6</b> 55 | The Scalar DLC supervisor service is <i>started</i> ( <i>Online</i> for the Scalar DLC Cluster solution). Double click the icon to display Figure 5.  |
| <b>6</b> 55 | The Scalar DLC supervisor service is either <i>starting</i> or <i>stopping</i> ( <i>turning online/offline</i> for the Scalar DLC failover solution). |

Figure 5 About Scalar DLC



The *About* dialog shows the version of installed Scalar DLC software and its internal components. All Scalar DLC hot fixes and service packs (if any) are enlisted here, too.

#### **Resizing Windows and Panes**

Some Management GUI panes contain data that cannot fit into the standard screen string (for example, long names of SCSI Adapter objects, or partitions), or a long list of properties that would be useful to see all in one screen without scrolling. Both the browser-based and application-based Management GUI allow you to modify the size of the main Scalar DLC window screen as well as to resize some internal Scalar DLC panes.

W Note To avoid display problems, do not reduce the Scalar DLC screen below its original size.

#### **Browser Pre-Installation**

To take full advantage of the Scalar DLC Management GUI, both Netscape Navigator  $^{\text{TM}}$  and Microsoft Internet Explorer  $^{\text{TM}}$  browsers must be updated by installing the Java Plug-in. For more information, see <u>Java</u> <u>Plug-In</u> on page 14.

For a remote browser, the update is required before the browser can launch the Scalar DLC software. For a local browser, the update could be executed manually; but it is best practice to install the browser(s) before launching the Scalar DLC software installation. The update steps should be executed by either a system administrator or an expert PC user.

Note The Internet Explorer browser is a required component for the Scalar DLC software installation. If Internet Explorer is not present, the Scalar DLC CD autorun program installs Internet Explorer as a part of the Scalar DLC Installation process. No pre-installation is required for a complete installation.

Start the update procedure by entering the Host name location of the Scalar DLC software server on the browser address line (for example, **http://computer**). This establishes a connection with the Scalar DLC software home page. Refer to <u>Table 4</u> and <u>Figure 6</u> on page 12.



If the Scalar DLC software is installed with SSL support (refer to the *Scalar DLC Installation Guide*), always use https:// instead of http://.

| Name / ID           | Value (example only) | Explanation   |
|---------------------|----------------------|---|
| DNS host<br>name    | computer             | The host network name used in DNS.  |
| Cluster name        | sdlccluster          | The cluster virtual name (redundant solution only), refer to the Scalar DLC Installation Guide.               |
| DNS address         | 192.168.1.14         | The host network IP address, refer to the Scalar DLC Installation Guide.                                      |
| Cluster DNS address | 192.168.1.10         | The virtual cluster IP address (redundant solution only), refer to the <i>Scalar DLC Installation Guide</i> . |

Table 4Scalar DLC Home Page Name

| Figure 6                       | Scalar DLC Home Page   |                |
|--------------------------------|--|----------------|
| Scalar DLC                     | Autorun - Microsoft Internet Explorer  |                |
| <u> </u>                       | <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp   | æ              |
| After<br>the J<br>netw<br>minu | Launch Java Interface<br>pressing this button please wait for<br>ava GUI to appear. Depending on the<br>ork connection this can take up to 2<br>tes<br>Tools and Utilities |                |
|                                |  | 1.800.336.1233 |

The only required component for the browser update is a Java Plug-in. Click the **Launch Java Interface** button when it appears. Refer to <u>Java Plug-In</u> on page 14 for the description of update process.

Selecting the **Tools and Utilities** tab displays the Tools and Utilities pane (see Figure 7 on page 13).

#### Figure 7 Tools and Utilities Page

| 🖉 Scalar DLC | Autorun - Micros   | oft Interne   | t Explorer                                       |                  |
|--------------|--|---|--|------------------|
| <u> </u>     | ⊻iew F <u>a</u> vorites  | <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> e  | lp   | 10               |
| adic         | Installing f<br>GUI on a<br>How to install<br>• html<br>Install the Java<br>• Install<br>Install the PkZi<br>• Install<br>Download MS<br>• Download<br>Download Nets<br>• Download | the Mar<br>Remote<br>Applicat<br>p2.5<br>ading Br<br>Internet E | agement<br>System<br>on<br>owsers<br>xplorer 5.5 |                  |
|              |  |   |  | 💯 1.800.336.1233 |

The latest required versions of both Netscape Navigator <sup>™</sup> and Internet Explorer <sup>™</sup> browsers can be downloaded from this page.



Only download the browser if your browser version does not meet the current version requirements. To view the browser requirements, go to Help > About.

The Scalar DLC Management GUI, which is designed to launch the Scalar DLC software application from a remote host, can be downloaded also. The installation steps of the Scalar DLC Management GUI are described on this page as well.

#### **Remote Management GUI**

The Java-based GUI software is used as a Scalar DLC management tool. It is always installed on the Scalar DLC server, however the same software can be downloaded from server and launched from a remote host as well.

From the Tools and Utilities page (see Figure 7) click on "Install Java Application" and download the zip archive containing all files for the remote Management GUI. The "How to install" link contains the instructions on how to install the package and then launch the application.

Also download and install the Java Plug-In, as described in <u>Java Plug-In</u> on page 14.

#### Java Plug-In

The Scalar DLC Management GUI requires the Java 2 plug-in 1.5.0\_10 release. Installing the plug-in enables direct Java 2 applets to run while using Sun's JRE (Java Remote Environment). Therefore, the *j2re-1\_5\_0\_10-windows-i586-p.exe* file must be executed so that files are added to a specific directory.

Begin the procedure by selecting the hyperlink associated with the Java Plug-in. Save the file to a temporary directory and then launch it.

The same update procedure should be executed when the Management GUI is used with the remote Scalar DLC host.

Note The Java plug-in patch is also required for both the Microsoft Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator browsers if you want to use the applet-based GUI (refer to <u>Launch</u> the Management GUI from a Browser on page 14) rather than application-based (<u>Launch the Management GUI as an Application</u> on page 15).

However, the Internet Explorer browser installs the Java plug-in patch automatically when the browser-based Management GUI is launched for the first time.

You must update the Netscape Navigator browser manually.

#### Launch the Management GUI from a Browser

Enter the Hostname location of the Scalar DLC server on the browser. This procedure establishes a connection with the Scalar DLC home page. See <u>Figure 6</u> on page 12.

Note Due to security restrictions, disk write operations (upload) are not allowed from the browser-launched Scalar DLC Management GUI.

When the Scalar DLC home page appears, press the **Launch Java Interface** button. The Scalar DLC Logon dialog window appears (see Figure 8).

Figure 8 Scalar DLC GUI Logon Dialog

| laiog            |        |   |
|------------------|--------|---|
| Scalar DLC Logon |        | X |
|                  |        |   |
| User name        |        |   |
|                  |        |   |
| Password         |        |   |
|                  |        |   |
|                  |        |   |
| Ok               | Cancel |   |
|                  |        |   |
|                  |        |   |

The default login settings are shown in Table 5.

#### Table 5 Management GUI Default Users

| Default user name | Default password | Access level           |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| admin             | password         | Admin (administrator)  |
| atac              | guardian         | CE (customer engineer) |



Because of security reasons it is strongly recommended to change the default admin and CE passwords after the configuration is complete.

For the details on user access level and settings refer to Users Tab on page 144.

#### **Firewall and Proxy Issues**

If the Scalar DLC Management GUI starts, but can not connect to the Scalar DLC server, a firewall or proxy server could be present between the browser and the Scalar DLC server. The remote methods invocation transport layer normally attempts to open a direct socket connection to the host on the Internet. However, many intranets have firewalls or proxies that do not allow this procedure.

The Management GUI cannot communicate with the Scalar DLC software server through a firewall if port 1099 is not open. Connections also are easier to make if the browser is not configured to use a proxy. If necessary, contact the System Administrator to resolve any connectivity issues.

#### Launch the Management GUI as an Application

From the Windows desktop, launch the Scalar DLC Manager shortcut (**Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC Manager**, or double-click on the **Scalar DLC Manager** desktop icon) to enable the host connection window (see <u>Figure 9</u>).

The operation can be executed either from local host where the Scalar DLC software is installed or from a remote host after installing the Management GUI, as described in <u>Remote Management GUI</u> on page 13.

Figure 9 Host Connection Window

| 🌺 Input |                              | × |
|---------|------------------------------|---|
| 2       | Enter hostname:<br>OK Cancel |   |

Enter the Scalar DLC hostname in the dialog window. Then the Scalar DLC log on dialog appears. See <u>Figure 8</u> on page 14.

Note Disk write operations (upload, download) are allowed from the application-based Scalar DLC Management GUI.

## Configuration

When a user is logged into the Management GUI and no previously configured physical library has been found, a configuration selection pane opens automatically (see <u>Figure 10</u>); if the configuration has been performed, this pane will not appear. Choose the configuration method.

#### Figure 10 Configuration Window



Either accept the default configuration or select the desired configuration method.

- <u>Automatic Configuration</u> on page 17 is recommended for the first-time users that have no experience in configuring the Scalar DLC system.
- Wizard-based <u>Manual Configuration</u> on page 18 is recommended for the users with basic knowledge about the configuration of the Scalar DLC.
- <u>Advanced Configuration</u> on page 18 is designed for the advanced users that have enough experience to perform all configuration manually.
- After the basic configuration is finished, an Additional Configuration on page 24 could be performed.

Some client interfaces have certain limitations concerning the names of used objects, for example, some DAS-based applications do not recognize the mailbox name for **Insert** command other than **Ixx** (xx means any two alphanumeric characters). To avoid such issues, be sure that the objects created and configured by means of the Scalar DLC Management GUI are named as shown in the <u>Table 6</u>.

Note Some customer (client) applications do understand the capitalization difference (A and a), the others do not. It is recommended that you use the common alpha-model (either capitals or small letters in all object names).

Avoid using spaces (" "), underscores ("\_"), hyphens ("-") and other symbols in the object names. Even when the Scalar DLC Management GUI permits this, the client application may not recognize the appropriate object.

| Object          | GUI Manager                  | DAS / ACI      | ROBAR            | SCSI |
|-----------------|------------------------------|----------------|------------------|------|
| Host            | 40 an <sup>a</sup> , a first | 40 an, a first | An               | None |
| Logical library | 30 an, a first               | None (absent)  | None<br>(absent) | None |

#### Table 6 Object name limitations

| Object                          | GUI Manager    | DAS / ACI                                      | ROBAR            | SCSI |
|---------------------------------|----------------|--|------------------|------|
| Partition                       | 30 an, a first | None (absent)                                  | None<br>(absent) | None |
| Client                          | 80 an, a first | 80 an, a first                                 | 80 an, a first   | None |
| Scratch pool                    | 30 an, a first | 16 an, a first                                 | None<br>(absent) | None |
| Clean pool                      | 30 an, a first | 16 an, a first                                 | Paa              | None |
| Data cartridge, volser          | 30 an          | 16 an (6<br>recommended)                       | 6 an             | None |
| Cleaning cartridge, volser      | 30 an          | 16 an (CL + 4 an recommended)                  | CL + 4 an        | None |
| Mailbox area, eject operations  | 30 an, a first | 3 an, Enn<br>recommended                       | Enn              | None |
| Mailbox area, insert operations | 30 an, a first | 3 an, Inn<br>recommended                       | Inn              | None |
| Drive                           | 40 an, a first | 30 an <sup>b</sup> (9 an, a first recommended) | Dnn              | None |

#### Table 6 Object name limitations (Continued)

a. alphanumeric; "a" means "alpha" (A-Z), "n" means "numeric" (0-9).

b. Only for DAS ACI ver. 3.12 and higher.

#### Automatic Configuration

It recommended that you use the automatic configuration for typical or first time users. Using the automatic configuration, create a default Scalar DLC configuration for each detected physical library.

The automatic configuration creates the configuration by executing the following procedures:

| Step 1 | Scans the SCSI bus for physical libraries.  |
|--------|---|
| Step 2 | Creates partitions for all the physical library elements.   |
| Step 3 | Creates a logical library.  |
| Step 4 | Assigns all created partitions to the logical library making it a representation of the whole physical library. |
| Step 5 | For the logical library, creates two identical mailboxes (I01 and E01) that include all the mailbox slots.      |
| Step 6 | Creates a client and assigns it to the logical library.   |
| 🔍 Note | By default, if the DAS Client support is installed, the created client is the DAS Client; if                    |

Note By default, if the DAS Client support is installed, the created client is the DAS Client; if not, no client can be created because the SCSI and ROBAR interfaces need certain pre-configuration.

#### Manual Configuration

For advanced users, the wizard-based configuration automatically scans for libraries and creates physical library objects by executing the following step-by-step procedures:

- **Step 1** Scans the SCSI bus for physical libraries.
- **Step 2** Creates partitions for all the physical library elements.
- **Step 3** Creates a logical library. The library name can be specified. Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.
- **Step 4** Assigns the partitions to the logical library. It is possible to select a method of assignment: single-media library, single-robot library, and the complete library selection are available for the first-time manual configuration.
- **Step 5** Creates two identical mailboxes covering all the mailbox slots. The mailbox names can be specified. Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.
- **Step 6** Creates a client and assigns it to the logical library. The client name can be specified. Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.
  - **W** Note By default, if the DAS Client support is installed, the created client is the DAS Client; if not, no client can be created because the SCSI and ROBAR interfaces need certain preconfiguration.

Refer also to Create Configuration on page 34 for the detailed description of steps.

#### Advanced Configuration

It is recommended that only expert or administrator users use Advanced Configuration mode. In this mode, only the icon associated with the Scalar DLC software system appears.

To enable all the Management GUI functions, create a working configuration by performing the procedures in the following sections:

#### **Rescan SCSI Bus**

Create the device objects associated with a physical library by using the **Rescan SCSI Bus** button on the **Configuration > Physical > Controller** pane. Refer to <u>Physical Tab</u> on page 126.

#### **Create Partitions**

Create the partition objects representing desired parts of the Physical Library. That can be done on **Configuration > Physical > Library** pane (**Add new Partition** button). Refer to <u>Create Partition</u> on page 143.



There should be at least three partitions created for each physical library: storage, I/E, and drive. Refer to <u>Partition</u> on page 136 for the details.

The partition properties can be modified later, even after the partition is assigned to a logical library, via the **Configuration > Physical > Partition** pane. Refer to <u>Partition</u> on page 136.
# **Create a Logical Library**

Create a logical library. That can be done on the **Configuration > Logical** pane (**Add new Library** button). Refer to <u>Create Library</u> on page 120.

Immediately after creation, the logical library is shown as *Invalid*. That is correct: *Invalid* state indicates that the library does not contain a proper set of partitions.

# **Assign Partitions to a Library**

Assign the previously created partitions to the new logical library. That can be done through the **Configuration > Logical > Library** pane (**Assign new Partition** button) or Assign Partitions wizard in **Main Menu > Wizards** section. Refer to <u>Assign Partition</u> on page 122 or <u>Assign Partitions</u> on page 40.

Note There should be at least three partitions assigned to each logical library: storage, I/E, and drive. The partition can be shared between two or more logical libraries. Refer to <u>Partition</u> on page 101 for details.

The partitions can also be assigned or unassigned at a later time.

# **Create Cleaning Partitions**

Create a cleaning partition in the physical library. This can be done through the *Create Cleaning Partitions* wizard in **Main Menu > Wizard** or **Configuration > Physical > Library** pane (**Add new Partition** button). For more information, refer to <u>Create Clean Partitions</u> on page 57.

Cleaning partitions contain only cleaning cartridges designated for auto-cleaning operations. Assigned cartridges in a cleaning partition are not considered part of the logical library.

You can create cleaning partitions during the initial configuration and at any time after that, as long as unassigned slots are available. If no slots are available, you can still create a cleaning partition using the *Create Cleaning Partitions* wizard. By default, the wizard uses twenty slots for the cleaning partition from the most recent storage partition.



Until you create at least one other logical library, you cannot create a cleaning partition.

# **Auto Clean Cartridges**

If Auto Clean is enabled, you can import and export cleaning cartridges. To import cleaning cartridges, go to Configuration > Physical > Auto Clean Cartridge pane, and then click Import Clean Cartridges button. To remove expired cleaning cartridges, click on Export expired Cleaning Mediums.

To use the auto clean functionality, you must have already created at least one cleaning partition. If you choose to use the **Auto Clean Cartridges** feature, you do not need to configure clean pools.

# **Create Mailbox**

Create one or more mailboxes for a logical library. They will represent its insert/eject areas. This can be done through the **Configuration > Logical > Library** pane (**Add new Mailbox** button). Refer to <u>Create</u> <u>Mailbox</u> on page 125.



Although Management GUI does not have name restrictions for the mailbox name, some backup applications do have them. Refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.

The mailbox name and assigned range of insert/eject slots also can be changed later through the **Configuration > Logical > Mailbox** pane (**Add/Remove new Slots** button). Refer to <u>Assign Slots to</u> <u>Mailbox</u> on page 111.

# **Create Client**

Create the client object(s) that will represent the customer(s) that will work with the library. Depending on the interface used, the clients are DAS Clients, SCSI Clients, or ROBAR Clients. Some clients may share a single logical library.

**CAUTION** Setting up the SCSI client to share the logical library with any DAS- or ROBARbased client may cause problems in the work of the client application. Both DAS and ROBAR interfaces do have the same concept of the cartridge home position (refer to <u>Home Position</u> on page 85) but the SCSI does not because it uses only 'move' commands.

# DAS

The DAS Client can be created via the **Configuration > Clients > DAS** pane (**Add new Client** button). Refer to <u>Create DAS Client</u> on page 160. SCSI

The SCSI Client can be created via the **Configuration > Clients > SCSI** pane (**Add new Client** button). Refer to <u>Create SCSI Client</u> on page 171.

Note that the Target and LUN objects must be created before via the **Configuration > SCSI Target > Port** pane (**Add new Target** button), and **Configuration > SCSI Target > Port > Target** pane (**Add new LUN** button). Refer to <u>Create Target</u> on page 185 and <u>Create LUN</u> on page 186.

Whote It is strongly recommended to create Targets and LUNs as a continuous range of elements starting from 0 (Target0, Target1, Target2, etc.; LUN 0, LUN1, etc.).

# ROBAR

The ROBAR Client can be created via the **Configuration > Clients > ROBAR** pane (**Add new Client** button). Refer to <u>Create ROBAR Client</u> on page 176.

Note that the ROBAR Port must be configured before the clients can send commands (refer to <u>ROBAR</u> on page 172).

# Initialize the Logical Library

The library must be initialized for its internal elements and cartridges to be created. It can be done by using the **Inventory** button. The same command can be done via the client interface.

Once the initialization process is completed, the library functions are available.

# **Assign Drives to Cartridges**

After the cartridges are created, they may be assigned to the appropriate drives for use by the **Generic mount** operation, which uses the assigned drive as the first position in the list of possible mount destinations. A cartridge can be assigned to one and only one drive, but the drive can be assigned to multiple cartridges.

The assignment executes (and can be changed later) through the **Configuration > Logical > Cartridge** pane (Cartridge properties > Assigned Drive >> Save changes). Refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103.



This optional feature is not required for SCSI or ROBAR clients, but some DAS clients do use it.

# **Inserting New Media**

After adding new cartridges to the library through the mailbox <u>always</u> execute **Import** (**insert**) operation (either via client interface or in Management GUI) before starting actually using the new media. The cartridge that was not inserted can not receive the valid home position (refer to <u>Home Position</u> on page 85), and thus a lot of basic functions will be not available.



The Home Position feature is not used by SCSI clients, but for DAS and ROBAR the home position (home slot, home address) is a part of their concepts.

Assigning a home position via import/insert operation is sometimes the only way to put the cartridge in the correct logical library.

Example: two libraries (Library1 and Library2) with two different clients (Client1 and Client2) have nonshared storage areas and a shared I/E area. The cartridge that should be accessed by Client2 is put to the shared mailbox. Client2 (or Admin from GUI in the Library2) must execute the import/insert operation so the cartridge will go to the storage area of Library2. But if the Client1 launches the import operation <u>first</u>, the cartridge will go to the Library1 and become not accessible for the Client2.

# **Create Scratch Pool**

Create the required scratch cartridge pools for a logical library. The *scratch* pools should contain the data cartridges ready for writing. That can be done through the **Configuration > Logical > Library** pane (**Add new Scratch Pool** button). Refer to <u>Create Pool</u> on page 123.



In the same dialog it is possible to add data cartridges to the new pool (**Assign/Unassign** button). Refer to <u>Assign Media to Pool</u> on page 108.



# Sharing a single data cartridge between two or more scratch pools is <u>not</u> allowed.

The pool name and assigned cartridge range can be changed later through the **Configuration > Logical > Pool** pane. Refer to <u>Pool</u> on page 107. Some DAS and ROBAR clients may also assign cartridges to the existing pool as well as remove them.



It is possible to create pools before **Inventory**, but the cartridges will appear in the library only after it is initialized.

# **Mark Cleaning Cartridges**

After the Inventory is performed, the logical library recognizes all cartridges that it contains. However, the library cannot say which cartridge is of *data* type (readable and writable data carrier), and which is of *cleaning* type (the tool used for drive cleaning). By default, all cartridges are recognized as *data*, so it is up to Admin to mark the correct cartridges as *cleaning*.

This can be done through the **Configuration > Logical > Cartridge** pane (Cartridge properties > Type (data/clean) >> Save changes). Refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103.

If the cartridge is marked as cleaning by mistake, and in fact it is data, change its type back the same way.

Note The type of cartridges that are already assigned to the scratch or clean pool cannot be changed.

# **Create Clean Pool**

Create the required clean pools for a logical library. The *clean* pools should contain the cleaning cartridges ready to perform drive cleaning operations. That can be done through the **Configuration > Logical > Library** pane (**Add new Clean Pool** button). Refer to <u>Create Pool</u> on page 123.



Although Management GUI does not have name restrictions for the pool name, some backup applications do have them. Refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.

In the same dialog it is possible to add cleaning cartridges to the new pool (**Assign/Unassign** button). Refer to <u>Assign Media to Pool</u> on page 108.



Sharing a single clean cartridge between two or more cleaning pools is allowed. Watch however the state of that cartridge with extreme caution.

The pool name and assigned cartridge range can be changed later through the **Configuration > Logical > Pool** pane. Refer to <u>Pool</u> on page 107. Some DAS and ROBAR clients may also assign cartridges to the existing pool as well as remove them.



The cartridges appear in the library during **Inventory**, but only Admin can mark the cartridge as *cleaning*, as described in <u>Mark Cleaning Cartridges</u> on page 21. Also the 'insert cleaning cartridges to pool' operation can be executed via DAS by DAS Client.

# **Configure Clean Manager**

After the cleaning pools are created and configured, they can be assigned to the appropriate drives for the drive cleaning operation. Cleaning can be executed either automatically or by client request. This can be done via the **Configuration > Logical > Drive** pane (Drive properties > Cleaning). Refer to <u>Drive</u> on page 115. Specify the correct cleaning time according to the drive type and model. Specify also the cleaning rate (the number of mounts between cleanings).

# **Configure Aliasing**

Some DAS Clients use old versions of backup application that cannon correctly recognize the newest models of media and drives, but must work with such models nevertheless. To fix this issue, Scalar DLC provides an Aliasing feature.

Using **Configuration > Clients > DAS > DAS Client** pane > **Aliasing** (refer to <u>Aliasing</u> on page 159) for either drive or media (or both) select the alias that the backup application 'understands' instead of its default type that the application cannot recognize. Then press **Save** button to update the client properties. The Scalar DLC restart is <u>not</u> required, the client application restart is <u>not</u> required, too.



This feature is optional and used only by some DAS clients.

# **Reserve Drives and Cartridges**

Some DAS clients may reserve the drives and the cartridges which means no one but the client will access the appropriate resource.



The drives and cartridges reserved/allocated by Client1 cannot be accessed by other clients. The allocation must be removed before the other client can access the reserved resource.

Removing the allocation made by another client is also possible from the client side by the special command (allocd, allocv) if the client has Supervisor privileges.

Enter the appropriate values through the **Configuration > Clients > DAS > DAS Client** pane (Reserved Drives > (Select Drive) >> Reserve; Reserved Volsers >> Add Volserrange, Remove Volserrange). Refer to <u>Drives</u> on page 155 and <u>Reserve or Define Volsers</u> on page 158. Also the customer may perform a reserve operation by using the special commands (**allocu**, **allocu**) from the client side.

Note This feature is optional and used only by some DAS clients.

Note Using the Management GUI Admin can execute any operation whether the used medium and/or drive is reserved or not.

Also Admin can remove the allocation, either through **Configuration > Clients > DAS > DAS Client** pane (Reserved Drives >> Specify >> Save changes; Reserved Volsers >> Add Volserrange, Remove Volserrange), or through **Configuration > Logical > Drive** (Drive properties > Owner >> None >> Save changes) and **Configuration > Logical > Cartridge** (Cartridge properties > Owner >> None >> Save changes).

# **Define Drives and Cartridges**

Some DAS clients may define the drives they will use and the cartridges they may access.



The drives and cartridges defined by Client1 are in common use, but the Client1 itself can access only the *defined* drives and media. 'None defined' means the Client1 can use all drives and all media in the library it is assigned to.

Define the appropriate values through the **Configuration > Clients > DAS > DAS Client** pane (Defined Drives >> Specify >> Save changes; Defined Volsers >> Add Volserrange, Remove Volserrange). Refer to <u>Define Drives</u> on page 156 and <u>Reserve or Define Volsers</u> on page 158. Also the customer may perform a temporary define operation by using the special command (**scop2**) from the client side.



This feature is optional and used only by some DAS clients.

# **Configure Additional Libraries**

Follow the sequence of the previous procedures to configure additional logical libraries.

**W** Note A re-initialization of the library is necessary if the library properties are changed.

# Additional Configuration

The following actions can be performed to make the Scalar DLC more user-friendly.

# **Create User**

By default, the Scalar DLC contains two pre-defined users to work with Management GUI: default administrator (admin) and default customer engineer (atac). More users can be created.

- **Step 1** Log on the Management GUI as administrator.
- Step 2 Using Users Tab (Configuration > Users tab >> Add new User) create the new user selecting the user access level and user rights, and specifying login, password, and email settings. Refer to <u>Create User</u> on page 149 and <u>Table 21</u> on page 145.

# Update Global Call Center Settings

All problem reports (tickets) created by the customer will be sent by default to the Global Call Center on "watchman@adic.com". This can be changed if required. Do the following:

- Step 1Log on the Management GUI as administrator. Check the Scalar DLC email notification settings<br/>on Main Menu > Extended Service > Registration Information pane. Refer to Registration<br/>Information on page 60. The "Email Notification" field must be checked, and the "SMTP server"<br/>and "port" parameters must contain valid information. Contact the local network administrator<br/>for details.
- Step 2 Open Configuration > Users Tab and select the default CE "atac" (refer to <u>User</u> on page 147). Change the email settings from "watchman@adic.com" to the required value.
- **Step 3** Restart the Scalar DLC service for the changes take effect.

# **Configure Email Notifications**

To notify the customer via email that the given operation has been performed:

- **Step 1** Log on the Management GUI as administrator. Create the working configuration. Refer to <u>Automatic Configuration</u> on page 17 or <u>Advanced Configuration</u> on page 18.
- **Step 2** Using the Rule Wizard (**Main Menu > Wizards > Create Rule**) create the rule that will react when a certain event occurs in the system and will send a notification about this event to a certain email address. Refer to <u>Create Rule</u> on page 47.

- Note The Scalar DLC database contains the email addresses of all users (refer to <u>User</u> on page 147) and the email addresses that were entered manually during rule creation (see <u>Figure 37</u> on page 55 and <u>Figure 38</u> on page 56). If the required email address is present in this list, it can be selected during the rule creation process; if not, it can be entered manually and will be thereby added to the database.
- Step 3 After creating the rule, go to Events > Rules Tab and ensure that the rule is correct and active. Refer to <u>Rules Tab</u> on page 195.
- Step 4
   Check the Scalar DLC email notification settings on Main Menu > Extended Service >

   Registration Information pane. Refer to Registration Information on page 60. The "Email Notification" field must be checked, and the "SMTP server" and "port" parameters must contain valid information. Contact the local network administrator for the details.
- **Step 5** Restart the Scalar DLC service for the changes to take effect.

The received email shall look as follows:

```
Packet Type: <Automatically Open Ticket>
Packet Revision Level: <2.6 build 3>
Current Time: <Friday, Nov 19, 2005 04:07:08 PM>
Scalar DLC s/n: <DLC12345>
Packet Number: <{AFC3A8D1-EE87-4C45-913B-A949907E1D63}.92.3>
Site ID: {}
Source: <Automated: DLC12345>
Total call Time: <N/A>
# of times packet was sent: <0>
_____
Site ID: {}
Caller Name: <Automated: DLC12345>
Caller Phone: <none>
Modem Phone: {}
Call-In Enabled: {yes}
Company Name: {Scalar DLC Installation}
Call Type: {not available}
Call Subtype: {not available}
Device: {not available}
System Serial Number: {ADIC Scalar 1000 #11111111}
Item Serial Number: {not available}
Service Action Code: 80
Service Action Code Modifier: <12345678>
Service Action Code Description: <Failures detected in the X-axis Servo
system.>
Priority: <not available>
Description: < General hardware problem>
Configuration Table: <not available>
Physical Library Name <ADIC Scalar 1000 #11111>
```

Note Some fields may be empty, or contain <none> or <not available> which is correct especially in case of the automatically created/opened tickets with the appropriate email notification.

# **Installing New Slots**

When the new slot (for example, drive) is installed in the physical library, perform the following actions so that the Scalar DLC logical libraries have the correct reflection of the current hardware.

- **Step 1** Install the slot(s), make all proper connections according to the library *Operator Guide*.
- **Step 2** Execute **Teach** command from the robot Operator Panel. After the command is finished (that may take some time) the slot will appear in appropriate range of the physical library.
- **Step 3** For each newly installed slot, verify the partition settings.
  - **a.** If the new slot has appeared in the unpartitioned space, then everything is correct and it can be used as any other slot after adding to the appropriate partition.
  - **b.** If the new slot has appeared in the partitioned space and its type and media domain match the existing partition properties, it is accessible for every client that can access the appropriate partition.
  - c. If the new slot has appeared in the partitioned space and its type and media domain do not match the existing partition properties (for example, SDLT 220 Drive appeared in the middle of IBM LTO Drive partition), the newly installed slot becomes *incompatible*, and the Management GUI shows it (see <u>Table 16</u> on page 73 and <u>Table 15</u> on page 72). Admin must manually correct the situation by changing the range of the existing partition until it will not cover the new (not compatible) slot. Then another partition must be manually created and assigned to the appropriate logical libraries. Perform a complete **inventory** after all assignments are done.

# Viewing Tape Alerts

A drive issues a tape alert whenever there is a problem in the drive that relates to a tape cartridge. The problem can be with the drive or with the tape cartridge. You can view the tape alerts on the **Tape Alert** tab of your library or you can directly create and view tape alert reports using the **Report** button. For more information, see <u>Tape Alert</u> on page 106.

You can access the Tape Alert tab in the following ways:

- To view all tape alerts for your Host PC, use **Configuration > Logical**, in the *Select Components* pane, select the **Host PC**
- To view cartridge tape alerts, use **Configuration > Logical >** in the *Select Components* pane, select **Cartridges** and then choose the appropriate cartridge.
- To view drive tape alerts, **Configuration > Logical**, in the *Select Components* pane, select **Drives** and then choose the appropriate drive.

You can use the tape alert report functionality to cross-reference tape alerts for drives and tape cartridges over a specified period of time, in order to determine if the problem belongs to the drive or to a specific tape cartridge. For more information on the Report tool, refer to Figure 68 on page 96.

In the **Report Criteria** dialog box, choose how you want to sort the report and how you want to group the report. It is possible to limit the report by selected objects:

- Cartridge
- Tape Alert
- Drive

You can export the report into either a spreadsheet file or into a PDF file.

# Operating the Tape Library Doors

There are times when you must manipulate the tape library doors while the Scalar DLC is in operation. The Scalar DLC handles this as much as possible, but some operations will fail when the doors are opened. This is especially true if operations are executed by clients who use backup applications and do not monitor the resource before launching the command.

# Front Door

When the front door is in open state, the Scalar DLC resources can be described as follows:

| Element                            | State, single-aisle library | State, dual-aisle library     |  |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Robot                              | Offline                     | Offline                       |  |
| Physical library                   | Offline                     | Online <sup>a</sup>           |  |
| Partition, drive, storage, mailbox | Offline                     | Online / offline <sup>b</sup> |  |
| Logical library                    | Offline                     | Online / offline <sup>c</sup> |  |

a. That is, online if the second front door is closed and the second robot is online.

b. Depends on the state of the robot where the partition is physically located on, whether it is offline or online.

c. Depends on the partitions the library contain, whether all of them are offline or some are online.

When the front door of Robot1 on the dual-aisle system is opened, the Robot2 may still perform operations that do not use resources managed by Robot1 (for example, **mount** from <Robot2 storage> to <Robot2 drive> shall pass). If the customer-requested resource is in Robot1 control, the Scalar DLC marks the resource as 'not accessible' and the operation shall fail.



#### BE VERY CAREFUL WHEN OPENING THE FRONT DOOR. THE AISLE MECHANICS WILL GO OFFLINE WHEN THE DOOR IS OPENED BUT IT TAKES TIME.

After the front door is closed the robot must be manually turned online from the operator panel. Then the robot starts the complete **inventory** operation to check whether the new elements are installed, and if so, map them correctly.

# I/E Station Door

When the door of insert/eject station is opened the Scalar DLC marks the elements of this station as 'not accessible'. Any operation that involves the non-accessible resource (for example, **move** to the non-accessible mailbox slot) will fail. The other operations (for example, **dismount**, **clean**, **move** to the mailbox slot of the other insert/eject station) shall pass.

Closing the insert/eject door starts the **part inventory** (partial inventory) of the appropriate insert/eject station to check whether the new cartridges were put in the library or the cartridges ejected to the mailbox were removed.

# Managing the Database

The separate Database Tool (refer to <u>Database Tool</u> on page 222) is used for every operation that is allowed with the Scalar DLC database. The tool is launched from **Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC DB Tool** (or right-click on Scalar DLC tray icon and then **Tools > Scalar DLC DB Tool**).

# Set Up Database Backup Mode

- **Step 1** Launch DB tool, log in and open Extended mode tab (refer to <u>Extended Mode</u> on page 225).
- **Step 2** Check *Full recovery mode* box if the database is to be backed-up with full information. Uncheck the box if only the database itself is to be backed-up.
- Step 3 Press Apply button to apply settings, them Exit to close DB tool.

#### Schedule Database Backup

- Step 1 Launch DB tool, log in and open Backup tab (refer to <u>Database Backup</u> on page 223).
- **Step 2** Set up the *Backup destination* in automatic backup. Check the *Time-generated file names* box if the backup files are to be named according the backup date.
- **Step 3** Set up the *Backup schedule* and then check *Enable schedule* box.
- **Step 4** Press **Apply** button to apply settings, them **Exit** to close DB tool.

#### Schedule Transaction Logs Backup

- **Step 1** Launch DB tool, log in and open Extended mode tab (refer to <u>Extended Mode</u> on page 225).
- Step 2 Set up the *Destination* in automatic transaction logs backup.
- **Step 3** Set up the *Schedule* and then check *Enable schedule* box.
- **Step 4** Press **Apply** button to apply settings, them **Exit** to close DB tool.

#### **Backup Database Manually**

- **Step 1** Launch DB tool, log in and open Backup tab (refer to <u>Database Backup</u> on page 223).
- Step 2 Set up the Backup destination in Manual backup.
- Step 3 Press Execute button to backup the database to a file, them Exit to close DB tool.

#### **Schedule Database Compact**

- **Step 1** Launch DB tool, log in and open Compact tab (refer to <u>Database Compact</u> on page 228).
- **Step 2** Set up the *Compact schedule* and then check *Enable schedule* box.
- **Step 3** Press **Apply** button to apply settings, them **Exit** to close DB tool.

#### **Compact Database Manually**

- Step 1 Launch DB tool, log in and open Compact tab (refer to <u>Database Compact</u> on page 228).
- Step 2 Press Execute button to compact the database, them Exit to close DB tool.

# **Restore Database from Backup**

- Step 1 Launch DB tool, log in and open Restore tab (refer to <u>Database Restore</u> on page 230).
- **Step 2** Stop the Scalar DLC software (*bring offline* for a failover solution).
- **Step 3** Select *Database* to restore from a regular backup, then select a backup from a database backup list.
- **Step 4** To restore the database with transaction logs, check also *Restore with logs* box and select the transaction log.
- Step 5 Press Restore button to restore the database, them Exit to close DB tool.
- Step 6 Start/bring online Scalar DLC again.

#### **Restore Database from File**

- Step 1 Launch DB tool, log in and open Restore tab (refer to <u>Database Restore</u> on page 230).
- **Step 2** Stop the Scalar DLC software (*bring offline* for a failover solution).
- **Step 3** Select *From device* to restore from a file, then select a device name (file) to restore the database from.
- **Step 4** Change the names for a database file and transaction log file if the default values are not good enough.
- **Step 5** Press **Restore** button to restore the database, them **Exit** to close DB tool.
- **Step 6** Start/bring online Scalar DLC again.

#### **Archive Database**

- Step 1 Launch DB tool, log in and open Save tab (refer to <u>Database Save</u> on page 232).
- **Step 2** Set up the *Destination*.
- Step 3 Press Save button to save the database archive to a file, them Exit to close DB tool.

# 4

# Management GUI

This chapter describes the structure of Scalar DLC Management GUI and provides a brief description of its functionality.

The Management GUI screen is divided into three areas (see Figure 11 on page 32).

- The upper portion of the screen contains the Main Menu bar. Refer to Main Menu Bar on page 32.
- The center portion of the screen contains the library related menus, configuration and service tabs, and more. Refer to <u>GUI Tabs</u> on page 67.
- The lower portion of the screen holds the GUI Log. Refer to <u>GUI Log</u> on page 75.



# Main Menu Bar

The Main Menu Bar contains five sections. See Figure 12 on page 32. The sections are:

- Screen Refresh Icon. Forces the Management GUI screen to refresh. Refer to <u>Screen Refresh Icon</u> on page 33.
- Connection. Contains the user connection options. Refer to Connection on page 33.
- Wizards. Contains the wizard-based engines for configuring logical libraries, assigning partitions, creating tickets, creating rules, and creating cleaning partitions. Refer to <u>Wizards</u> on page 34.
- Extended Service. Contains some service panes like registration information, online log viewer etc. Refer to <u>Extended Service</u> on page 60.
- Help. Contains Management GUI Help panes. Refer to Help on page 66.

Scalar DLC Connection Wizards Extended Service Help

Help Contains Mar

Figure 12 Main Menu Bar

Figure 11 Management GUI

# Screen Refresh Icon

The broad black bar containing the red ADIC logo is a screen refresh icon. It also contains the user-to-host connection status (as at the example picture, *User admin connected to computer*, where **admin** is the user name and **computer** is either the Scalar DLC host name or the Scalar DLC cluster name). This button forces the Management GUI screen to refresh.

| lcon   | Description  |
|--------|--|
| adic   | Refresh the Management GUI screen.<br>The black bar itself acts as the refresh button, too.  |
| 🧭 Note | Depending on the PC performance and the current Scalar DLC configuration, the refresh may take up to several minutes.  |
| Νote   | Some updates (for example, library statistic) are not performed by the global refresh but require special refresh operations initiated by an appropriate button. |

# Connection

This section contains the basic Log off and Exit operations.

| Options         | Name    | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--|
| Connection      | Log Off | Log off the Management GUI. A new log on dialog appears.               |
| Log Off<br>Exit | Exit    | Close and exit the current applet or application and log off the user. |

# Wizards

The *Wizards* section contains the wizard-based engines used to create some Scalar DLC internal elements. It contains the following options:

| Options  | Wizard                    | Description  | Access     |
|--|---------------------------|--|------------|
| Wizards Extended Serv<br>Create Configuration<br>Assign Partitions<br>Create Ticket<br>Create Rule<br>Create Clean Partition | Create<br>Configuration   | Creates the logical library according to the user-specified values (library name, assigned client, etc.). Refer to <u>Create Configuration</u> on page 34.   | Admin only |
|  | Assign<br>Partitions      | Either assigns a number of partitions to the logical library, or removes a number of partitions from the logical library (without deleting these partitions physically). Refer to <u>Assign Partitions</u> on page 40. | Admin only |
|  | Create Ticket             | Creates the report issue (ticket) which will be immediately sent to the Global Call Center (GCC). Refer to <u>Create Ticket</u> on page 42.  | All users  |
|  | Create Rule               | Creates the rule that will notify the specified user or person that a certain event has been occurred. Refer to <u>Create Rule</u> on page 47.   | Admin only |
|  | Create Clean<br>Partition | Specifies the settings for the partition cleaning process.   | Admin only |

All wizards contain the same operational buttons (Table 7).

| Name          | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------|------|-----------|--|
| First         | •    | Click     | Return to the first dialog (disabled at the first wizard dialog).    |
| Previous      |      | Click     | Return to the previous dialog (disabled at the first wizard dialog). |
| Next          | ▲    | Click     | Go to the next wizard dialog.  |
| Create/Finish | 1    | Click     | Create (only at the last dialog).                                    |
| Cancel/Exit   | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation or exit wizard after successful creation.            |

# **Create Configuration**

The **Create Configuration** wizard: creates a logical library that covers all the parts of the selected physical library; creates two identical mailboxes (I01 and E01) that cover the entire insert/eject area; and assigns a client to the created library. The wizard automatically creates the required partitions in the ranges of a physical library and assigns them to the logical library.

Selecting the Create Configuration option activates the Configuration wizard. The first dialog is Physical Library selection. See figure below.

х

-



| Name                       | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------------|-----------|---|
| Select Physical<br>Library | Select    | Select the physical library from the combo box. The created library will be based on the selected device. |

The next dialog is Logical Library Selection. See figure below.

| Figure 14 | Select Logical Library   |       |
|-----------|--|-------|
|           | 🍔 Configuration  | ×     |
|           | Name of new Logical Library:       Library4         Image: Second state of the | ancel |

Accept the default name or enter the desired name. Accepting the default name is recommended, but make sure not to duplicate the name of existing libraries.

| Name                        | Operation | Description                         |
|-----------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| Name of new Logical Library | Enter     | Enter the new logical library name. |

The next dialog is Configuration Method selection. See figure below.

Figure 15Select Configuration Method



| Name   | Operation |                                       | Description  |
|--|-----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| Define the Sele<br>method of<br>creating a<br>Logical<br>Library | Select    | by Media<br>Type                      | Create the single-media library.<br>The <b>Next</b> button will show the <u>Figure 16</u> on page 37<br>with the media selection dialog.   |
|  |           | analogously<br>to existing<br>library | Create the copy of already created library.<br>Enabled only when there is at least one logical library<br>already.<br>The <b>Next</b> button will show the <u>Figure 17</u> on page 37<br>with the prototype selection dialog. |
|  |           | from unused<br>elements               | Create the library from the elements that are currently <u>not</u> assigned to any other logical library.<br>Enabled only when there is at least one not assigned element in a physical library.                               |
|  |           | from<br>elements by<br>R1             | Create the library from the elements available for the Robot1.   |
|  |           | from<br>elements by<br>R2             | Create the library from the elements available for the<br>Robot2.<br>Enabled only for the dual-aisle physical library.   |
|  |           | from<br>elements by<br>R1 & R2        | Create the library from the elements available for both<br>Robot1 and Robot2<br>Enabled only for the dual-aisle physical library.  |

| Figure 16 | Select Media   |                    |           | ×     |
|-----------|--|--------------------|-----------|-------|
|           |  |                    |           |       |
|           |  | Select Media Type: | 3480      | -     |
|           |  |                    | 3480      | -     |
|           | the second s   |                    | 3490E     | 99999 |
|           |  |                    | 3590      | 33333 |
|           |  |                    | 3590E     | 2000  |
|           | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·  |                    | 8mm       | 1993  |
|           |  |                    | AIT       |       |
|           | and the second s |                    | DLT III   |       |
|           |  | K First            | DLT IIIXT | -     |
|           |  |                    |           |       |





| Configuration |                         |                   |        | <u>&gt;</u> | < |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------|-------------|---|
|               | Select Logical Library: | Library3 (online) |        | <b></b>     |   |
|               | 🕊 First 🛛 🖣             | Previous          | ▶ Next | 🗙 Cancel    | ] |

NameOperationDescriptionSelect logical librarySelectSelect the existing logical library which will be the prototype for<br/>the new library.

The next dialog is Mailbox selection.

| CONTRACTOR OF A |
|---|
| ×   |
| Cancel  |
|   |

Accept the default names or enter the desired names. Accepting the default names is recommended.

| Name               | Operation | Description   |
|--------------------|-----------|---|
| Name of new Maibox | Enter     | Enter the name of the new mailbox (E01 for export). |
| Name of new Maibox | Enter     | Enter the name of the new mailbox (I01 for import). |

The next dialog is Client selection. See figure below.

| Figure 19 | Select Client |                        |                   | ×              |
|-----------|---------------|------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
|           |               | Select the type of new | Client:           |                |
|           |               | DAS Client             | ⊖ SCSI Client     | ○ ROBAR Client |
|           |               | Name of new Client:    | Client4           |                |
|           |               | <b>H</b> First         | Previous     Next | Cancel         |

| Name                   | Operation | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|--|
| Select the type of new | Select    | DAS Client creates the DAS client with all parameters by default.<br>Always available if the DAS Client support is installed.  |
| Client                 |           | SCSI Client creates the SCSI Client assigned to the first free LUN of the first existing Target. Available only after the SCSI is configured (at least one target is created and at least one LUN is free). Refer to Create Target on page 185 and Create LUN on page 186. |
|                        |           | ROBAR Client selects the ROBAR Client. Available only after the ROBAR interface is configured (non-zero port is specified). Refer to ROBAR on page 172.  |
| Name of new<br>Client  | Enter     | Enter the name of the new client.  |

Accept the default name or enter the desired name. Accepting the default name is recommended, but be sure not to duplicate an existing client name.

The next dialog is Configuration Summary. See figure below.

# Figure 20 Configuration Summary Configuration Selected device:ADIC Scalar 1000 #11111 Created partitions:0 Logical Library name:Library1 MailBox name:E01 Client name:Client1 First Previous Create Cancel

| Name    | Operation | Description  |
|---------|-----------|--|
| Summary | Supplied  | Be sure that the data entered from the previous dialogs is correct |

Scalar DLC Reference Guide

The final configuration dialog then appears.

# **Assign Partitions**

Operation list Supplied

The **Assign Partitions** wizard assigns the partition(s) to the logical library or executes the backward operation. The logical library and the partitions to assign must be created before launching the wizard.

The list of operations executed by configuration wizard.

Selecting the Assign Partitions option activates the Partition Assignment wizard.

There are two types of Assign Partitions wizard first screens, depending upon the number of partitions in the selected logical library. Figure below appears when the selected logical library contains at least one partition.

| 🌺 Assign partitions |  | ×  |
|---------------------|--|----|
|                     |  |    |
|                     | Select Logical Library   |    |
|                     | Library1 (online)  | -  |
|                     | Select Physical Library  |    |
| EBBU                | ADIC Scalar 10K#11111  | •  |
|                     |  |    |
|                     |  |    |
|                     | Image: First     Image: Previous     Image: Next     Image: Cancel | el |

Figure below appears when the selected logical library contains no partitions.

|                     | -   |
|---------------------|---|
| 🌺 Assign partitions | ×   |
|                     | Select Logical Library<br>Library4 (invalid)<br>Select Physical Library<br>ADIC Scalar 10K #11111 |
|                     | First Previous Next Cancel  |

| Name                       | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------------|-----------|---|
| Select Logical Library     | Select    | The logical library to assign/unassign partition(s).  |
| Select Physical<br>Library | Supplied  | The physical library whose partition(s) are already assigned to the selected logical library. |
|                            | Select    | The physical library whose partition(s) should be assigned to the selected logical library.   |

The next wizard screen shows the assign/unassign dialog.

| Figure 24 | Partition List |
|-----------|----------------|
|           |                |

| Libra | ry1        |         |                   |       | -     |     |
|-------|------------|---------|-------------------|-------|-------|-----|
|       | Name       | Class   | Туре              | Start | End   |     |
|       | Partition1 | Storage | Generic half inch | 2000  | 2024  | 1   |
| V     | Partition2 | Storage | Generic half inch | 2050  | 2074  | 100 |
| * [   | Partition3 | Storage | Generic half inch | 2100  | 2124  | I   |
| * _   | Partition4 | Storage | Generic half inch | 2150  | 2174  | 1   |
| V     | Partition5 | Storage | Generic DLT       | 2025  | 2049  | 1   |
| ~     | Partition6 | Storage | Generic DLT       | 2075  | 2099  |     |
|       | Partition7 | Storage | Generic DI T      | 2125  | 21/10 |     |
|       |            |         |                   |       |       |     |

| Name         | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|-----------|---|
| Library name | Supplied  | The logical library to assign/unassign partition(s).  |
| Partition(s) | Check     | The checked partitions are, or should be, assigned to the logical library.<br>The not checked partitions currently are not assigned to the library or<br>should be unassigned from it. The changes are marked with asterisks. |

| Name                          | Operation |  | Description   |
|-------------------------------|-----------|--|---|
| Partition Supplied properties | Supplied  | Name   | Partition name.   |
|                               | Class     | Partition class (Storage, I/E, Drive). See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71. |   |
|                               |           | Туре   | Partition media type. Refer to <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264, <u>Mailbox Types</u> on page 265, or <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266. |
|                               |           | Start  | Starting address in the range of the partition elements.  |
|                               |           | End  | Ending address in the range of the partition elements.  |

Figure 25 Partitions Summary

|   | Please confirm changes:                     |
|---|---|
|   | Unassign following partitions from Libraryl |
|   | Partition3                                  |
|   | Partition4                                  |
|   | Partition12                                 |
|   | Partition13                                 |
|   | Partition20                                 |
|   | Partition26                                 |
|   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
| - |   |
|   | H First Providual Finish Y Cancel           |
|   |   |

| Name    | Operation | Description  |
|---------|-----------|--|
| Summary | Supplied  | Shows the summary for the assign/unassign partition(s) |

# Create Ticket

*Ticket* is a brief report of the problem encountered by the user that should be solved by the Global Call Center. After the ticket that describes the problem is created, the email notification is sent to Global Call Center. The Global Call Center solution will allow the CE (customer engineer) to begin working toward a solution of the problem. Information supplied to the ticket becomes a part of the Tickets pane. Refer to <u>Tickets Tab</u> on page 205.

Selecting the Create Ticket option activates the Ticket wizard.

| Figure 26 | Ticket Registration                   |               |               |          |          |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| 8         | Screate Ticket                        |               |               |          | ×        |
|           |                                       | Ent           | er your name: | My_Name  |          |
|           |                                       | Enter your ph | none number:  | My Phone |          |
|           |                                       |               |               |          |          |
|           | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | System Si     | erial Number: | DLC66666 |          |
|           |                                       |               |               |          |          |
|           |                                       | K First       | Previous      | s Next   | 🗙 Cancel |
| -         |                                       |               |               |          |          |

| Name                       | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------------|-----------|---|
| Enter your name            | Enter     | The issue originator name.  |
| Enter your phone<br>number | Enter     | The issue originator contact phone number.                              |
| System Serial<br>Number    | Supplied  | The system serial number (taken directly from the Scalar DLC Database). |

The Ticket Priority and Description dialog is the next step in the wizard process. A priority is selected, and a description of the problem is entered.

Figure 27Ticket Priority and Description

| 🌺 Create Ticket |                                    |            | ×        |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|------------|----------|
|                 | Select a priority for the ticket:  | Critical   | •        |
|                 | Enter a brief description of the p | roblem:    |          |
|                 | brief description                  |            |          |
|                 | First 🛛 🖣 Prev                     | ous 🕨 Next | X Cancel |

| Name   | Operation | Description  |
|--|-----------|--|
| Select a Select<br>priority for<br>the ticket  | Select    | <i>Critical</i> means the problem must be solved immediately. Highest priority.                    |
|  |           | <i>Urgent</i> means that solving the problem is very important but not critical.<br>High priority. |
|  |           | Major means that the problem should be solved. Medium priority.                                    |
|  |           | Minor means that the problem should be solved. Low priority.                                       |
|  |           | <i>Enhancement</i> means that the problem should be solved. Lowest priority.                       |
| Enter a brief<br>description of<br>the problem | Enter     | A description of the problem.  |

The Ticket Category dialog is used to select a category for the problem. The frequency of the problem is established.



| Name  | Operation  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| Select a Select<br>problem<br>category that<br>describes the<br>problem | Select   | Do not know means the problem category is unknown.                             |
|   |  | Operator means the problem source is an operator error.                        |
|   | Hardware means the problem source is a hardware error. |  |
|   |  | Firmware means the problem source is a software error.                         |
|   |  | Service call means the user has asked for service help.                        |
|   |  | <i>Configuration</i> means the problem source is a wrong system configuration. |
|   |  | Statistical means the problem source is statistical data.                      |
|   |  |  |

| Name                                    | Operation | Description  |  |  |
|---|-----------|--|--|--|
| Did the                                 | Select    | Do not know means the problem frequency is unknown.          |  |  |
| problem<br>occur once or<br>repeatedly? |           | Once means the problem occurred once and was not reproduced. |  |  |
|   |           | Repeatedly meansNEED INFO                                    |  |  |
|   |           | Permanent means the problem appeared several times.          |  |  |

The Ticket Device, Library, and Client dialog selects the problematic device, details the location of the logical library that contains the device, and identifies the associated client.



| 🌺 Create Ticket |                    |                         |                   |     | ×        |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-----|----------|
|                 |                    |                         |                   |     |          |
|                 | Select the         | device where the prob   | lem is:           | ANY | •        |
|                 | Select the logical | l library where the dev | ice is located: [ | ANY | •        |
|                 | Is the proble      | em related to a specifi | c client?         | ANY | •        |
|                 |                    |                         |                   |     |          |
|                 |                    |                         |                   |     |          |
|                 | 🗲 First            | Previous                | ▶ Next            |     | 🗙 Cancel |

| Name   | Operation | Description   |
|--|-----------|---|
| Select the device where the problem is                 | Select    | Select the device from the combo box if the problem is somewhere in the device.           |
| Select the logical library where the device is located | Select    | Select the logical library from the combo box if the problem is with the logical library. |
| Is the problem related to a specific client            | Select    | Select the client from the combo box if the problem related with a client.                |

The Ticket Service Code dialog establishes the service code associated with the problem.



| 🌺 Create Ticket |                    |                    |             | ×        |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|----------|
|                 | Select Service Cod | e for the problem: | Do not know | <b></b>  |
|                 | 🗲 First            | Previous           | ▶ Next      | 🗙 Cancel |

| Name  | Operation | Description   |  |  |  |
|---|-----------|---|--|--|--|
| Select the Select<br>Service Code<br>for the<br>problem | Select    | Do not know means the code is unknown.  |  |  |  |
|   |           | Unscheduled Repair means an unexpected repair is required.  |  |  |  |
|   |           | Scheduled Repair means a pre-arranged time has been allocated for the repair.                         |  |  |  |
|   |           | Information Call means information is sent to GCC.  |  |  |  |
|   |           | <i>Customer Resp.</i> means the problem is caused or belongs to the customer.                         |  |  |  |
|   |           | Preventive Maint. means routine preventive maintenance is scheduled.                                  |  |  |  |
|   |           | <i>Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about the installation of the system. |  |  |  |
|   |           | <i>De-Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about a system de-installation.    |  |  |  |
|   |           | <i>EC/Field Bill</i> means a service call is the result of an EC/Field build installation.            |  |  |  |
|   |           | <i>Feature Code Change</i> means a new feature or function is added to the system.                    |  |  |  |

The Ticket Summary dialog contains selected information from the previous dialogs. The wizard assembles the data and requires a verification.

| Figure 31 | Ticket Summary  |  |   |                         |          |
|-----------|-----------------|--|---|-------------------------|----------|
|           | 🌺 Create Ticket |  |   |                         | ×        |
|           |                 | Make sure the data<br>the Ticket, or return<br>Name:My_Name<br>Phone:My_Number<br>System Serial Numt<br>Priority:Critical<br>Group:Do not know<br>Category:Do not know<br>Category:Do not know<br>Device:ANY<br>Library:ANY<br>Client:ANY<br>Service code:Do not | you have entered is o<br>to previous pages to<br>per:DLC12345<br>ww<br>know | correct before creating | n.       |
|           |                 | 🗲 First  | Previous  | 🗸 Create                | 🗙 Cancel |

| Name    | Operation | Description   |
|---------|-----------|---|
| Summary | Supplied  | Be sure that the data entered from the previous dialogs is correct. |

Whote The **Create** button is disabled while the ticket is in the creation process. During this period, the data is being integrated into the Tickets pane.

# **Create Rule**

The Scalar DLC software contains rules for monitoring system events either by sending notification via email or directly to the Management GUI. In addition, system rules are generated by the Scalar DLC software itself. The user can define rules that will operate in a similar manner. See <u>Table 8</u> for the detailed description of the events and matching rules configuration.

Note In the table that follows, (Any) means selection "Any," (None) means selection "None", (#) means exact selection (for example, **Library1**, or **Client2**).

For the details on Error code, if any, refer to Error Codes on page 267.

| Event               | Event Group | Specific Event                      | Error<br>code | Physical<br>Library | Logical<br>Library | Client |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Start<br>supervisor | Statistical | SDLC supervisor has<br>been started | 0             | None                | None               | None   |
| Stop<br>supervisor  | Statistical | SDLC supervisor has<br>been stopped | 0             | None                | None               | None   |

#### Table 8 Event Specification

| Event                                | Event Group | Specific Event                                 | Error<br>code | Physical<br>Library | Logical<br>Library | Client |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|--|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| License<br>expiration<br>warning     | Statistical | License is to expire in a few days             | 0             | None                | None               | None   |
| Physical<br>library is<br>created    | Statistical | New physical library is created                | 0             | None                | None               | None   |
| Physical<br>library is<br>deleted    | Statistical | Physical library has been deleted              | 0             | None                | None               | None   |
| Physical                             | Statistical | The library state has                          | 0             | Any                 | None               | Any    |
| changed                              |             | cnanged  |               | #                   |                    |        |
| Logical<br>library state<br>changed  | Statistical | The library state has changed                  | 0             | None                | #                  | None   |
| Library Tape                         | Statistical | atistical Message about Drive                  | 0             | Any                 | None               | Any    |
| Alert                                |             | Tape Alert Flag                                |               | #                   |                    |        |
| Drive Tape<br>Alert                  | Statistical | Message about Drive<br>Tape Alert Flag         | 0             | #                   | None               | Any    |
| Front door closed                    | Statistical | Library door closed.<br>Context defined below. | 0             | #                   | None               | Any    |
| Inventory<br>(GUI)                   | Statistical | Library elements have been inventoried         | 0             | None                | #                  | None   |
| Inventory<br>(auto)                  | Statistical | Library elements have been inventoried         | 0             | #                   | None               | Any    |
| Inventory<br>(common)                | Statistical | Library elements have been inventoried         | 0             | #                   | #                  | Any    |
| Move<br>cartridge<br>(common)        | Statistical | A cartridge has been<br>successfully moved     | 0             | None                | #                  | #      |
| Move                                 | Statistical | A cartridge has been                           | 0             | None                | #                  | Any    |
| (client)                             |             | Successibility moved                           |               |                     |                    | #      |
| Move<br>cartridge<br>(GUI)           | Statistical | A cartridge has been<br>successfully moved     | 0             | None                | #                  | Any    |
| Physical<br>element state<br>changed | Statistical | Library elements changed its state             | 0             | #                   | #                  | Any    |

# Table 8 Event Specification (Continued)

| Event                                  | Event Group          | Specific Event   | Error<br>code | Physical<br>Library | Logical<br>Library | Client |
|--|----------------------|--|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Logical<br>element state<br>changed    | Statistical          | Library elements<br>changed its state                          | 0             | None                | #                  | None   |
| New<br>firmware<br>loaded              | Statistical          | New firmware has<br>been loaded to<br>physical library         | 0             | #                   | None               | Any    |
| New<br>firmware<br>loaded              | Statistical          | New firmware has<br>been loaded to<br>physical library         | 0             | None                | #                  | Any    |
| Drive<br>cleaning                      | Statistical          | Message from Clean<br>Manager about drive<br>cleaning          | 0             | None                | #                  | #      |
| Clean pool<br>requires<br>service      | Statistical          | A clean's pool<br>condition has become<br>critical             | 0             | None                | #                  | None   |
| Element(s)<br>allocated by<br>client   | Statistical          | Logical library element<br>has changed its<br>allocation state | 0             | None                | #                  | #      |
| Cluster node changed                   | Statistical          | Cluster node has been changed                                  | 0             | None                | None               | Any    |
| Hardware                               | Hardware             | An erroneous situation   | 217           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| generic, and<br>so forth               |                      | has been encountered   |               | #                   |                    |        |
| Hardware                               | Hardware             | An erroneous situation   | 216           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| accessor<br>cannot pick a<br>cartridge |                      |  |               | #                   |                    |        |
| Hardware                               | Hardware             | An erroneous situation   | 215           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| accessor<br>cannot put a<br>cartridge  |                      | has been encountered   |               | #                   |                    |        |
| Hardware                               | Hardware             | An erroneous situation   | 223           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| destination<br>full                    | nas been encountered |  | #             |                     |                    |        |
| Hardware                               | Hardware             | An erroneous situation   | 222           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| empty                                  |                      |  |               | #                   |                    |        |

| d) |
|----|
| (  |

| Event                             | Event Group                                      | Specific Event         | Error<br>code              | Physical<br>Library | Logical<br>Library | Client |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Hardware                          | Hardware   | An erroneous situation | 360                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| error:<br>accessor<br>cannot move |  | nas been encountered   |                            | #                   |                    |        |
| Hardware                          | Hardware   | An erroneous situation | 220                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| error:<br>common                  |  | has been encountered   |                            | #                   |                    |        |
| General<br>failure:               | General  | An erroneous situation | 217                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| common                            |  | has been encountered   |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Not ready:                        | General  | An erroneous situation | An erroneous situation 205 |                     | Any                | Any    |
| common                            |  | has been encountered   |                            | #                   |                    |        |
| Not ready:                        | General  | An erroneous situation | 248                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| becoming<br>ready                 |  | has been encountered   |                            | #                   |                    |        |
| Illegal                           | General An erroneous situation 223               |                        | 223                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| destination<br>full               | request:<br>destination<br>full                  | nas been encountered   |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Illegal                           | General  | An erroneous situation | 222                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| source empty                      |  | has been encountered   |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Illegal                           | General  | An erroneous situation | 358                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| destination is<br>accessor        |  | has been encountered   |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Illegal                           | General  | An erroneous situation | 363                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| request:<br>invalid CDB<br>field  | equest: has been encountered<br>valid CDB<br>eld |                        |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Illegal                           | General  | An erroneous situation | 368                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| station door                      |  | nas been encountered   |                            |                     | #                  | #      |
| Abort:                            | General  | An erroneous situation | 376                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| aborted                           |  | nas been encountered   |                            |                     |                    | #      |
| General                           | General  | An erroneous situation | 247                        | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)                     |  | nas been encountered   |                            |                     |                    | #      |

# Table 8 Event Specification (Continued)

| Event                       | Event Group   | Specific Event                                 | Error<br>code | Physical<br>Library | Logical<br>Library | Client |
|-----------------------------|---------------|--|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| General                     | General       | An erroneous situation                         | 212           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)               |               | has been encountered                           |               |                     | #                  | #      |
| General                     | General       | An erroneous situation                         | 354           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)               |               | has been encountered                           |               |                     | #                  | #      |
| General                     | General       | An erroneous situation                         | 221           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)               |               | has been encountered                           |               |                     | #                  | #      |
| General                     | General       | An erroneous situation                         | 355           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)               |               | has been encountered                           |               |                     | #                  | #      |
| General                     | General       | An erroneous situation                         | 226           | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| (Scalar 1000)               |               | has been encountered                           |               |                     | #                  | #      |
| Internal error              | Internal      | An erroneous situation<br>has been encountered | 0             | Any                 | Any                | Any    |
| License<br>expired          | Configuration | License has been<br>expired                    | 0             | None                | None               | #      |
| Configuration changed       | Configuration | Configuration changed                          | 0             | None                | None               | #      |
| Manually<br>created ticket  | Ticket        | Open ticket (manually)                         | 0             | None                | None               | Any    |
| Automatic<br>created ticket | Ticket        | Open ticket (auto)                             | 0             | None                | None               | Any    |
| Ticket in<br>work           | Ticket        | Continue ticket                                | 0             | None                | None               | Any    |
| Close ticket                | Ticket        | Close ticket                                   | 0             | None                | None               | Any    |

# Table 8 Event Specification (Continued)



An incorrect rule cannot be created. Only the selections matching the selected event group, event, and so forth, are enabled in the Rule wizard.

Selecting the Create Rule option opens the Rule Name dialog. Specify the rule name here.

| Figure 32  | Rule Name |                                  |          |        |        |
|------------|-----------|----------------------------------|----------|--------|--------|
| 🌺 Create n | ew Rule   |                                  |          |        | X      |
|            |           | Enter the name for the new rule: | Rule1    |        |        |
|            |           | First                            | Previous | ▶ Next | Cancel |

| Entry                           | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Enter the name for the new rule | Enter     | The rule name. It recommended that you use names describing the meaning of the rule. |

The Rule Event dialog continues the wizard process. The event group and specific event are specified here.

| Figure 33 | Rule Ever | ۱t |
|-----------|-----------|----|
|-----------|-----------|----|

| 🌺 Create new Rule |                         | ×  |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                   | Select the app          | ropriate event group from the list. 'Any' implies any event group is acceptable. |
|                   | Event group:            | Statistical  |
|                   |                         | If desired, select a more specific event in the event group.                     |
|                   | Notification of events: | Cluster node has been changed 🔹  |
|                   |                         |  |
| <b>1</b>          |                         |  |
| -                 |                         |  |
|                   | <b>A</b> First          | Previous     Next     X Cancel   |

| Entry                  | Operation | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|---|
| Event group            | Select    | Event group selection. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47. |
| Notification of events | Select    | Event selection. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47        |

The Rule Event dialog continues the wizard process The device, library, and client must be specified here.

| Figure 34      | Rule Event | ocation        |  |   |                                 |
|----------------|------------|----------------|--|---|---------------------------------|
| 🌺 Create n     | w Rule     |                |  |   | ×                               |
|                |            | T<br>Sen       | o receive notification o<br>select the appropr<br>d notification if event is | f events for a specific object<br>iate information below.<br>related to the following dev | i,<br>ice:                      |
| 1005           |            | None<br>Sen    | d notification if event is   | related to the following libr   | ary:                            |
|                |            | None           |  |   | •                               |
| <b>á</b> i i i |            | Ser            | nd notification if event is  | s related to the following clie   | ent:                            |
|                |            | Any            |  |   | •                               |
| 566            | 6661       |                | To be notified abo   | ut a specific error situation t<br>enter the erro   | for an event, 0<br>r code here. |
|                |            | <b>H</b> First | Previous   | Next  | Cancel                          |

| Entry                    | Operation | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------|---|
| Device                   | Select    | Device (Physical library) selection. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.                           |
| Library                  | Select    | Logical library selection. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.                                     |
| Client                   | Select    | Client selection. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.  |
| Specific error situation | Enter     | An error code listing. Refer to <u>Error Codes</u> on page 267 and <u>Table 8</u> on page 47. |

The Rule Notification Sent dialog continues the wizard process. The way to send notification is specified here.

| Figure 35 | Rule | Notification | Sent | Dialog |
|-----------|------|--------------|------|--------|
|-----------|------|--------------|------|--------|

| 🌺 Create new Rule |   | ×  |
|-------------------|---|--|
|                   | How should the n<br>O via EMAIL<br>I (with acknowledge) | otification be delivered?                  |
|                   | After this notification is acknowledg                   | jed, do you want a ticket to be generated? |
| <b>1</b> 33333    | □ No  | ✓ Yes                                      |
|                   | First Previous  | Next X Cancel                              |

#### Note Although there exist some predefined rules that send notification via SNMP, the usercreated rules other than predefined cannot deliver SNMP notification because of interface properties.

| Entry                             | Operation | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Deliver notification by           | Select    | EMAIL sends notification via email.  |
|                                   |           | GUI sends a notification to the Management GUI.  |
| Generate ticket by<br>acknowledge | Check     | Enable/disable a service ticket generation request (enable only when <i>GUI</i> selected).               |
| Next                              | Click     | If EMAIL is selected, the <i>Rule Email Destination</i> dialog appears. See <u>Figure 37</u> on page 55. |
|                                   |           | If GUI is selected, the <i>Rule Notification Receiver</i> dialog appears. See <u>Figure 36</u> .         |

The Notification Receiver dialog pane identifies the user who receives the notification.

 Figure 36
 Rule Notification Receiver

| 🌺 Create new Rule |  | ×   |
|-------------------|--|-----|
|                   | Choose the user who should receive the notification. |     |
|                   | admin  | · ] |
|                   |  |     |
| 566666            |  |     |
|                   | First Previous Next X Cancel                         |     |

| Entry                 | Operation | Description                             |
|-----------------------|-----------|---|
| Notification receiver | Select    | A selection from the user list.         |
| Next                  | Click     | Go to the next wizard dialog (Summary). |
The Rule Email Destination dialog identifies the user who receives the notification via email.



| 🚖 Create new Rule  |                      |              |                        |                 | ×        |
|--------------------|----------------------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|----------|
|                    |                      | Choose an em | ail destination or cre | eate a new one: |          |
| <b>TEREFERENCE</b> | atac                 |              |                        |                 | <b>•</b> |
|                    |                      | 🕒 Delete     | 🥖 Update               | 🖌 Add           |          |
|                    |                      | Cho          | oose an email temp     | late:           |          |
|                    | System state changed | 1            |                        |                 |          |
| iddidi             |                      |              |                        |                 |          |
|                    |                      |              |                        |                 |          |

| Entry                            | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Choose/<br>create<br>destination | Select    | A selection from the current list of email destinations. The default entries in the list that cannot be removed are <b>atac</b> (default CE) and the "contact person," as shown in <u>Figure 46</u> on page 60. |
| Delete                           | Click     | Delete the entry from the list.   |
| Update                           | Click     | Edit and update the current entry.  |
| Add                              | Click     | Add an entry to the list. See Figure 38.  |
| Choose<br>template               | Select    | Choose a selection from the combo box. Only valid template (matched the rule) could be selected.  |
| Next                             | Click     | Go to the next wizard dialog (Summary).   |

The Rule Email dialog identifies the user who should receive the notification.

| Figure 38    | Rule Email |         |    |                   |
|--------------|------------|---------|----|-------------------|
| 🌺 Create new | / Rule     |         |    | ×                 |
|              |            | Name:   |    |                   |
|              |            | To:     |    | From:             |
|              |            | HostTo: |    | HostFrom:         |
| 5 á á i      | 1661       | Port:   | 25 |                   |
|              |            |         |    | ✓ Create X Cancel |

| Entry     | Operation | Description                               |
|-----------|-----------|---|
| Name      | Enter     | Email sender name.                        |
| То        | Enter     | Email recipient address.                  |
| From      | Enter     | Email sender address.                     |
| Host To   | Enter     | Recipient email server.                   |
| Host From | Enter     | Sender email server.                      |
| Port      | Enter     | Sender email port (the default is shown). |

The last Rule wizard dialog displays the Rule Summary.

#### Figure 39 Rule Summary



| Entry   | Operation | Description   |
|---------|-----------|---|
| Summary | Supplied  | Be sure that the data entered from the previous dialogs is correct. |

## **Create Clean Partitions**

Cleaning partitions contain only cleaning cartridges designated for auto-cleaning operations. Assigned cartridges in a cleaning partition are not considered part of the logical library. To enable the library's Auto Clean feature, you must create at least one cleaning partition.

**W** Note Cleaning partitions are NOT assigned to the logical library; they are different than the regular partitions in the library. Until you create at least one other logical library, you cannot create a cleaning partition.

You can create cleaning partitions during the initial configuration and at any time after that, as long as unassigned slots are available. If no slots are available, you can still create a cleaning partition using the Create Cleaning Partitions wizard.

By default, the wizard uses the last twenty slots of the physical library. If there is a partition that already covers this range, the wizard crops the existing partition and then creates the cleaning partition form the last twenty; if the range is available (unpartitioned space), the wizard creates the cleaning partition within the defined range. You can modify this number during set up.

Example 1:

The library has 1000 storage slots. Partition1 covers the storage range 1-1000

The Create Cleaning Partitions wizard crops Partition1 to 1-980 and creates Cleaning Partition1 at 981-1000

Example 2:

The library has 1000 storage slots. Partition1 covers storage range 1-800. The Create Clean Partitions wizard creates Cleaning Partition1 at 981-1000.

Selecting the *Create Clean Partition* activates the wizard. From the drop-down menu, select the appropriate physical library where you want the new cleaning partitions to reside. See the following figure.

Figure 40 Select Physical Library

| Creating Cleaning Partition | 15   | ×      |
|-----------------------------|--|--------|
|                             | Select Physical Library:<br>ADIC Scalar 10K #22222 | •      |
|                             | First Previous Next X                              | Cancel |



Select PhysicalSuppliedSelect the physical library from the drop-down menu. The created<br/>cleaning partitions will reside in the selected library.

After selecting the Physical Library, choose which media types that you want to activate the cleaning functionality on. Click the check box to enable or disable cleaning. See the following figure.

| Figure 41 | Activate Cleaning | 15                |  | × |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|--|---|
|           |                   | Activate Cleaning | Media Type<br>Cleaning half-inch<br>Cleaning DLT<br>Cleaning 8mm<br>Cleaning LTO |   |
|           |                   | First Previous    | Next Cancel  |   |

| Name                 | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------|---|
| Activate<br>Cleaning | Check     | Enables cleaning on the corresponding media domain. |
| Media Type           | Supplied  | Cartridge media type                                |

After activating the clean function according to media types, you can enter the slot count.

| Figure 42 | Slot Count                   |  |  |  |   |
|-----------|------------------------------|--|--|--|---|
|           | Creating Cleaning Partitions |  |  |  | × |
|           |                              | Media Type<br>Cleaning half-inch<br>Cleaning DLT<br>Cleaning 8mm<br>Cleaning LTO | Partition name<br>ST_Cleaning half-inch_1<br>ST_Cleaning DLT_1<br>ST_Cleaning 8mm_1<br>ST_Cleaning LTO_1 | Slot count<br>20<br>20<br>20<br>20<br>20 |   |
|           |                              | First  | Previous Next  | Cance                                    |   |

| Entry             | Operation | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|---|
| Media Type        | Supplied  | Type of media in the cleaning partition.            |
| Partition<br>Name | Supplied  | Name of the partition.                              |
| Slot Count        | Enter     | Number of slots assigned to the cleaning partition. |

After reviewing and/or updating the slot count, confirm your changes and then create the new cleaning partitions.

Figure 43 Create Cleaning Partitions

| 🚖 Creating Cleaning Partitions |  | × |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
|                                | ST_Cleaning half-inch_1 20 in number<br>ST_Cleaning DLT_1 20 in number<br>ST_Cleaning 8mm_1 20 in number<br>ST_Cleaning LTO_1 20 in number |   |
|                                | First Previous Create X Cancel   |   |

| Name   | Operation | Description  |
|--------|-----------|--|
| Create | Click     | Displays the details of the new cleaning partitions. |

As the system processes and creates the new cleaning partitions, the Waiting message appears.

| Figure | 44 | Waiting | Message |
|--------|----|---------|---------|
|        |    |         |         |

| 🚖 Waiting |              | × |
|-----------|--------------|---|
|           |              |   |
|           |              |   |
|           | Please, wait |   |
|           |              |   |
|           |              |   |

To stop the process, click Cancel. After the cleaning partitions are created, click Finish.

Figure 45 Create Cleaning Partitions Finish

| Creating Cleaning Partition | ns<br>Creating ST_Cleaning half-inch_1 finished successfully.<br>Creating ST_Cleaning DLT_1 finished successfully.<br>Creating ST_Cleaning 8mm_1 finished successfully.<br>Creating ST_Cleaning LTO_1 finished successfully. | × |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
|                             | First Previous Create X Cancel   |   |

# **Extended Service**

This section contains the extended service operations.

| Operations                                   | Name                        | Description  |
|--|-----------------------------|--|
| Extended Service<br>Registration Information | Registration<br>Information | Scalar DLC registration information. Refer to Registration Information on page 60. |
| Connect to RMU<br>View Log                   | Connect to RMU              | RMU connection window. Refer to <u>Connect to RMU</u> on page 61.                  |
|  | View Log                    | Online log viewer window. Refer to <u>View Log</u> on page 62.                     |

## **Registration Information**

Figure 46

Selecting the *Registration Information* opens the Registration Information pane. It shows the customer's personal information that was entered during installation of the Scalar DLC software.

| 🚔 Registration informa   | tion     |       |                    |  |
|--|----------|-------|--------------------|--|
| Customer informat  | tion:    |       |                    |  |
| Company name:  |          |       |                    |  |
| Company address:   |          |       |                    |  |
| Contact name:  |          |       |                    |  |
| Contact email:   |          |       | Email Notification |  |
| SMTP server:   |          | Port: |                    |  |
| Contact telephone:   |          | Fax:  |                    |  |
| 🗹 Service contract   | site ID: |       |                    |  |
| Scalar DLC informa   | ation:   |       |                    |  |
|  |          |       |                    |  |
| Serial number:   |          |       |                    |  |
| Serial number:   |          |       |                    |  |
| Serial number:<br>Location:<br>Dial in number:                 |          |       |                    |  |
| Serial number:<br>Location:<br>Dial in number:<br>GCC contact: | O Europe |       | North America      |  |
| Serial number:<br>Location:<br>Dial in number:<br>GCC contact: | Europe   |       | North America      |  |

Review the registration information and change it if necessary.

| Name               | Operation | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|--|
| Company name       | Enter     | The company name.                                  |
| Company address    | Enter     | The company mailing address.                       |
| Contact name       | Enter     | The contact person name.                           |
| Contact email      | Enter     | The contact email address.                         |
| Email Notification | Check     | Check this box to receive notifications via email. |
| SMTP Server        | Enter     | The SMTP server name.                              |

| Name                | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|-----------|--|
| Port                | Enter     | The SMTP server port number.   |
| Contact telephone   | Enter     | The contact phone number.  |
| Fax                 | Enter     | The contact fax number.  |
| Service contract    | Check     | Marks the service contract feature as "signed."  |
| Site ID             | Enter     | The site ID (for the signed service contract).   |
| SDLC serial number  | Supplied  | The Scalar DLC serial number.  |
| SDLC location       | Enter     | The Scalar DLC location.   |
| SDLC dial-in number | Enter     | The Scalar DLC dial-in number.   |
| GCC contact         | Select    | The Scalar DLC GCC contact region (North America or Europe).                               |
| Reset               | Click     | Clear all the fields and restore the registration information from the Scalar DLC database |
| Update              | Click     | Update the Scalar DLC database with the registration information entered in this pane.     |
| Cancel              | Click     | Close the pane without saving changes.   |



If the Email Notification field is not checked, the Scalar DLC will <u>never</u> send notifications via email.

## **Connect to RMU**

Selecting the *Connect to RMU* opens the Remote Management Unit (RMU) connection pane (Figure 47). It allows to connect to the remote management unit.

Figure 47 Connect to RMU



😻 Note

The down arrow will open a list of previously connected RMUs.

The factory installed RMU in each system uses a standard Web browser for remote library access. The supported browsers are:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6.0 and above
- Netscape Navigator version 4.01 and above.

You can do the following by means of the RMU:

• Update RMU firmware

- Access the library status
- Make configuration changes
- Access the library Operator Panel
- Update the library controller firmware
- Retrieve library command and error logs
- Use the Quantum website to access Scalar documentation

The RMU supports Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) version 2.0 and acts as an SNMP server. The RMU acquires Tape Alert 3.0 compatibility information from the library over the serial interface port and sends that information to a SNMP server. The RMU also detects a power loss and generates a SNMP trap for notification.

## View Log

| Figure 48 Vie                               | ew Log: standard                              | d mode                       |                     |                  |                          |                      |
|---|---|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Scalar DLC log vie                          | wer - Microsoft Intern                        | et Explorer                  |                     |                  |                          | _ 8 ×                |
| <u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F    | F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp | )                            |                     |                  |                          |                      |
| Back Forward                                | - 🐼 🛃<br>Stop Refresh                         | Home Search Favorite         | s History Print     | <b>Edit</b>      |                          |                      |
| A <u>d</u> dress 🙋 Type=&fClo               | d=&fClient=&isClass=on&f(                     | Class=&isObject=on&fObject=i | kisDescr=on&fDescr= | &isInf=on&isWrn= | =on&isErr=on&isCErr=on 💌 | i ∂Go ∐Links >       |
|   |   |                              |                     |                  |                          |                      |
| adic Scalar D                               | LC log file 200109                            | 06-1 💌 Record                | H Filter All mess   | ages             | Max r                    | ecords 25            |
| Submit filter                               | Advanced mode                                 | Reverse sort order <b>I</b>  | Download            | <u>Help</u>      | HOME / END               | / <u>NEXT</u> / prev |
| Time  | Command                                       | Type I                       | D Client Class      |                  | Object                   | Des                  |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:41.186 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System Logger   |                  | Logger                   | Suc                  |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:41.236 Unknown                              | r                            | /a System Tracer    |                  | Tracer                   | Suc                  |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:45.572 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Sim                  |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:48.176 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Cre.                 |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:50.369 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Cre.                 |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:50.479 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Upa                  |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:50.619 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Upa                  |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:50.659 Unknown                              | r                            | l/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Suc                  |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:50.679 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System NSEM     | ailConnection    | NSEMailConnection        | Suc                  |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:50.790 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System NSSnn    | npConnection     | NSSnmpConnection         | Suc                  |
| 11:10 06.09.2001                            | 0:51.120 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System MsgTra   | anslator         | NSMessageTranslator      | Suc                  |
| 106.09.2001 11:10                           | 0:51.310 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System Devicel  | Manager          | DeviceManager            | Suc_                 |
| 11:11 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) ( | 1:00.203 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System DasCli   | ent              | Control Path             | Clie                 |
| 106.09.2001 11:11                           | 1:00.704 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System DasCli   | ent              | Control Path             | Clie                 |
| 11:11 11:11                                 | 1:00.974 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System ScsiCo   | n                | DevADICScalar_10005      | 6555555555 Suc       |
| 106.09.2001 11:11                           | 1:01.024 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System Scalar   | 10K              | DevADICScalar_10K11      | 111111111 Suc        |
| 11:11 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) ( | 1:01.074 Unknown                              | r                            | ı/a System DasRp    | с                | DASRpc                   | Das                  |
| 11:11 11:11                                 | 1:03.948 Unknown                              | r                            | i/a System AmIS     |                  | LibADICScalar_100055     | 555555555 Suc 🗸      |
|   |   |                              |                     |                  |                          | •                    |
| ] Done                                      |   |                              |                     |                  | 🔤 🔤 Local ir             | ntranet              |

Selecting the View Log opens the online log viewer window. Refer also to the Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

| Name                | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|-----------|--|
| Scalar DLC log file | Select    | The log file to view can be selected (current session by default). |
| Record Filter       | Select    | The filter of records can be specified.                            |

| Name                | Operation    | Description  |
|---------------------|--------------|--|
| Max records         | Enter        | The maximum number of records to show can be specified.  |
| Advanced mode       | Check        | Pressing the <b>Submit filter</b> button shows the View Log advanced mode window. See <u>Figure 49</u> on page 64. |
| Reversed sort order | Check        | Not supported in current version.  |
| Download            | Click        | Downloads the current log file.  |
| Help                | Click        | Open Log help screen.  |
| Home                | Click        | Go to the first record page.   |
| End                 | Click        | Go to the last record page.  |
| Next                | Click        | Go to the next record page.  |
| Prev                | Click        | Go to the previous record page.  |
| Submit filter       | Click        | Refresh the current screen to apply changes.   |
| Record messages     | Double-click | Open the log message detail window. See <u>Figure 50</u> on page 65.   |

Double-clicking on the record message opens the log message detail window. See Figure 50 on page 65.

| Figure 49 View Log: advan  | iced mode                        |                       |                     |                |                           |
|--|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| Scalar DLC log viewer - Microsoft Int  | ernet Explorer                   |                       |                     |                | _ 8 >                     |
| <u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> | <u>1</u> elp                     |                       |                     |                |                           |
| ↔ → → ⊗ 🔄<br>Back Forward Stop Refresh   | Home Search Favor                | ites History Prin     | nt Edit             |                |                           |
| Address 🙋 http://computer:8080/servlet/log                                       | gviewer?logfile=20010906-1&v     | iewpoint=AllErr&msgna | =25&advanced=o      | n              |                           |
| adic Scalar DLC log file 2001<br>• Time:   | 0906-1 💌 Reco<br>🔽 Command type: | ord Filter All mes    | sages<br>Command id | : .            | Aax records 25<br>Client: |
| from to  |                                  |                       |                     |                |                           |
| Class:   | 🗹 Object:                        |                       | Description:        |                | Data                      |
| 🗹 🕕 information messages   | 🗹 🕛 warnings                     | V                     | 💿 errors            | V              | 🙁 critical errors         |
| Submit filter Advanced mode  | Reverse sort orde                | r 🗖 🔹 <u>Download</u> | <u>Help</u>         | HOME /         | END / NEXT / prev         |
| Time Commai  | nd Type                          | ID Client Class       | ;                   | Object         | Des                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:41.186 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Logge      | er                  | Logger         | Suc                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:41.236 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Trace      | ir                  | Tracer         | Suc                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:45.572 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Sim                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:48.176 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Cre.                      |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:50.369 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Cre.                      |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:50.479 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Upa                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:50.619 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Upa                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:50.659 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Suc                       |
| 106.09.2001 11:10:50.679 Unknown   |                                  | n/a System NSEM       | MailConnection      | NSEMailConnect | tion Suc                  |
| 06.09.2001 11:10:50.790 Unknown  |                                  | n/a System NSSr       | nmpConnection       | NSSnmpConnec   | tion Suc                  |
| 06.09.2001 11:10:51.120 Unknown  |                                  | n/a System MsqT       | ranslator           | NSMessageTran  | slator Suc                |
| 06.09.2001 11:10:51.310 Unknown  |                                  | n/a System Devic      | eManager            | DeviceManager  | Suc.                      |
| Č.   |                                  | ,                     | 5                   | 3              | - F                       |
| ] Done   | <b>_</b>                         |                       |                     |                | Local intranet            |

| Name            | Operation   | Description  |
|-----------------|-------------|--|
| Time            | Check/Enter | Specify the time range of the record to show using the <b>From</b> and <b>To</b> fields. Empty fields specify all records. |
| Command<br>Type | Check/Enter | Specify the command type of the record to show.  |
| Command ID      | Check/Enter | Specify the command ID of the record to show.  |
| Client          | Check/Enter | Specify the client of the record to show.  |
| Class           | Check/Enter | Specify the class of the record to show.   |
| Object          | Click/Enter | Specify the object of the record to show.  |
| Description     | Check/Enter | Specify the description of the record to show.   |
| Data            | Check       | Specify the record data to show.   |
| Information     | Check       | Show information messages.   |
| Warnings        | Check       | Show warning messages.   |
| Errors          | Check       | Show error messages.   |
| Critical errors | Check       | Show critical error messages.  |

Double-click on the record message to open the log message details window.

| Scalar DLC log messag                                | je detail - Microsoft Internet Explorer   | >                  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--------------------|--|--|--|
| <u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vo | rites <u>I</u> ools <u>H</u> elp  |                    |  |  |  |
| Back Forward   | Stop Refresh Home Search Favorites History       Image: Stop Refresh Home     Stop Refresh Home |                    |  |  |  |
| Address 🙋 http://compute                             | r:8080/servlet/logdetail?logfile=20010906-1&offset=512 💽 🔗 Go                                   | Links <sup>3</sup> |  |  |  |
|  |   | ł                  |  |  |  |
| adic   |   |                    |  |  |  |
| Log  | 20010906-1  |                    |  |  |  |
| Date   | 06.09.2001  |                    |  |  |  |
| Time   | 11:10:48.176  |                    |  |  |  |
| Severity   | (1) information   | 1 information      |  |  |  |
| Command ID   | n/a   |                    |  |  |  |
| Command Type   | Unknown   | Unknown            |  |  |  |
| Client   | System  | System             |  |  |  |
| Class  | DeviceManager   |                    |  |  |  |
| Object   | DeviceManager   |                    |  |  |  |
| Description  |   |                    |  |  |  |
| Create new device node                               | e, type 0, vendor ID , product ID , firmware revision level <>, serial number <1111111111>,     |                    |  |  |  |
| Data   |   |                    |  |  |  |
|  |   |                    |  |  |  |
|  |   |                    |  |  |  |
| 2 -  |   |                    |  |  |  |

#### Figure 50 Log Message Details

#### Name

## Description

| Log          | Log file the record message is taken from. |
|--------------|--|
| Date         | The record date.                           |
| Time         | The record time.                           |
| Severity     | The record severity.                       |
| Command ID   | The record command id.                     |
| Command type | The record command type.                   |
| Client       | The record client.                         |
| Class        | The record class.                          |
| Object       | The record object.                         |
| Description  | The record description                     |
| Data         | The record additional data.                |

# Help

This section contains the information that can be helpful for the customer.

| Options  | Name              | Description   |
|--|-------------------|---|
| Help<br>Help Contents<br>License Agreement<br>About Scalar DLC | Help Content      | Contains browser-based HTML help files that cover<br>installation, operation, and service. This information<br>appears in a separate window. The contents, index,<br>search engine, and bookmarks are accessed from this<br>window. |
|  | License Agreement | A copy of the Scalar DLC software license agreement can be viewed from this pane.   |
|  | About             | The Scalar DLC software and component code versions can be viewed from this pane. All Scalar DLC hot fixes and service packs (if any) are enlisted here, too. See Figure 51.  |

Figure 51 Scalar DLC Software Version Code

| ु About Scalar D  | LC             | × |
|-------------------|----------------|---|
| Scalar D          | )LC 2.7        |   |
| Distributed Libra | ary Controller |   |
| Copyright (c) 20  | 33 - 2006 ADIC |   |
| Version inform    | ation:         |   |
| Build             | 2.7.0001       |   |
| Kernel            | v.2.7.0001     |   |
| JewelJni          | v.2.71         |   |
| Object Server     | v.2.71         |   |
| GUI               | v.2.71         |   |
|                   |                |   |
|                   | Ok             |   |

# **GUI** Tabs

This topic describes the main area of the Scalar DLC Management GUI screen, the GUI tabs. All extended configuration and management is executed from this area.

The detailed structure is described in <u>Tabs Structure</u> on page 74.



While using the GUI tabs, clicking the expand/collapse button on the left of the branch in the *Select Components* area of the pane expands or collapses that branch of the tree. Selecting the actual branch displays the associated properties.

W Note Expanding the tree does <u>not</u> select branches from the tree.

The top of the tree always indicates the Scalar DLC controller. As each branch of the tree is expanded and selected, the properties for that branch of the tree appear. An explanation of the tree objects is described in <u>Table 9</u> on page 68.



Some elements are present on all the panes of the Scalar DLC Management GUI, while other are not.

## Table 9Tree Objects

| Object              | lcon | Color   | Description   |
|---------------------|------|---|---|
| Controller          |      | Black   | The name (Hostname) of the Scalar DLC server controller.<br>All the example screens of this manual use either <b>computer</b> ,<br>or <b>sdlccluster</b> (failover solution).   |
| Logical<br>library  |      | <ul> <li>Green</li> <li>Dark<br/>yellow</li> <li>Red</li> </ul> | The name of the logical library object that represents the actual library to the client.<br>The color of the library indicates the state of the library.<br>The state of the library also is indicated in parenthesis next to the name of the library. <u>Table 10</u> on page 69 explains the definition of the states.  |
| Physical<br>library | Dm   | <ul> <li>Green</li> <li>Dark<br/>yellow</li> <li>Red</li> </ul> | The name of the physical tape library device.<br>The color of the library indicates the state of the library.<br>The state of the library also is indicated in parenthesis next to<br>the name of the library. <u>Table 11</u> on page 70 explains the<br>definition of the states.   |
| Robot               | ■C   | <ul><li>Black</li><li>Gray</li></ul>                            | The robotic accessor inside the physical device. Most devices contain only one robot (single aisle libraries), however some devices contain two robots (dual aisle libraries). The color of the robot indicates the state of the robot. See <u>Table 12</u> on page 70.   |
| Partition           |      | <ul> <li>Black</li> <li>Gray</li> </ul>                         | A segment of Physical library. It contains the continuous range<br>of slots of single type and single media domain.<br>Also the storage partition always contains either linear shelve<br>slots or tower slots, but not both of them even when they have<br>the same media domain and type.<br>The created partition should be assigned to a Logical library.<br>The Logical library should contain at least one storage<br>partition, one mailbox partition, and one drive partition of the<br>same media domain for the complete configuration.<br>In dual aisle libraries, the partition also must be in the range of<br>one robot only. If the robot is offline, its partitions are offline,<br>too.<br>The color of the partition indicates the state of the partition.<br>See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71. |
| Scratch pool        | ß    | Black   | The name of the scratch cartridge pool. Contains the data<br>cartridges available for writing.<br>The pool content may be either the continuous range or a<br>discrete set.<br>Only the cartridges of a single media type can be assigned to<br>the pool.   |
| Clean pool          | ß    | Black   | The name of the clean cartridge pool. Contains the cleaning<br>cartridges.<br>The pool content may be either the continuous range or a<br>discrete set.<br>Only the cartridges of a single media type can be assigned to<br>the pool.   |
| Cartridges          | Ð    | Black   | This list indicates cartridges currently contained in the library.  |

| Table 9 Tree Objects (Continue | ed) |
|--------------------------------|-----|
|--------------------------------|-----|

| Object                | lcon | Color                                | Description  |  |  |
|-----------------------|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Offline<br>cartridges | Ĩ    | Black                                | This list indicates cartridges that were removed from the physical library and their image is retained for archive purposes.   |  |  |
| Data<br>cartridge     | Ħ    | Dark green                           | For a dark green cartridge text, the list indicates the data cartridges. See <u>Table 19</u> on page 84 for the details.   |  |  |
| Cleaning<br>cartridge | Ŧ    | <ul> <li>Dark<br/>yellow</li> </ul>  | For a dark yellow cartridge text, the list indicates the cleaning cartridges. See <u>Table 19</u> on page 84 for the details.  |  |  |
| Storage slots         |      | Black                                | This list indicates the storage area in the physical library.  |  |  |
| Storage slot          |      | <ul><li>Blue</li><li>Gray</li></ul>  | For a blue storage slot name, a cartridge is present in the slot.<br>See <u>Table 14</u> on page 71.   |  |  |
|                       |      | <ul><li>Black</li><li>Gray</li></ul> | For a black storage slot name, the slot is empty. See <u>Table 14</u> on page 71.  |  |  |
| Mailbox               | â    | Black                                | The name of the insert/eject area of the logical library.<br>Contains a set of insert/eject slots that are also called<br>mailboxes or mailbox slots.<br>The mailbox content may be either a continuous slot range or<br>a discrete set. |  |  |
| Mailboxes             | E    | Black                                | This list indicates the whole mailbox (insert/eject) area in the physical library.   |  |  |
| Mailbox slot          | 27   | <ul><li>Blue</li><li>Gray</li></ul>  | For a blue mailbox slot name, a cartridge is present in the slot.<br>See <u>Table 15</u> on page 72.   |  |  |
|                       |      | <ul><li>Black</li><li>Gray</li></ul> | For a black mailbox slot name, the slot is empty. See <u>Table 15</u> on page 72.  |  |  |
| Drives                | M    | Black                                | This area contains the drive slots for executing the read/write operations   |  |  |
| Drive slot            | s    | <ul><li>Blue</li><li>Gray</li></ul>  | For a blue drive slot name, a cartridge is present in the slot.<br>See <u>Table 16</u> on page 73.   |  |  |
|                       | ī    | <ul><li>Black</li><li>Gray</li></ul> | For a black drive slot name, the slot is empty. See <u>Table 16</u> on page 73.  |  |  |

The following tables describe the states and properties of the objects mentioned above.

| Table 10 | Logical Library States |
|----------|------------------------|
|----------|------------------------|

| State                      | lcon | Color | Description   |
|----------------------------|------|-------|---|
| Online                     | h    | Green | The library is online and accepts all commands                                    |
| Online, alarm <sup>a</sup> | 20   | Green | The library is online and accepts all commands.<br>An error has been encountered. |

## Table 10Logical Library States

| State                | lcon | Color       | Description   |
|----------------------|------|-------------|---|
| Diagnostic (Service) |      | Dark yellow | Either the library diagnostic or the firmware update is being executed.   |
| Disabled             |      | Dark yellow | The library is logically switched off ( <b>Home</b> operation executed).  |
| Invalid              |      | Red         | The library configuration is invalid (one or more required partition(s) missing).                                 |
| Not ready            |      | Red         | The library is not available (either the connection is lost or the admin has manually changed the library state). |

a. Alarm flag indicates that an error has occurred but it does not specify the error. To find out what has happened, use the Log Viewer, as described in Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

#### Table 11 Physical Library States

| State                      | lcon | Color       | Description   |
|----------------------------|------|-------------|---|
| Online                     |      | Green       | The library is online and accepts all commands                                    |
| Online, alarm <sup>a</sup> | 20   | Green       | The library is online and accepts all commands.<br>An error has been encountered. |
| Diagnostic                 | 0    | Dark yellow | The library diagnostic is being executed.   |
| Service                    | 8    | Dark yellow | The library is in service mode (firmware update process is being executed).       |
| Not ready                  | 18   | Red         | The library is not ready (service needed).  |
| Offline                    | 0    | Red         | The library is offline (connection lost).   |

a. Alarm flag indicates that an error has occurred but it does not specify the error. To find out what has happened, use the Log Viewer, as described in Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

### Table 12Robot States

| State           | lcon | Color | Description  |
|-----------------|------|-------|--|
| Normal (Online) | ■C   | Black | The robot is online and functioning. All elements and slots of the robot are accessible. |
| Offline         |      | Gray  | The robot is offline. All elements and slots of the robot are temporary not accessible.  |

| Table 13 | Partition | Class | and | State |
|----------|-----------|-------|-----|-------|
|          |           |       |     |       |

| Class and State        | lcon     | Color | Description   |
|------------------------|----------|-------|---|
| Storage, online        | 2        | Black | Contains the continuous range of storage slots that are either the linear storages or the tower storages. The robot is online.  |
| Storage, offline       |          | Gray  | Contains the continuous range of storage slots that are either the linear storages or the tower storages. The robot is offline. |
| Import/Export, online  | <b>1</b> | Black | Contains the continuous range of mailbox slots. The robot is online.  |
| Import/Export, offline | 2        | Gray  | Contains the continuous range of mailbox slots. The robot is offline.   |
| Drive, online          |          | Black | Contains the continuous range of drives. The robot is online.   |
| Drive, offline         | 2        | Gray  | Contains the continuous range of drives. The robot is offline.  |

## Table 14Storage Slots

| State                                   | lcon       | Color | Description  |
|---|------------|-------|--|
| Occupied, online                        |            | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online.  |
| Occupied, offline                       | ==         | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline.   |
| Occupied, online,<br>alarm <sup>a</sup> | <u>Ø</u> _ | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>get a cartridge).  |
| Occupied, offline, alarm                | <u>Ø</u> _ | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>get a cartridge). |
| Empty, online                           |            | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online.   |
| Empty, offline                          |            | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline.  |
| Empty, online, alarm                    | <u>ø</u> 5 | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>put a cartridge).     |
| Empty, offline, alarm                   | <u>Ø</u> _ | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>put a cartridge).    |
| Home position, online                   | â          | Black | The slot is empty but it remains a home position of a cartridge that is currently in a drive or mailbox slot. The robot is online.   |

## Table 14 Storage Slots (Continued)

| State                  | lcon | Color | Description   |
|------------------------|------|-------|---|
| Home position, offline | â    | Gray  | The slot is empty but it remains a home position of a cartridge that is currently in a drive or mailbox slot. The robot is offline. |
| Not available          |      | Gray  | The slot is currently unavailable (for example, tower door is opened).  |

a. Alarm flag indicates that an error has occurred but it does not specify the error. To find out what has happened, use the Log Viewer, as described in Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

| State                                   | lcon       | Color | Description  |
|---|------------|-------|--|
| Occupied, online                        | 1          | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online.  |
| Occupied, offline                       | 63         | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline.   |
| Occupied, online,<br>alarm <sup>a</sup> | <b>Ø</b> 9 | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>get a cartridge).  |
| Occupied, offline, alarm                | <b>Ø</b> r | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>get a cartridge). |
| Empty, online                           | <b>-</b> 7 | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online.   |
| Empty, offline                          | <b>C 3</b> | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline.  |
| Empty, online, alarm                    | c 🖉        | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online. An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not put a cartridge).           |
| Empty, offline, alarm                   | Ø.         | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline. An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not put a cartridge).          |
| Home position, online                   | ĉa         | Black | The slot is empty but it remains a home position of a cartridge that is currently in a drive slot. The robot is online.              |
| Home position, offline                  | ĉa         | Gray  | The slot is empty but it remains a home position of a cartridge that is currently in a drive slot. The robot is offline.             |
| Not compatible                          | 2          | Gray  | The slot is not compatible with the library.   |
| Missing                                 | - 3        | Gray  | The slot is physically missing.  |

a. Alarm flag indicates that an error has occurred but it does not specify the error. To find out what has happened, use the Log Viewer, as described in Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

#### Table 16Drive Slots

| State                                   | lcon       | Color | Description   |
|---|------------|-------|---|
| Occupied, online                        | T          | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online  |
| Occupied, offline                       | <u>ن</u>   | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline   |
| Occupied, online,<br>alarm <sup>a</sup> | <b>≝</b> ₁ | Blue  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is online.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>dismount a cartridge).  |
| Occupied, offline,<br>alarm             | <b>₫</b> , | Gray  | The slot contains a cartridge. The robot is offline.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>dismount a cartridge). |
| Empty, online                           | s          | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online.  |
| Empty, offline                          |            | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline.   |
| Empty, online, alarm                    | <b>≝</b> ₁ | Black | The slot is empty and free. The robot is online.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>load a cartridge).         |
| Empty, offline, alarm                   | <b>₫</b> ∎ | Gray  | The slot is empty and free. The robot is offline.<br>An error is encountered (for example, the robot did not<br>load a cartridge).        |
| Not available                           |            | Gray  | The slot is unavailable.  |
| Not installed                           |            | Gray  | The slot is not installed.  |

a. Alarm flag indicates that an error has occurred but it does not specify the error. To find out what has happened, use the Log Viewer, as described in Log Viewer Utility on page 237.

The panes of element properties contain the property icons (Table 17).

 Table 17
 Element Properties: Icons

| Property  | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-----------|------|-----------|--|
| Read-only | 8    | Supplied  | The property or field is read-only and cannot be edited.   |
| Editable  | ø    | Enter     | The property can be edited, checked, or selected. The icon is                                    |
|           |      | Select    | typically used for text fields, check boxes, and combo boxes.                                    |
|           |      | Check     |  |
| Disabled  | ×    | Supplied  | The property cannot be edited until another field is selected or checked. Then becomes editable. |
| Forbidden |      | Supplied  | The user is not authorized to change the property.   |

Some Management GUI panes and pop-up windows also contain the typical operational buttons listed in <u>Table 18</u> (either all these buttons or several buttons or only one of them).

| Button           | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|------|-----------|---|
| OK/Create        | -    | Click     | <ul><li>Create object (creation panes).</li><li>Execute operation.</li></ul>  |
| Cancel/Terminate | ×    | Click     | <ul> <li>Cancel operation.</li> <li>Close pop-up pane without creating an object.</li> <li>Close pop-up pane without executing an operation.</li> </ul> |
| Save/Update      |      | Click     | Save the element properties after edit.   |
| Help             | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Table 18Operational Buttons

## Tabs Structure

The internal structure of the Scalar DLC Management GUI tabs is summarized in the following list.

- Library Tab. Main operating area. Refer to Library Tab on page 77.
- Configuration Tab. Managing and reviewing the library, SCSI Target, client, and user configuration. Refer to <u>Configuration Tab</u> on page 93.
  - Logical Tab. Managing library logical configuration, cartridges, pools, mailbox areas, drives. Refer to <u>Logical Tab</u> on page 93.
  - Physical Tab. Managing the physical library and the library partitions. Refer to <u>Physical Tab</u> on page 126.
  - Users Tab. Managing user parameters. Refer to <u>Users Tab</u> on page 144.
  - Clients Tab. Managing clients. Refer to <u>Clients Tab</u> on page 150.
  - SCSI Target Tab. Managing SCSI Targets and LUNs. Refer to <u>SCSI Target Tab</u> on page 178.
- Events Tab. Managing the command queue and the created rules, monitoring the system events and acknowledging the notifications. Refer to <u>Events Tab</u> on page 189.
  - Queue Tab. Managing command queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.
  - Monitoring Tab. Monitoring the current login session events. Refer to <u>Monitoring Tab</u> on page 192.
  - Acknowledge Tab. Acknowledging the notifications. Refer to <u>Acknowledge Tab</u> on page 194.
  - History Tab. Monitoring the events during all sessions. Refer to <u>History Tab</u> on page 195.
  - Rules Tab. Managing the rules. Refer to <u>Rules Tab</u> on page 195.
- Service Tab. Executing library diagnostics, view hardware logs, managing service request (tickets), command panel, and cluster. Refer to <u>Service Tab</u> on page 199.
  - Logs Tab. Monitoring the library command log and error log. Refer to Logs Tab on page 199.
  - Diagnostic Tab. Executing the library diagnostics. Refer to <u>Diagnostic Tab</u> on page 203.
  - Tickets Tab. Managing the service requests (tickets). Refer to Tickets Tab on page 205.

- Operator Panel Tab. Executing operator panel commands from a remote console. Refer to Operator Panel Tab on page 211.
- Cluster Tab. Viewing and changing the cluster settings. Refer to <u>Cluster Tab</u> on page 214.
- SNMP Tab. Managing the SNMP settings. Refer to <u>SNMP Tab</u> on page 215.

The details for each tab are described in the appropriate sections.

# GUI Log

The GUI Log is located at the bottom portion of the screen. It shows the list of messages that reflects the operations executed in the Management GUI during the current session. Use the scroll bar if the list is large or the message is long.

W Note The GUI Log does not reflect the operations executed from a client side.

#### Figure 53 GUI Log

| 13:41 mount cartridge 000002 finished   | - | • |
|---|---|---|
| 13:41 eject cartridge 000027 finished   |   |   |
| 🚯 13:42 eject cartridge 000054 finished |   | • |
|   | • |   |

#### lcon

#### Description

- Indicates that the current message contains an information message.
- Indicates that the current message contains a warning message.
- Indicates that the current message contains an error message.

# 5



The Library Tab is the main operational area. All media move commands and most logical library monitoring is executed from this tab.



The Library Tab is accessible for all users. Some move commands require additional rights.

As the Library Tab is opened, in the Select Components area of the pane the Controller appears.

| adic User admin connecte     | ed to computer              |                                 |  |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| ibrary Configuration Events  | s Service                   |                                 |  |
| Select component             | Properties                  |                                 |  |
| 🛛 🗏 computer                 | Property                    | Value                           |  |
| 🗢 ኩ Library2 (online)        | Dev Identifier              | GenuineIntel                    |  |
| 🕑 ኩ Library3 (online)        | 🗟 CPU Vendor Identifier     | x86 Family 5 Model 4 Stepping 3 |  |
| 🖭 🖬 Library1 (online)        | 🗟 CPU Speed (MHz)           | 200                             |  |
|                              | 🗟 Total Physical Memory (K) | 64948                           |  |
|                              | 🗟 Free Physical Memory (K)  | 6012                            |  |
|                              | 🗟 Total Virtual Memory (K)  | 2097024                         |  |
|                              | 🗟 Free Virtual Memory (K)   | 1938780                         |  |
|                              |                             |                                 |  |
| 17:51 admin connected to com | nputer                      |                                 |  |

## Figure 54 Library Controller

| Field/Button          | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|-----------------------|------|-----------|--|
| CPU Identifier        | ₿    | Supplied  | The CPU identifier.                    |
| CPU Vendor ID         | 8    | Supplied  | The CPU vendor identifier.             |
| CPU Speed             | 8    | Supplied  | The CPU speed.                         |
| Total Physical Memory | 윩    | Supplied  | The total physical memory size.        |
| Free Physical Memory  | Ð    | Supplied  | The free physical memory size.         |
| Total Virtual Memory  | ß    | Supplied  | The total virtual memory size.         |
| Free Virtual Memory   | ß    | Supplied  | The free virtual memory size.          |
| Help                  | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

# Library

The Library Properties pane (right) contains two tab panes: *Properties*, with the library properties (refer to <u>Library Properties</u> on page 79), and the *Diagnostics*, with the diagnostic information for the selected library (refer to <u>Library Diagnostics</u> on page 80).

# **Library Properties**

#### Figure 55 Library Properties

| 🚖 Scalar DLC   |                        |          |   |  |
|--|------------------------|----------|---|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help                             |                        |          |   |  |
| adic User admin connected to computer                                |                        |          |   |  |
| Library Configuration Events Servi                                   | ice                    |          |   |  |
|  |                        |          |   |  |
| Select component   | Property               | Value    |   |  |
| 🗣 🔜 computer   | 🗟 Name                 | Library1 |   |  |
| P- In Library1 (online)  | 🗟 ID                   | 4        |   |  |
| er ⊕n Cantridges<br>er ∰n Pool1                                      | 🗟 Number of cartridges | 38       |   |  |
| • 🛱 E01  | 🗟 Number of drives     | 10       |   |  |
| 🕒 🗣 🚊 101  | 🗟 Number of slots      | 90       |   |  |
| 🗢 🖶 Drives   | 🗟 Number of I/E slots  | 30       |   |  |
| Cliprary2 (online)   | 🖻 State                | Online   |   |  |
|  | 🗟 Auto-cleaning        | On       |   |  |
|  |                        |          |   |  |
|  | Clients                |          |   |  |
|  | Client1                |          |   |  |
|  |                        |          |   |  |
|  |                        |          |   |  |
|  | Properties Diagnostics | 3        | ? |  |
| -  |                        |          |   |  |
| 12:31 admin connected to computer                                    |                        |          |   |  |
| 12.31 Prease wart. Scanning     12.31 Scanning finished successfully |                        |          |   |  |
| 12:31 No new library found   |                        |          |   |  |
| 💁 1 3-33 Initializing alamant atatua far library Library             |                        |          |   |  |

| Field/Button         | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name                 | ٰ    | Supplied  | Logical library name.                                  |
| ID                   | ۲    | Supplied  | Logical library identification number.                 |
| Number of cartridges | ۲    | Supplied  | Number of available cartridges.                        |
| Number of drives     | ۲    | Supplied  | Number of available drives.                            |
| Number of slots      | ۲    | Supplied  | Number of available storage slots.                     |
| Number of I/E slots  | ۲    | Supplied  | Number of available mailbox slots.                     |
| State                | ۲    | Supplied  | Logical library state. See <u>Table 10</u> on page 69. |
| Auto-cleaning        | 물    | Supplied  | Indicates if auto-cleaning is enabled or turned off.   |

| Field/Button           | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Clients                |      | Supplied  | The clients attached to the logical library.   |
| Inventory <sup>a</sup> | ¢    | Click     | Initialize all the library elements and assign home positions if necessary. See <u>Figure 3</u> on page 5. |
| Help                   | 7    | Click     | Open online Help for the current pane.   |

a. The physical library is covered with a set of partitions. These partitions are assigned to some logical libraries. A single partition can be assigned to two or more logical libraries. It is in the concepts of the Scalar DLC. Such apparitions are called "shared", and the inventory operation affects all partitions assigned to the logical library.

😻 Note

If a new library has been created, an **inventory** must be executed to avoid problems with the cartridge home positions.

# Library Diagnostics

#### Figure 56 Library Diagnostics

| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help                 |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| adic User admin connected to computer                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Select component Procedure In progress Passages Errors 2 |  |  |  |  |  |
| P 🖳 computer 📕 Status verification Inventory 14 0        |  |  |  |  |  |
| P In Library1 (online                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| ♥ ∰ Cartridges   |  |  |  |  |  |
| で mg P0011<br>の 合 E01                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🗢 🖿 Library2 (online                                     |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🕑 📴 Library3 (online                                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Properties Diagnostics                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12:31 admin connected to computer                        |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12:31 Please wait. Scanning                              |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12:31 Scanning finished successfully                     |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12:31 No new library found                               |  |  |  |  |  |

The *Diagnostics* pane is designed for testing purposes.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                          |
|--------------|------|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| Procedure    |      | Supplied  | The global test procedure.           |
| In progress  |      | Supplied  | The test step currently in progress. |

| Field/Button                              | lcon    | Operation | Description  |
|---|---------|-----------|--|
| Passages                                  |         | Supplied  | Number of passages.  |
| Errors                                    |         | Supplied  | Number of errors, if any.  |
| Random<br>move test                       | ₽Ţ<br>I | Click     | Launch Random move test. Refer to <u>Random Move Test</u> on page 81.  |
| Mount test                                | ₽₽      | Click     | Launch Random mount test. Refer to <u>Random Mount Test</u> on page 82.  |
| Element<br>status<br>verification<br>test | ľ       | Click     | Launch Inventory test.<br>This test initializes element status command for the logical<br>library and verifies whether the starting picture of the library<br>corresponds the picture received (total number of elements,<br>empty elements, occupied slots, etc.). Any single operation is<br><b>inventory</b> command. |
| Element<br>position test                  | 엄       | Click     | Launch Move Gripper test.<br>This test initializes move gripper command, it randomly moves<br>the robot gripper to any slot assigned to the logical library and<br>checks the element position. No media is moved within this<br>test.   |
| Terminate                                 | ×       | Click     | Stop current test. The temporary warning pane appears, see Figure 57.  |
| Help                                      | ?       | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |



To avoid interfering with client work, do not execute the Library Diagnostics tests while the library is in use by a client.

AUTION

All Library Diagnostics tests are cyclic, when started, the tests are executed endlessly until the Admin clicks Cancel. (see <u>Figure 57</u>).

| Figure 5 | 7 Stop | Current | Test |
|----------|--------|---------|------|
|----------|--------|---------|------|

| 🛓 Warning |              | × |
|-----------|--------------|---|
|           | Please, wait |   |

## **Random Move Test**

Figure 58 Random Move: Select Media Type

| 🛓 List of Media types | ×      |
|-----------------------|--------|
| Select Media type     | St->St |
| DLT III               |        |
| DLT IIIXT             | St-≻IE |
| DLT IV                | IE-≻IE |
| SDLT                  |        |
| SDLTII                | Cancel |
|                       |        |

This test moves the cartridges of the selected media type either from Storage to Storage, or from Storage to I/E (and vice versa), or from I/E to I/E. Any single operation is **move** command (refer to <u>Move Cartridge</u> to <u>Element</u> on page 86), the cartridge and target slot are selected at random by media type.

## **Random Mount Test**

Figure 59 Random Mount: Select Media Type

| 🕌 List of Media types | ×      |
|-----------------------|--------|
| Select Media type     | Start  |
| DLT III               | Cancol |
| DLT IIIXT             | Cancer |
| DLT IV                |        |
| SDLT                  |        |
| SDLT II               |        |

This test mounts the cartridges of the selected media type and dismounts them from drives. Any single operation is **mount** or **dismount** command, the cartridge and target drive are selected at random by media type.

## Cartridges

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Cartridges are displayed. Clicking the expand/ collapse button causes an element expansion.

| Cartridges   | ed Service Help   |   |       |     |
|--|---|---|-------|-----|
| Library Configuration Ever   | nts Service   |   |       |     |
| Select component   | Select Cartridge  |   |       |     |
| ♥       Image: computer         ♥       Image: Library1 (online)         ●   | Volser           ២ 000000           ២ 000001           ២ 000002           ២ 000003           ២ 000004           ២ 000005           ២ 000006           ២ 000007           ២ 000008           ២ 000030           ២ 000030           ២ 000031           ២ 000032           ២ 000032           ២ 000032 | MediaType         △           DLT III         DLT III           DLT III         DLT IIIXT           DLT IIIXT         DLT IIIXT | State |     |
|  | 000035  | DLT IIIXT   |       | - 7 |
| <ul> <li>14:25 Initializing element state</li> <li>14:25 Inventory for library Libret</li> <li>14:25 Initializing element state</li> <li>14:25 Inventory for library Libret</li> </ul> | tus for library Library1.<br>rary1 completed. Foun<br>tus for library Library1<br>rary1 completed.  | <br>d 40 cartridges.  |       |     |

| Field/Button | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|----------|-----------|---|
| Volser       |          | Select    | The volume serial number, a cartridge name. Each cartridge<br>has one volser.<br>The optical disks are represented with two cartridges because<br>each optical disk has two volsers.  |
| Media Type   |          | Select    | Cartridge media type. Refer to Media Types on page 263.   |
| State        |          | Select    | A cartridge state, empty means <i>stored</i> . Refer to <u>Cartridge</u><br><u>State</u> on page 84.  |
| Import       | ∟⊐<br>५⊑ | Click     | Transfer the cartridge from a mailbox slot to a storage area.<br>The target slot is a cartridge home position.<br>The button is enabled for a cartridge stored in a mailbox.  |
| Export       | F        | Click     | Transfer the cartridge to a mailbox. If more than one mailbox<br>exists, an additional export selection appears. See <u>Figure 61</u> .<br>Select an appropriate mailbox from the combo box.<br>This operation saves the cartridge home position.<br>The button is enabled for a cartridge not in a mailbox, when a<br>mailbox exist. |
| Mount        | r.<br>ē  | Click     | Insert a cartridge into the first available tape drive of the appropriate media type ( <b>Generic Mount</b> ).<br>The button is enabled for a stored cartridge.   |
| Dismount     | Ş        | Click     | Move a cartridge from a tape drive to the cartridge home position.<br>This button is enabled for a mounted cartridge.   |
| Move         |          | Click     | Open a pop-up Move window. Refer to <u>Move Cartridge to</u><br><u>Element</u> on page 86.<br>The move operation transfers a cartridge from its current<br>position to a selected destination slot.   |
| Help         | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

By default, the cartridges are sorted by media type, in ascending order. Click on the appropriate column title to change the sorting order.

To select cartridge for the operation, click on it. <Ctrl>+Click allows multiple cartridge selection, for the multiple **Export/Import** operations. Multiple **Mount/Dismount/Move** operations are not allowed in the Scalar DLC Management GUI.

Figure 61 Multiple Mailbox Selection

| 🌺 Selec | ct MailBox                          | × |
|---------|-------------------------------------|---|
| ů       | Select MailBox for export to<br>E01 | • |
|         | OK Cancel                           |   |

After a cartridge has been moved to the mailbox slot through the **Export** command and become *ejected*, it cannot be manipulated again until **Inventory** has been completed. After an **inventory** is completed, the cartridges are recognized as *stored*.

The Management GUI also allows drag and drop cartridge operations. Refer to <u>Drag and Drop Operations</u> on page 87.

# Cartridge State

The cartridges contained in the library have a different state. The state indicates a cartridge availability to accept commands, and so forth.

| Cartridge<br>state  | Command<br>status | lcon       | Description   |
|---------------------|-------------------|------------|---|
| Stored<br>(shown as | Active            | Ħ          | The cartridge is stored in mailbox or in storage slot. A cartridge in a storage slot is active for <b>Move</b> , <b>Mount</b> and <b>Export</b> |
| empty)              |                   | Ŧ          | operations, a cartridge in a mailbox slot is active for <b>Move</b> ,<br><b>Mount</b> and <b>Import</b> operations.                             |
| Mounted             | Active            | <b>⊞</b> ª | The cartridge is moved to the drive slot and is ready for the read/write operations. The cartridge is active for <b>Move</b> , <b>Export</b>    |
|                     |                   | ۳          | and <b>Dismount</b> operations.   |
| Reverse<br>mounted  | Not active        | -          | The optical disk is moved to the drive, and its other side is ready for the read/write operations. The cartridge is not active                  |
|                     |                   | <b>1</b>   | until the <b>Dismount</b> is done.  |
| Ejected             | Not active        | +          | The cartridge is exported into a mailbox slot, and a home position has been saved. The cartridge is not active for any                          |
|                     |                   | 1          | operations until the <b>Inventory</b> is finished.  |
| Unloaded            | Not active        | +          | The cartridge is exported into a mailbox slot, and a home position is lost. The cartridge is not active for any operations                      |
|                     |                   | <b>1</b>   | until the <b>inventory</b> is tinished.   |
| In problem<br>box   | Not active        | Ľ          | The cartridge is moved to a problem box. The cartridge is not active for any operation and remains not active after the                         |
|                     |                   | ľ          | <b>Inventory</b> . Operator can only physically remove this cartridge from the library (a home position will be lost then).                     |
| Offline             | Not active        | Ľ          | The cartridge is removed from the library. The cartridge was not found after the <b>Inventory</b> has been executed.                            |
|                     |                   |            |   |
| Being<br>ejected    | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving into a mailbox slot. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.   |
|                     |                   | E          |   |
| Being<br>inserted   | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving from the mailbox slot. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.   |
|                     |                   | E          |   |

 Table 19
 Cartridge States

| Cartridge<br>state   | Command<br>status | lcon       | Description  |            |   |   |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------|--|------------|---|---|
| Being<br>mounted     | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving to a drive slot. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.  |            |   |   |
|                      |                   | E          |  |            |   |   |
| Being<br>reverse     | Not active        | Ð          | The optical disk is moving to a drive slot. After the operation is executed, the cartridge will be <i>reverse mounted</i> . No |            |   |   |
| mounted              |                   | Ð          | commands are accepted. Temporary state.  |            |   |   |
| Being moved          | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving to another slot (low-level command is being executed). No commands are accepted. Temporary             |            |   |   |
|                      |                   | Đ          | state.   |            |   |   |
| Being<br>dismounted  | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving from the drive slot. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.  |            |   |   |
|                      |                   | E          |  |            |   |   |
| Being<br>reverse     | Not active        | Ð          | The optical disk is moving from a drive slot. The cartridge was reverse mounted. No commands are accepted. Temporary           |            |   |   |
| dismounted           |                   | E          | state.   |            |   |   |
| Being flipped        | Not active        | Not active | Not active   | Not active | Ð | The optical disk in drive slot is being flipped. If the cartridge state was <i>mounted</i> , after the operation is executed it will be |
|                      |                   | Ħ          | <i>reverse mounted</i> , and vice versa. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.  |            |   |   |
| Being in problem box | Not active        | Ð          | The cartridge is moving to a problem box. No commands are accepted. Temporary state.   |            |   |   |
|                      |                   | E          |  |            |   |   |

| Table 19 Cartridge States (Continued | t) |
|--------------------------------------|----|
|--------------------------------------|----|

If the cartridge is not found in the library after the **Inventory** has been executed, its state changes to offline. After that, the cartridge is removed from the Cartridge list of Logical library (both **Library** tab and **Configuration > Logical** tab, **Cartridges**) and goes to archive list, or the list of the offline cartridges. It is shown under the **Physical** tab of the **Configuration** area and contains the information about cartridges that were removed from the physical library. Refer to <u>Offline Cartridge</u> on page 137.

# Home Position

The cartridge home position concept is a basis of cartridge move operations in the Scalar DLC Management software. Every cartridge imputing in the library immediately gets a home position in the first free storage slot of appropriate type (for example, Generic DLT slot for DLT IV or SDLT cartridges; refer to <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264 for the details). Each cartridge has one and only home position. The slot can be a home position for one and only one cartridge (the only exception is optical disk — the two sides of an optical disk are represented with two volsers and one home position is assigned to both sides).



#### Always import cartridges when they are first appeared in the mailbox area. Otherwise there could be issues with a cartridge home position being the mailbox slot.

After the home position is assigned to the cartridge, it becomes available for move operations. The **Import** operation inserts the cartridge from a mailbox to the home position; the **Dismount** operation moves the cartridge from a drive to the home position. If the **Mount** operation has been executed and the cartridge is moved to a drive, the home position is saved and cannot be occupied by another cartridge. If the **Export** operation has been executed, the cartridge is ejected from the library and becomes unavailable. However, it saves the home position and if the **Inventory** operation finds the ejected cartridge, it becomes available again. Refer to <u>Table 19</u> on page 84.

The cartridge relinquishes the home position only after the **eject complete** operation is executed from a client side. The cartridge state is *unloaded* then. Refer to <u>Table 19</u> on page 84.

The home position cannot be changed after it is assigned. Every operation returning the cartridge to a library storage area puts it into the home position. The only exception is the **Move** operation (it can be executed from a client side as well); if the move destination is a storage slot, it will become a new home position of a cartridge. The old home position is lost in that event.



The DAS and ROBAR clients mostly use the analog of Mount, Dismount, Import, and Export commands, although they can execute Move command, too. The SCSI clients use Move command only and therefore do not have the home position-related features.

## Move Cartridge to Element

The **Move** operation transfers a cartridge from its current position to a selected destination. If the move destination is a storage slot, it will become a new home position of a cartridge. The old home position is lost then. Refer to <u>Home Position</u> on page 85 for details.

After the **Move** button is pressed, a Move Cartridge to Destination pop-up window appears.

😻 Note

This operation is allowed only for the users with *Expert move* rights.

Figure 62 Move Cartridge to Destination



Select the destination area on the left. The list of slots for this area will be shown on the right (both partitionname and LSCI coordinates are indicated).



For the 3590 cartridge the target can be only 3590-compatible slot; refer to <u>Storage</u> <u>Types</u> on page 264, <u>Mailbox Types</u> on page 265, and <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266).

Select the slot and press **OK** to complete the move operation. Press **Cancel** to exit without executing a move.

# Drag and Drop Operations

Drag and Drop operation mostly serves the same function as the **Import**, **Export**, **Mount**, and **Dismount** buttons. However there are some executions (described below).

| Drag source | Source Status                        | Drop target | Operation   |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|---|
| Cartridge   | Mounted                              | Library     | Dismount  |
| Cartridge   | Stored                               | Drives      | Generic Mount   |
| Cartridge   | Stored                               | Drive       | Mount to the specified drive                                |
| Cartridge   | Mounted or stored in<br>Storage slot | Mailbox     | Export to the specified Mailbox                             |
| Cartridge   | Stored in I/E slot                   | Mailbox     | Move to the specified Mailbox, the cartridge remains stored |
| Drive slot  | Occupied                             | Mailbox     | Export the cartridge to the specified Mailbox               |
| Drive slot  | Occupied                             | Cartridges  | Dismount drive  |
| Drive slot  | Occupied                             | Library     | Dismount drive  |
| Drive slot  | Occupied                             | No target   | Dismount drive  |
| Mailbox     | -                                    | Library     | Import the entire contents of the Mailbox                   |

# Pool

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Pools appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button causes an element expansion.

| Figure 63 | Pool   |   |                                       |       |   |
|-----------|--|---|---------------------------------------|-------|---|
|           | Connection Wizards Extended  | d Service Help  |                                       |       |   |
|           | adic User admin connecte   | d to computer   |                                       |       |   |
|           | Library Configuration Events   | Service   |                                       |       |   |
|           | Select component   | Select Cartridge  |                                       |       |   |
|           | ♥       Image: computer         ●       Image: Library2 (online)         ♥       Image: Library2 (online)         Image: Library2 (online)       Image: Library2 (online)         Image: | Volser<br>100031<br>100032<br>100034<br>100035                | MediaType<br>LTO<br>LTO<br>LTO<br>LTO | State | 200 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 |
|           | 11:58 Initializing element status  | s for library Library2.                                       |                                       |       |   |
|           | <ul> <li>11:58 Initializing element status</li> <li>11:58 Inventory for library Librar</li> <li>11:58 Inventory for library Librar</li> </ul>  | s for library Library2<br>y2 completed. Foun<br>y2 completed. | id 20 cartridges.                     |       |   |

The pool contains a set of cartridges, so the pool properties and operational buttons are the same as those of a cartridge.

| Field/Button | lcon     | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|----------|-----------|--|
| Volser       |          | Select    | The volume serial number, a cartridge name. Each cartridge<br>has one volser.<br>The optical disks are represented with two cartridges because<br>each optical disk has two volsers. |
| Media Type   |          | Select    | Cartridge media type. Refer to Media Types on page 263.  |
| State        |          | Select    | A cartridge state, empty means <i>stored</i> . Refer to <u>Cartridge</u><br><u>State</u> on page 84.   |
| Import       | ∟⊐<br>५⊑ | Click     | Transfer the cartridge from a mailbox slot to a storage area.<br>The target slot is a cartridge home position.<br>The button is enabled for a cartridge stored in a mailbox.         |

| Field/Button | lcon    | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|---------|-----------|---|
| Export       | £       | Click     | Transfer the cartridge to a mailbox. If more than one mailbox<br>exists, an additional export selection appears. See <u>Figure 61</u> .<br>Select an appropriate mailbox from the combo box.<br>This operation saves the cartridge home position.<br>The button is enabled for a cartridge not in a mailbox, when a<br>mailbox exist. |
| Mount        | n<br>ē  | Click     | Insert a cartridge into the first available tape drive of the appropriate media type ( <b>Generic Mount</b> ).<br>The button is enabled for a stored cartridge.   |
| Dismount     | ₽       | Click     | Move a cartridge from a tape drive to the cartridge home position.<br>This button is enabled for a mounted cartridge.   |
| Move         | ≞ŋ<br>⊡ | Click     | Open a pop-up Move window. Refer to <u>Move Cartridge to</u><br><u>Element</u> on page 86.<br>The move operation transfers a cartridge from its current<br>position to a selected destination slot.   |
| Help         | 7       | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

By default, the cartridges are sorted by media type, in ascending order. Click on the appropriate column title to change the sorting order.

To select a cartridge for the operation, click on it. <Ctrl>+Click allows multiple cartridge selection, for the multiple **Export/Import** operations. Multiple **Mount/Dismount/Move** operations are not allowed in the Scalar DLC Management GUI.

# Mailbox

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Mailboxes appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button causes an element expansion.

| ire 64 | Mailbox                     |                  |             |       |          |
|--------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------|-------|----------|
|        | 🌺 Scalar DLC                |                  |             |       | <u> </u> |
|        | Connection Wizards Extend   | ed Service Help  |             |       |          |
|        | adic User admin connec      | ted to computer  |             |       |          |
|        | Library Configuration Even  | ts Service       |             |       |          |
|        | Select component            | Select Cartridge |             |       |          |
|        | computer                    | Volser           | MediaType 🛆 | State | 5        |
|        | 🖿 Library1 (online)         | <b>1</b> 000008  | DLT III     |       |          |
|        | 🗣 🗃 Cartridges              | <b>1</b> 000009  | DLT III     |       | Č-1      |
|        | 🕑 🖗 Pool1                   | <b>1</b> 000030  | DLT IIIXT   |       | 놥        |
|        | ● Ē <u> E01</u>             | <b>⊡</b> 000031  | DLT IIIXT   |       | <b></b>  |
|        | P 🛱 🔟 🦷                     | 000032           | DLT IIIXT   |       |          |
|        | ➡ P2_IE1000                 | <b>1</b> 000033  |             |       |          |
|        | ➡ P2_IE1001                 | <b>H</b> 000007  |             |       |          |
|        | ➡ P2_IE1002                 |                  |             |       |          |
|        | ► P2_IE1003                 |                  |             |       |          |
|        | G⇒ P2_IE1004                |                  |             |       |          |
|        | ← P2_IE1005                 |                  |             |       |          |
|        | = P2_IE1006                 |                  |             |       |          |
|        | E3 P2_IE1007                |                  |             |       |          |
|        | = P2_E1008                  |                  |             |       |          |
|        |                             | 1                |             |       | 3        |
|        |                             | - II             |             |       |          |
|        | 14:37 move cartridge 000007 |                  |             |       |          |
|        | 14:37 move cartridge 000007 | finished         |             |       |          |
|        | 14:38 mount cartridge 00001 | 1                |             |       |          |
|        | 14:38 mount cartridge 00001 | 1 finished       |             |       |          |

| Field/Button | lcon      | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|---|
| Volser       |           | Select    | The volume serial number, a cartridge name. Each cartridge has one volser. The optical disks are represented with two cartridges because each optical disk has two volsers. |
| Media Type   |           | Select    | Cartridge media type. Refer to Media Types on page 263.   |
| State        |           | Select    | A cartridge state, empty means <i>stored</i> . Refer to <u>Cartridge</u><br><u>State</u> on page 84 for the details.  |
| Import       | ┎╶┐<br>┡╔ | Click     | Transfer the cartridge from mailbox slot to a storage area. The target slot is a cartridge home position. The button is enabled for a cartridge stored in a mailbox.        |
| Export       | £         | Click     | Disabled for a mailbox.   |
| Mount        | ₽,<br>Ø   | Click     | Insert a cartridge into the first available tape drive of the appropriate media type ( <b>Generic Mount</b> ).<br>The button is enabled for a stored cartridge.             |
| Dismount     | Ş         | Click     | Disabled for a mailbox.   |
| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Move         | ľ    | Click     | Open a pop-up Move window. Refer to <u>Move Cartridge to</u><br><u>Element</u> on page 86.<br>The move operation transfers a cartridge from its current<br>position to a selected destination slot. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

By default, the cartridges are sorted by media type, in ascending order. Click on the appropriate column title to change the sorting order.

To select cartridge for the operation, click on it. <Ctrl>+Click allows multiple cartridge selection, for the multiple **Import** operations. Multiple **Mount/Move** operations are not allowed in the Scalar DLC Management GUI.

# Drives

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Drives are displayed. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an element expansion.

### Figure 65 Drives

| 🚔 Scalar DLC                               | 🛓 Scalar DLC                             |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|-------------------|----------------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extende                 | Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connect                    | adic User admin connected to oksana2003  |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration E                    | vents Service                            |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| Select component                           | Select component Select Drive            |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 👇 🖳 oksana2003                             | Name                                     | ElementType 🛛     | Current Volser |         |  |  |  |  |
| 🛉 🖣 📠 Library1 (online)                    | 📾 P38DR269                               | HP LTO Drive      |                | A 718   |  |  |  |  |
| 🕨 🗠 🛱 Cartridges                           | 📾 P34DR256                               | IBM 3590          |                | 14      |  |  |  |  |
| 📔 🕈 🛱 E01                                  | 📾 P34DR257                               | IBM 3590          |                | 1. In . |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P42DR258                               | IBM 3592          |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 🗠 🚍 Drives                                 | 📾 P42DR259                               | IBM 3592          |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P37DR268                               | IBM LTO Drive     |                | 20      |  |  |  |  |
|  | S P39DR270                               | IBM LTO FC        | 100305         | = 💻     |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P41DR272                               | IBM LTO-2 FC      |                | E       |  |  |  |  |
|  | 🖾 P40DR271                               | IBM LTO-2 SCSI    |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P44DR274                               | IBM LTO-3 FC      |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 🖬 P43DR273                               | IBM LTO-3 SCSI    | 100303         |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P46DR276                               | IBM LTO-4 FC      |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P45DR275                               | IBM LTO-4 SCSI    |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P35DR260                               | Quantum DLT 7000  |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P35DR261                               | Quantum DLT 7000  |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|  | 📾 P35DR262                               | Quantum DLT 7000  |                | ?       |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | Durantum DLT 2000 |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 😎 14.47 mount cannuge 100303               |  |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 14:47 mount cartridge 100305               | finished                                 |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 14:47 mount cartridge 100303               | finished                                 |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 14:48 move cartridge 100303                |  |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |
| 🖸 14:48 move cartridge 100303 finished 📃 👻 |  |                   |                |         |  |  |  |  |

| Field/Button   | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|----------------|----------|-----------|---|
| Name           |          | Select    | The drive name. An icon also indicates the drive state. See <u>Table 16</u> on page 73.   |
| Element Type   |          | Select    | A drive type. Refer to <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266.  |
| Current volser |          | Select    | If the drive is occupied, a contained cartridge is shown. For the optical disk two cartridges are shown, active side first.   |
| Import         | ╴┓<br>┶ҏ | Click     | Disabled for a drive.   |
| Export         | £        | Click     | Transfer the cartridge to a mailbox. If more than one mailbox exists, an additional export selection appears. See Figure 61 on page 83. The user selects the appropriate mailbox from the combo box. This operation saves the cartridge home position. The button is enabled when a mailbox exists. |
| Mount          | r.       | Click     | Disabled for a drive.   |
| Dismount       | ₽        | Click     | Move a cartridge from a tape drive to the cartridge home position.<br>This button is enabled for a mounted cartridge.   |
| Move           | ð        | Click     | Open a pop-up Move window. Refer to <u>Move Cartridge to</u><br><u>Element</u> on page 86.<br>The move operation transfers a cartridge from its current<br>position to a selected destination slot.   |
| Clean Drive    | £        | Click     | Initiates manual drive cleaning operation via the auto-cleaning media, not the Clean Pool media.  |
| Help           | 7        | Click     | Open online Help for the current pane.  |

By default, the drives are sorted by element type, in ascending order. Clicking on the appropriate column title will change the sorting order.

To select drive for the operation, click on it. <Ctrl>+Click allows multiple drive selection, for the multiple **Export** operations. Multiple **Dismount/Move** operations are not allowed in the Scalar DLC Management GUI.

# 6

# **Configuration Tab**

The Configuration Tab is designed to view and update the configuration of the various Scalar DLC system components. The Configuration Tab contains an additional level with the following tabs:

- Logical Tab. Managing library logical configuration, cartridges, pools, mailbox areas, drives. Refer to Logical Tab on page 93.
- Physical Tab. Managing the physical library and the library partitions. Refer to <u>Physical Tab</u> on page 126.
- Users Tab. Managing user parameters. Refer to <u>Users Tab</u> on page 144.
- Clients Tab. Managing clients. Refer to <u>Clients Tab</u> on page 150.
- SCSI Target Tab. Managing SCSI Targets and LUNs. Refer to <u>SCSI Target Tab</u> on page 178.

Note The Configuration Tab is accessible for all users. Create, update, and remove functions are available only for the users with administrative rights.

# Logical Tab

The Logical Tab pane describes the configuration of a logical library and shows the logical element properties.

There are two tabs associated with the Logical Library host PC. The tabs are indicated below:

- Properties. Main library properties.
- Tape Alert. Displays drive and media errors for analysis.

# Properties

Selecting the Logical tab causes the Scalar DLC host PC property list to appear.



| Library Configuration E | vents Service                |                                  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Logical Physical Use    | rs Clients SCSI Target       |                                  |  |  |  |
| Select component        | Property                     | Value                            |  |  |  |
| P- 🔜 ABROW              | 🗟 CPU Identifier             | GenuineIntel                     |  |  |  |
| AIT (online)            | 🗟 CPU Vendor Identifier      | x86 Family 15 Model 2 Stepping 9 |  |  |  |
| - In IBM3590 (online)   | 🗟 CPU Speed (MHz)            | 2593                             |  |  |  |
| 🗠 🌆 LTO (online)        | 🗟 Total Physical Memory (Mb) | 1021                             |  |  |  |
|                         | 🗟 Free Physical Memory (Mb)  | 499                              |  |  |  |
|                         | 🗟 Total Virtual Memory (Mb)  | 2461                             |  |  |  |
|                         | 🗟 Free Virtual Memory (Mb)   | 477                              |  |  |  |
| Properties Tape Alert   |                              |                                  |  |  |  |
|                         |                              |                                  |  |  |  |

| Field/Button            | lcon                   | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------|--|
| CPU Identifier          |                        | Supplied  | The CPU identifier   |
| CPU Vendor ID           |                        | Supplied  | The CPU vendor identifier  |
| CPU Speed               |                        | Supplied  | The CPU speed  |
| Total Physical Memory   |                        | Supplied  | The total physical memory size   |
| Free Physical Memory    |                        | Supplied  | The free physical memory size  |
| Total Virtual Memory    |                        | Supplied  | The total virtual memory size  |
| Free Virtual Memory     | Ð                      | Supplied  | The free virtual memory size   |
| Add new Logical Library | <b>□</b> <sup>te</sup> | Click     | The pop-up window of logical library creation appears. Refer to <u>Create Library</u> on page 120. |
| Help                    | ?                      | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

### **Viewing Tape Alerts**

Selecting the Tape Alert tab displays information concerning current tape alerts. A drive issues a tape alert whenever there is a problem in the drive that relates to a tape cartridge. The problem can be with the drive or the with the tape cartridge.

You can use this function to cross-reference tape alerts for drives and tape cartridges over a specified period of time, in order to determine if the problem belongs to the drive or to a specific tape cartridge. For more information, see <u>Viewing Tape Alerts</u> on page 26.

| <b>Scalar DLC</b><br>Connection Wizards Extended | Service He            | lp          |            |        |                | <u> </u>   |  |
|--|-----------------------|-------------|------------|--------|----------------|------------|--|
| adic User atac connected t                       | to ABROW              |             |            |        |                |            |  |
| Library Configuration Eve                        | ents Servi            | ice         |            |        |                |            |  |
| Logical Physical Users                           | Clients               | SCSI Target | t          |        |                |            |  |
| Select component                                 |                       | (           | Current Mo | inth 💌 |                | E          |  |
| AIT (online)                                     | Drive 🗠               | Drive SN    | Тар        | Count  | Last Occu      | _ <b>⊕</b> |  |
| - In DLI (online)                                | P10DR260              | 000000004   | 01         | 01     | 08/07/2007 08: | 53<br>46   |  |
| ► The LTO (online)                               | P10DR261              | 000000005   | 02         | 01     | 08/07/2007 08: |            |  |
|  |                       |             |            |        |                |            |  |
|  | Properties Tape Alert |             |            |        |                |            |  |
| 09:32 atac connected to ABROW                    | V                     |             |            |        |                |            |  |

| Field/Button                              | lcon       | Operation | Description  |
|---|------------|-----------|--|
| Show the cartridge for the selected drive | đ          | Supplied  | Displays the cartridge that prompted the tape alert                  |
| Search a cartridge                        | Ē          | Click     | Select a cartridge from a list of cartridges that caused tape alerts |
| Report                                    | □□<br>└┾╔╡ | Click     |  |
| Help                                      | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                               |

### Figure 67 Tape Alert

### Figure 68 Report Criteria

| 🚔 Report Criteria 🛛 🔀 |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Sort By:              | Drive                        |  |  |  |  |  |
| Grouping              |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🔲 Ca                  | rtridge 🕜 Tape Alert 🕜 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
| 두글 to XL              | .S 🕻 🕻 to PDF 🗙 Cancel       |  |  |  |  |  |

In the Report Criteria dialog box, choose how you want to sort the report and how you want to group the report. It is possible to limit the report by selected objects:

- Cartridge
- Tape Alert
- Drive

You can export the report into either a spreadsheet file or into a PDF file.

# Library

There are three sets of properties associated with the Logical Library. The properties are indicated in the following list:

- Properties. Main library properties. Refer to Properties on page 97.
- Resource. The resources of physical library that current logical library has in use. Refer to <u>Resource</u> on page 99.
- Statistics. The statistics of operations executed within current logical library. Refer to <u>Statistics</u> on page 100

### **Properties**

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Logical Libraries appear. Clicking the expand/ collapse button results in an element expansion.

| Figure 69 | Logical L | ibrary | Properties |
|-----------|-----------|--------|------------|
|-----------|-----------|--------|------------|

| 🚔 Scalar DLC                             | 🚔 Scalar DLC 📃 🗖                |        |   |  |  |
|--|---------------------------------|--------|---|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended              | Service Help                    |        |   |  |  |
| adic User admin connecte                 | d to ABROW                      |        |   |  |  |
| Library Configuration Ev                 | ents Service                    |        |   |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users                   | Clients SCSI Target             |        |   |  |  |
| Select component                         | Select component Property Value |        |   |  |  |
| P B ABROW                                | 🖉 Name                          | AIT    |   |  |  |
| 우 [hn All (online)]                      | B ID                            | 4      |   |  |  |
| DR Sony SDX 3                            | 🗟 Number of cartridges          | 40     |   |  |  |
| 🔶 🎦 IE_Generic 8mn                       | 🗟 Number of drives              | 4      | 말 |  |  |
| 🔶 💾 ST_Generic 8mr                       | 🗟 Number of slots               | 1980   | 嚼 |  |  |
|  | 🗟 Number of I/E slots           | 24     |   |  |  |
|  | 🖉 State                         | Online |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 DLT (online)                         | 🖉 Auto-cleaning                 | On     | É |  |  |
| ► 🖬 IBM3590 (online)<br>► 🖬 LTO (online) | Clients                         |        |   |  |  |
|  | Client1                         |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |
| Properties Resource Statistics           |                                 |        |   |  |  |
| 13:22 admin connected to ABR             | WC                              |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |
|  |                                 |        |   |  |  |

| Field/Button         | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name                 | ø    | Enter     | Logical library name (editable).<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| ID                   | 8    | Supplied  | Logical library identification number.                                       |
| Number of cartridges |      | Supplied  | Number of available cartridges found during the last <b>inventory</b> .      |
| Number of drives     | A    | Supplied  | Number of available drives.  |

| Field/Button            | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Number of slots         | Θ    | Supplied  | Number of available storage slots.   |
| Number of I/E slots     | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available mailbox slots.   |
| State                   | ø    | Select    | Logical library state. See <u>Table 10</u> on page 69.<br>Can be changed manually (from <i>online</i> to <i>not ready</i> and vice versa) to make the library unavailable but this does not affect the tape device and/or other logical libraries.           |
| Auto-cleaning           | ø    | Supplied  | Indicates if auto-cleaning is enabled or turned off.   |
| Clients                 |      | Supplied  | The clients authorized to use the logical library.   |
| Inventory               | ¢    | Click     | Initialize all the library elements and assign a home position to cartridges. Affects all libraries included the shared partitions.  |
| Update                  | Ø    | Click     | Save the logical library properties after edit.  |
| Remove                  | ┣╊   | Click     | Remove the logical library with all its contents. The shared partitions are not affected.  |
| Assign new Partition    | ß    | Click     | Assign new partition to the logical library. A pop-up assignment window opens. Refer to <u>Assign Partition</u> on page 122.<br>This button is disabled if the physical library contains no partitions that are not assigned to the current logical library. |
| Add new Scratch<br>pool | ß    | Click     | Add new scratch pool to the logical library. A pop-up creation window opens. Refer to <u>Create Pool</u> on page 123.  |
| Add new Clean pool      | B    | Click     | Add new clean pool to the logical library. A pop-up creation window opens. Refer to <u>Create Pool</u> on page 123.  |
| Add new Mailbox         | Ë    | Click     | Add new mailbox to the logical library. A pop-up creation window opens. Refer to <u>Create Mailbox</u> on page 125.  |
| Reset Alarm flag        | 8    | Click     | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the library is in <i>Alarm</i> state).   |
| Refresh Alarm flag      | 3    | Click     | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.  |
| Help                    | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

### Resource



| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Storage      |      | Supplied  | Storage slots usage, % and chart.      |
| I/E slots    |      | Supplied  | Insert/eject slots usage, % and chart. |
| Drives       |      | Supplied  | Drives usage, % and chart.             |
| Cartridges   |      | Supplied  | Cartridges usage, % and chart.         |
| Refresh      | ø    | Click     | Refresh Logical Library resources.     |
| Help         | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

The resource charts show the total coverage of the logical library. For example, if the physical library contains 1000 storage slots, and the configured logical library covers 800 slots, the Storage chart shows 80%. Same for the Mailbox (I/E), Drives, and Cartridges.

### **Statistics**





| Field/Button    | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Statistics rate |      | Select    | Show daily/weekly statistics.                                      |
| Start date      |      | Select    | Start date in range.   |
| End date        |      | Select    | End date in range.   |
| Statistics type |      | Select    | Statistics type (All / Mounts only / Errors only / Requests only). |
| Mounts          |      | Supplied  | Mounts executed in logical library.                                |
| Errors          |      | Supplied  | Errors encountered in logical library.                             |
| Requests        |      | Supplied  | Requests received by logical library.                              |
| Refresh         | ø    | Click     | Refresh Logical Library statistics.                                |
| Help            | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                             |

Select the statistic rate, the date range, and the statistics type, and click on **Refresh** button to show the statistic for the current logical library. By default, all statistics in daily range will be shown from the install date up to current day.

# Partition

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Partitions appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an element expansion.

Table 13 on page 71 shows the different partition classes.

### Figure 72 Logical Partition



| Field/Button          | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|-----------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name                  | 7    | Supplied  | Partition name.   |
| Element<br>class      | ۲    | Supplied  | Partition class (storage, I/E, drive). See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71.  |
| Element type          | 8    | Supplied  | Partition element type.   |
| Start                 | 8    | Supplied  | Start element of partition range.   |
| End                   | 8    | Supplied  | End element of partition range.   |
| Allocation            | ۲    | Supplied  | Robot1 / Robot2 indicates the robotic device where the partition is located.  |
|                       |      |           | Shared means the partition is shared between two robots.  |
| Unassign<br>partition | 먑    | Click     | Unassign the partition from the logical library (the partition itself remains useful and can be assigned to another logical library). |

| Field/Butto     | on Icon     | Operation           | Description   |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|---|
| Inventory range | ¢           | Click               | Initialize a range of elements, assign home positions to cartridges if necessary. A pop-up inventory range window appears. See Figure 73. |
| Help            | ?           | Click               | Open online help for the current pane.  |
| Figure 73       | Inventory E | Elements Range      | 9   |
|                 | 🌺 I         | nventory Elements R | lange X   |
|                 | Eler        | ments Range:        |   |
|                 | LIB         | 1_1000 Generic 8mr  | n I/E 🔹 LIB1_1017 Generic 8mm I/E 💌   |

Select start and end elements in the range. Press OK to launch the Inventory Range operation (it has the same effect as the DAS PartInventory command, refer to DAS Administration Guide). Press Cancel to exit without executing Inventory Range.

1

X

•

# Cartridge

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Cartridges appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an element expansion.

There are two tabs associated with the Logical Library. The tabs are indicated in the below:

- Properties. Main library properties.
- Tape Alert. Displays drive and cartridge errors for analysis.

### **Properties**

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable cartridges appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an element expansion.



| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help           |
|--|
| adic User atac connected to ABROW                  |
| Library Configuration Events Service               |
|  |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target         |
| Select component Property Value                    |
| P = BABROW         ▲         ₱ Name         100200 |
| P Im AIT (online)                                  |
| E 100200 = P Assigned drive None                   |
| - 🖬 100201 🛛 🟴 Type 🛛 Data                         |
| -  |
| Intervious slot     None                           |
| _  |
| - 🖬 100206 🛛 🟴 State Stored                        |
| - 🖬 100207 🛛 🔂 Status Available                    |
| - 🖬 100208 📾 Owner None                            |
| - 🖬 100210 📕 Media type 8mm                        |
| - 🖬 100211 🛛 📾 Use count 0                         |
|  |
| Properties Tape Alert ?                            |
|  |
| U9:32 atac connected to ABROW                      |
|  |
|  |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name           | ۲    | Supplied  | Name (volser), stable for a normal cartridge.  |
|                | ø    | Enter     | Name (volser), editable for a foreign cartridge.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.   |
| ID             | F    | Supplied  | Cartridge identification number.   |
| Assigned drive | ø    | Select    | A drive assigned to cartridge, if any. If the <b>Generic</b><br><b>mount</b> operation is executed, the cartridge loads into<br>the assigned drive if it is available. |

| Field/Button             | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Туре                     | ø    | Select    | Cartridge type (data/clean)   |
| Current slot             | ß    | Supplied  | The slot where the cartridge is right now.  |
| Previous slot            | 8    | Supplied  | The slot where the cartridge was previously.  |
| Home slot                | ۵    | Supplied  | The cartridge home position. Refer to <u>Home Position</u> on page 85.              |
| State                    | ø    | Select    | Cartridge state. See <u>Table 19</u> on page 84 for the details.                    |
| Status                   |      | Supplied  | The cartridge availability for the commands.  |
| Owner                    | Ð    | Supplied  | The cartridge owner (client), if any.   |
| Media type               | ٦    | Supplied  | Media type, stable for a normal cartridge. Refer to <u>Media Types</u> on page 263. |
|                          | ø    | Select    | Media type, changeable for a foreign cartridge. Refer to Media Types on page 263.   |
| Use count                | 8    | Supplied  | Number of mounts performed (for the data cartridge only).                           |
| Number of cleanings done | 8    | Supplied  | Number of cleanings performed (for the cleaning cartridge only).                    |
| Update                   |      | Click     | Save the cartridge properties after edit.   |
| Reset Alarm flag         | ¥    | Click     | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the cartridge is in <i>Alarm</i> state).        |
| Refresh Alarm flag       | 3    | Click     | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.   |
| Help                     | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

If the cartridge is not found in the library after the **Inventory** has been executed, its state changes to offline. After that, the cartridge is removed from the cartridge list of the Logical library and goes to archive list, or the list of the offline cartridges. It is shown under the Physical tab and contains the information about cartridges that were removed from the physical library. Refer to <u>Offline Cartridge</u> on page 137.



The only method available from the Management GUI to correctly identify the cleaning cartridges after Inventory has been completed is to manually change the desired individual cartridge type from data to cleaning. Then, if necessary, the acquired cleaning cartridges can be added into the clean pool.

There is also a *foreign cartridges* category (see <u>Figure 75</u>). These cartridges are either duplicates (another cartridge with the same name exists in the library), or not readable (the barcode scanner that reads the volsers cannot scan the name of current cartridge).

To operate with the foreign cartridges, their properties have been extended: Admin can change the cartridge name (volser) and media type. The foreign cartridge has a media type that is the default for the slot where it is found after the first **Inventory**. The foreign cartridge has a name with a small "u" (for not readable volser), or with a small "d" (for duplicated volser).

Note The foreign cartridge media type is changeable in the ranges of media domain only. That means the foreign cartridge recognized by default as DLT IV can be changed, for example, to SDLT or DLT IIIXT, but not to 3590. Refer to <u>Media Types</u> on page 263.

| 🚔 Scalar DLC  |                       |            |   |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|------------|---|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended                                   | l Service Help        |            |   |  |  |
| adic User admin connecte                                      | d to computer         |            |   |  |  |
| Library Configuration Ev                                      | rents Service         |            |   |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users  | S Clients SCSI Target |            |   |  |  |
| Select component  | Properties            |            |   |  |  |
| P ∰ Cartridges 🔺  | Property              | Value      |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Name                | 000010d1   |   |  |  |
|   | d ID                  | 239        |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000007  | 🖉 Assigned drive      | None       | 2 |  |  |
| - 🖬 000008  | 🖋 Туре                | Data       |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000009  | 🗟 Current slot        | P60_ST4110 |   |  |  |
| - 🗄 000010d1  | 🗟 Previous slot       | None       |   |  |  |
| - FT 000012   | 🗟 Home slot           | P60_ST4110 |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000010  | 🖉 State               | Stored     |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000028  | 🗟 Status              | Available  |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000014  | 🗟 Owner               | None       |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Media type          | DLT III    |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000023  | 🗟 Use count           | 1          |   |  |  |
| - 🖬 000033 💌  |                       |            | 2 |  |  |
|   |                       |            |   |  |  |
| 17:47 Initializing element status for library Library1        |                       |            |   |  |  |
| 17:47 Inventory for library Library1 completed.               |                       |            |   |  |  |
| 17:49 move cartridge 000007                                   |                       |            |   |  |  |
| 17:49 move cartridge 000011<br>17:40 move cartridge 000007.ft | nichod                |            | • |  |  |

### Figure 75 Foreign Cartridge

### **Tape Alert**

Selecting the Tape Alert tab displays information concerning current tape alerts. A drive issues a tape alert whenever there is a problem in the drive that relates to a tape cartridge. The problem can be with the drive or the with the tape cartridge.

You can use this function to cross-reference tape alerts for drives and tape cartridges over a specified period of time, in order to determine if the problem belongs to the drive or to a specific tape cartridge. For more information, refer to <u>Viewing Tape Alerts</u> on page 26.



| Field/Button                              | lcon      | Operation | Description  |
|---|-----------|-----------|--|
| Show the cartridge for the selected drive | Ð         | Supplied  | Displays the cartridge that prompted the tape alert                  |
| Search a cartridge                        | f         | Click     | Select a cartridge from a list of cartridges that caused tape alerts |
| Report                                    | □ □<br>₩₽ | Click     |  |
| Help                                      | 7         | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                               |

### Figure 76 Tape Alert

### Figure 77 Report Criteria

| ≜ Report Cr        | iteria 🔀                       |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sort By:           | Drive                          |
| Grouping:          |                                |
| 📃 Ca               | rtridge 🛛 🗹 Tape Alert 🔽 Drive |
| <b>ដុ</b> ្ឋ to XL | .S 🕻 🕻 to PDF 🗙 Cancel         |

In the Report Criteria dialog box, choose how you want to sort the report and how you want to group the report. It is possible to limit the report by selected objects:

- Cartridge
- Tape Alert
- Drive

You can export the report into either a spreadsheet file or into a PDF file.

# Pool

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Pools appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button causes an element expansion.

| Figure 78 | Pool                                     |                              |                         |             |  |  |
|-----------|--|------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|--|--|
|           | 🏀 Scalar DLC                             |                              |                         | - D ×       |  |  |
|           | Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |                              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | adic User admin connected                | to computer                  |                         |             |  |  |
|           | Library Configuration Events             | Service                      |                         |             |  |  |
|           | Logical Physical Users C                 | lients SCSI Target           |                         |             |  |  |
|           | Select component                         | Properties                   |                         | <b>6</b> \$ |  |  |
|           | 🛛 🗣 🔜 computer                           | Property                     | Value                   |             |  |  |
|           | Υ Library1 (online)                      | 🗟 ID                         | 10                      | ▲ 🚄         |  |  |
|           | er ∰ Cartridges                          | 🗟 Media Pool type            | Clean                   | _ <b>3</b>  |  |  |
|           | 이 문 Partition? (Ge                       | 🗟 Device                     | ADIC Scalar 1000 #11111 |             |  |  |
|           | Partition3 (Ge                           | 🗟 Media Type                 | SDLT                    |             |  |  |
|           | 🗢 💾 Partition4 (Qu                       | 🗟 Number of volsers          | 3                       |             |  |  |
|           | 🗢 💾 Partition5 (Qu                       | 🖉 Watermark                  | 3                       |             |  |  |
|           | 🗢 💾 Partition6 (Qu                       | 🖉 Maximum cleanings per tape | 10                      | <b>•</b>    |  |  |
|           |  | Volsers                      |                         |             |  |  |
|           | Pool2                                    | Name                         | State                   |             |  |  |
|           | <b>1</b> 000024                          | <b>E</b> 000024              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | ■ 000027                                 | <b>1</b> 000027              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | ₫ 000028                                 | <b>T</b> 000028              |                         |             |  |  |
|           |  |                              |                         | 3           |  |  |
|           |  |                              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | 14:37 move cartridge 000007              |                              |                         | -           |  |  |
|           | 0 14:37 move cartridge 000007 finished   |                              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | 14:38 mount cartridge 000011             |                              |                         |             |  |  |
|           | e re.55 mount cannuge 000011 in          | maneu                        |                         |             |  |  |

| Field/Button                  | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|-------------------------------|----------|-----------|---|
| Name                          | ø        | Enter     | Pool name.<br>It recommended using Pxx for scratch pools and CLx<br>for clean pools.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.                    |
| ID                            | 8        | Supplied  | Pool identification number.   |
| Media Pool type               | ۲        | Supplied  | Pool type (data/clean)  |
| Device                        |          | Supplied  | Name of device (physical library) where the pool is located.  |
| Media Type                    | ۲        | Supplied  | The type of media contained in the pool. Refer to <u>Media Types</u> on page 263.   |
| Number of volsers             | ۲        | Supplied  | The number of cartridges currently contained in the pool.   |
| Watermark                     | ø        | Enter     | The minimal number of valid cleaning media the pool should contain.<br>For clean pools only.  |
| Maximum cleanings<br>per tape | ø        | Enter     | The number of times the cleaning cartridge belonging to the pool can be used.<br>For clean pools only.  |
| Volsers                       |          | Supplied  | The list of cartridges that are currently contained in the pool. The cartridge state is also indicated. Also refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103. |
| Assign/Unassign               | Ť        | Click     | Pop-up Assign/Unassign window opens. Refer to <u>Assign Media to Pool</u> on page 108.  |
| Update                        | Þ        | Click     | Save the pool properties after edit.  |
| Remove                        | F        | Click     | Remove the scratch pool (the cartridges remains in the library).  |
|                               | <b>8</b> |           | Remove the clean pool (the cartridges remains in the library).  |
| Help                          | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Vote Pool names are unique for a logical library. Using the default name ensures uniqueness.

### Assign Media to Pool

The pop-up window allow assigning cartridges to the existing pool and unassigning the cartridges from it as well.

### Figure 79 Assign/Unassign Cartridges to Pool

|          | , 3                 | 0                 |                                    |       |  |  |  |
|----------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| 🌺 As     | signing/UnAssigning | g volsers to pool |                                    | ×     |  |  |  |
| Una      | ssigned             |                   | Assigned                           |       |  |  |  |
| <b>E</b> | Name<br>000010      | State             | Name<br>000012<br>000015<br>000016 | State |  |  |  |
|          |                     |                   |                                    |       |  |  |  |

The left pane (*Unassigned*) contains all available media of appropriate type that are not assigned to the pool. The right pane (*Assigned*) contains all cartridges that are already assigned to the pool.

Select a cartridge that should be assigned to the pool (or removed from it) and press the appropriate arrow button ("left" from Assign to Unassign, and "right" vice versa). Multiple cartridge selection is possible, too, by <Ctrl>+Click.

Press **OK** to close the window and update the pool. Press **Cancel** to close the assignment window without applying the changes.



Only the data cartridges can be assigned to the scratch pool; only the cleaning cartridges can be assigned to the clean pool.

😻 Note

The operation of assigning a pack of cartridges to the pool or unassigning a number of cartridges from the pool can be executed as many times as necessary. It is also available from the client side (for DAS clients).

# Mailbox

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Mailboxes appear.

| Figure 80  | Mailbox |
|------------|---------|
| i iguio oo | manbox  |

| Library Configuration Events | Service                                    |             |        |            |     |
|------------------------------|--|-------------|--------|------------|-----|
| Logical Physical Users C     | lients SCSI Target                         |             |        |            |     |
| Select component             | Properties                                 |             |        |            |     |
| Librard (anline)             | Property                                   |             |        | Value      |     |
|                              | 🖉 Name                                     |             | E01    |            |     |
| ● Partition1 (Gener          | -<br>∰ ID                                  |             | 1      |            |     |
| 🗢 🎦 Partition2 (Gener        | A Number of I/E slots                      |             | 34     |            |     |
| 🗢 🗓 Partition3 (Gener        |  |             | 04     |            |     |
| 🗢 💾 Partition4 (Quant        | IESIots                                    |             |        |            |     |
| 🗢 💾 Partition5 (Quant        | Name                                       | Elemen      | t type | Partition  |     |
| 🕒 🕑 💾 Partition6 (Quant      | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1000                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 | -   |
| 🕒 🕑 💾 Partition7 (Quant      | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1001                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 | 333 |
| P 🛱 E01                      | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1002                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 | 333 |
| ⊏⊐ P2_IE1000                 | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1003                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 |     |
| ⊏⊐ P2_IE1001                 | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1004                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 |     |
| ⊏¬ P2 IE1002                 | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1005                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 |     |
|                              | □ □ □ P2_IE1006 Generic DLT I/E Partition2 |             |        |            |     |
| F3 P2 IE1004 -               | □ □ P2_IE1007 Generic DLT I/E Partition2   |             |        |            |     |
|                              | ⊏⊐ P2_IE1008                               | Generic DLT | I/E F  | Partition2 | -   |
|                              | DO 154.000                                 | la i di t   | ue le  |            |     |

| Field/Button        | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name                | ø    | Enter     | Mailbox name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.  |
| ID                  | 8    | Supplied  | Mailbox identification number.   |
| Number of I/E slots |      | Supplied  | The number of assigned slots.  |
| I/E slots           |      | Supplied  | The slots currently assigned to the mailbox. The slot names, element type, and partition are indicated. Refer also to <u>Mailbox Slot</u> on page 113. |
| Assign/Unassign     | Eġ   | Click     | Pop-up Assign/Unassign window opens. Refer to <u>Assign Slots to Mailbox</u> on page 111.  |
| Update              | R    | Click     | Save the mailbox properties after edit.  |
| Remove              | Ê    | Click     | Remove the mailbox.  |
| Help                | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

- When the Mailbox names are unique for a logical library. Using the default name ensures uniqueness.
- Note If the DAS interface is used, the mailbox names must adhere to the DAS standards. It recommended to use "**Exx**" and "**Ixx**" as names for the Export and Import mailboxes respectively (they can consist of the same mailbox slots).

### **Assign Slots to Mailbox**

The pop-up window allow assigning insert/eject slots to the existing mailbox and unassigning the slots from it as well.

| Figure 81 | Assign/Unassign | Slots to Mailbox |
|-----------|-----------------|------------------|
|-----------|-----------------|------------------|

| 🎇 Assigning/UnAssigning import-export logical elements to mailbox                             |  |   |    |  |   |   |  |
|---|--|---|----|--|---|---|--|
| Unassigned  |  |   |    | Assigned   |   |   |  |
| Name    <br>-¬P2_ E1006 G<br>-¬P2_ E1007 G<br>-¬P2_ E1008 G<br>-¬P2_ E1008 G<br>-¬P3_ E1018 G | Element type<br>eneric DLT I/E<br>eneric DLT I/E<br>eneric DLT I/E<br>eneric DLT I/E<br>eneric DLT I/E | Partition<br>Partition2<br>Partition2<br>Partition2<br>Partition2<br>Partition3 | >> | Name<br>P2_IE1010<br>P2_IE1011<br>P2_IE1011<br>P3_IE1019<br>P3_IE1020<br>P3_IE1021<br>P3_IE1022<br>P3_IE1023 | Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT<br>Generic DLT | Partition<br>Partition2<br>Partition2<br>Partition3<br>Partition3<br>Partition3<br>Partition3<br>Partition3 |  |
| ✓ ×   |  |   |    |  |   |   |  |

The left pane (*Unassigned*) contains all available insert/eject (mailbox) slots that are not assigned to the current mailbox. The right pane (*Assigned*) contains all mailbox slots that are currently assigned to the mailbox.

Select a slot that should be assigned to the mailbox (or removed from it) and click the appropriate arrow button ("left" from Assign to Unassign, and "right" vice versa). Multiple slot selection is possible, too, by <Ctrl>+Click.

Click **OK** to close the window and update the mailbox. Click **Cancel** to close the assignment window without applying the changes.

# 😻 Note

The operation of assign and unassign a pack of slots to and from the mailbox can be executed as many times as necessary.

# Storage Slot

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Storage Partitions are displayed. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an expansion that shows the Storage slots.





| Field/Button        | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name                | ٨    | Supplied  | Slot name.   |
| ID                  | B    | Supplied  | Slot identification number.  |
| Physical coordinate | ۲    | Supplied  | Slot physical (SCSI) coordinate. Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260.   |
| Robot1 coordinate   | ß    | Supplied  | The slot coordinate in Robot1 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260 |
| Robor2 coordinate   | ß    | Supplied  | The slot coordinate in Robot2 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260 |
| LSCI coordinate     | ۲    | Supplied  | Slot LCSI coordinate. Refer to <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260.  |
| Current cartridge   | ß    | Supplied  | A contained cartridge, if any.   |
| State               | A    | Supplied  | Slot state (empty/occupied)  |

| Field/Button          | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-----------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Owner                 | ø    | Select    | A slot owner (client). The reserved slot can be used only by its owner.  |
|                       |      |           | None means the slot is not reserved.   |
| Exclusive reservation | ×    | Supplied  | The reservation may be either <u>normal</u> (another owner can un-reserve the slot) or <u>exclusive</u> (only the owner can change the reservation). |
| Update                | R    | Click     | Save the slot properties after edit.   |
| Update                | Ø    | Click     | Save the cartridge properties after edit.  |
| Reset Alarm flag      | ۷    | Click     | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the slot is in <i>Alarm</i> state).  |
| Refresh Alarm flag    | 3    | Click     | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.  |
| Help                  | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

# Mailbox Slot

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Mailboxes and Insert/Eject Partitions appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button causes an expansion that shows the Mailbox slots.

### Figure 83 Mailbox Slot

| 👙 Scalar DLC 📃 🗌 🗙   |                       |            |              |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------|------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended  | Service Help          |            |              |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connected  | i to computer         |            |              |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Eve  | ents Service          |            |              |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users   | Clients SCSI Target   |            |              |  |  |  |
| Select component   | Properties            |            |              |  |  |  |
|  | Property              | Value      |              |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 Name                | P61_IE16   |              |  |  |  |
| P61 IE16   | 🗟 ID                  | 1649       | 888 <b>8</b> |  |  |  |
| - == P61_IE17  | 🗟 Physical coordinate | 16         | 200 Z        |  |  |  |
| — 🖙 P61_IE18   | 🗟 Robot1 coordinate   | 16         |              |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 Robot2 coordinate   | None       | <u> </u>     |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 LSCI coordinate     | E802010101 |              |  |  |  |
| — <b>—</b> P61 IE22  | 🗟 Current cartridge   | None       |              |  |  |  |
| - ⊏⊐ P61_IE23  | Ma                    | illeavee   |              |  |  |  |
| P61_IE24   | - Mia                 | andoxes    |              |  |  |  |
| P61_IE25   | Assigned              | Unassigned |              |  |  |  |
|  | E01                   |            |              |  |  |  |
| - = P61_IE34   | 101                   |            |              |  |  |  |
| - 🖙 P61_IE35 💌   | - == P61_IE35 ▼       |            |              |  |  |  |
|  |                       |            |              |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>T3.26 Inventory for indrary completed.</li> </ul>               |                       |            |              |  |  |  |
| 🝳 15:28 Robot has a physical problem with the cartridge 🦳 🦰              |                       |            |              |  |  |  |
| 15:28 Initializing element status<br>15:28 Inventory for library library | for library Library1  |            |              |  |  |  |
| 15:20 Tricket created successful   | n completed.<br>Iv    |            |              |  |  |  |

| Field/Button                     | lcon | Operation        | Description  |
|----------------------------------|------|------------------|--|
| Name                             | Ð    | Supplied         | Slot name.   |
| ID                               | Ð    | Supplied         | Slot identification number.  |
| Physical coordinate              | ۵    | Supplied         | Slot physical (SCSI) coordinate. Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260.   |
| Robot1 coordinate                | Ð    | Supplied         | The slot coordinate in Robot1 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260 |
| Robor2 coordinate                | ß    | Supplied         | The slot coordinate in Robot2 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br>Addressing on page 260        |
| LSCI coordinate                  | 8    | Supplied         | Slot LCSI coordinate. Refer to <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260.  |
| Current cartridge                | 8    | Supplied         | A cartridge contained in the slot, if any.   |
| State                            | 8    | Supplied         | Slot state (empty/occupied)  |
| Owner                            | ø    | Select           | A slot owner (client). The reserved slot can be used only by its owner.  |
|                                  |      |                  | None means the slot is not reserved.   |
| Exclusive reservation            | ×    | Supplied         | The reservation may be either normal (another owner can un-reserve the slot) or exclusive (only the owner can change the reservation).             |
| Assigned/Unassigned<br>Mailboxes |      | Select and click | Select mailbox and click arrow button to assign/<br>unassign the current slot to/from it.  |
| Update                           | Ø    | Click            | Save the slot properties after edit.   |
| Reset Alarm flag                 | 8    | Click            | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the slot is in <i>Alarm</i> state).  |
| Refresh Alarm flag               | E    | Click            | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.  |
| Help                             | 7    | Click            | Open online help for the current pane.   |

# Drive

There are two sets of properties associated with the Drive. The properties are indicated in the following list:

- Properties. Main drive properties. Refer to Properties on page 115.
- Statistics. The statistics of operations executed within current drive. Refer to Statistics on page 117.
- Tape Alerts. Displays drive and cartridge errors for analysis.

### **Properties**

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Drives and Drive Partitions are displayed. Clicking the expand/collapse button results in an element expansion.

| Connection Wizards Extended           | Service Help            |            |  |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|--|
| adic User admin connecte              | d to kiev1              |            |  |
| Library Configuration Ev              | ents Service            |            |  |
| Logical Physical Users                | Clients SCSI Target     |            |  |
| Select component                      | Property                | Value      |  |
| P ➡ kiev1                             | 🖉 Name                  | P4DR256    |  |
| 👇 ኩ Library1 (online)                 | 🗟 ID                    | 753        |  |
| → P DR IBM LTO-2 9                    | 🗟 Serial Number         | 1110075069 |  |
| 🗠 🛅 DR_IBM LTO-4 F                    | 🗟 Physical coordinate   | 256        |  |
| • 💾 IE_LTO2                           | 🗟 Robot1 coordinate     | 256        |  |
| ST_LTO1                               | 🗟 Robot2 coordinate     | None       |  |
| ▶ ♠ 101                               | 🗟 LSCI coordinates      | D101010101 |  |
| 👇 🗃 Drives                            | 🗟 Current cartridge     | None       |  |
| - 📾 P3DR260 IB                        | 🗟 State                 | Empty      |  |
|                                       | 🗟 Number of mounts      | 0          |  |
| = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = | 🖋 Time (ms)             | 300000     |  |
|                                       | 🖋 Clean Pools           | None       |  |
|                                       | 🖉 Automatic cleaning    |            |  |
|                                       | 🔀 Maxuse                | 1000       |  |
|                                       | 🖉 Dismount management   |            |  |
|                                       | 🔀 Delay (ms)            | 60000      |  |
|                                       | 🔀 Loops                 | 3          |  |
|                                       | 🖉 Owner                 | None       |  |
|                                       | 🔀 Exclusive reservation |            |  |

| Field/Button        | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name                | ø    | Enter     | Drive name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.                                     |
| ID                  | 8    | Supplied  | Drive identification number.  |
| Physical coordinate | 8    | Supplied  | Drive physical (SCSI) coordinate. Refer to <u>Element</u><br><u>Addressing</u> on page 260. |

### Figure 84 Drive Properties

| Field/Button           | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Robot1 coordinate      | ß    | Supplied  | The drive coordinate in Robot1 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br>Addressing on page 260 |
| Robot2 coordinate      | ۵    | Supplied  | The drive coordinate in Robot2 ( <i>None</i> means the slot is assigned to another robot). Refer to <u>Element</u><br>Addressing on page 260 |
| LSCI coordinate        | ₿    | Supplied  | Drive LCSI coordinate. Refer to <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260.   |
| Current cartridge      |      | Supplied  | A cartridge contained in the slot, if any.   |
| State                  |      | Supplied  | Drive state (empty/occupied).  |
| Number of mounts       |      | Supplied  | A total number of mounts executed into the drive.  |
| Time (ms)              | ø    | Enter     | The cleaning time for the drive.   |
| Clean pool             | ø    | Select    | A pool that is used by clean manager to get the cleaning cartridges.   |
| Automatic cleaning     | ø    | Check     | Configure auto-cleaning. If checked, the <i>Max Use</i> field is editable.   |
| Max Use                | ×    | Supplied  | Shows how long the drive could be used without cleaning (number of mounts between cleanings).  |
| Dismount<br>management | ø    | Check     | Configure the dismount manager. If checked, the <i>Delay</i> and <i>Loops</i> fields are editable.   |
| Delay (ms)             | ×    | Supplied  | A time the drive requires to unload the cartridge.   |
| Loops                  | ×    | Supplied  | Number of retries if the drive does not unload the cartridge.  |
| Owner                  | ø    | Select    | A slot owner (client). The reserved slot can be used only by its owner.  |
|                        |      |           | None means the slot is not reserved.   |
| Exclusive reservation  | ×    | Supplied  | The reservation may be either normal (another owner can un-reserve the slot) or exclusive (only the owner can change the reservation).       |
| Update                 |      | Click     | Save the slot properties after edit.   |
| Reset Alarm flag       | ۲    | Click     | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the slot is in <i>Alarm</i> state).  |
| Refresh Alarm flag     | 3    | Click     | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.  |
| Help                   | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

**W** Note If the DAS interface is being used, the drives are to be named according to the DAS standards. It recommended that you use names no more than 9 alphanumeric characters long and beginning with a letter.

### **Statistics**

| ure 8 | 5 Drive Statistics   |
|-------|--|
|       |  |
|       | Likran Oppfauration Events Contine   |
|       | Liprary Conliguration Events Service   |
|       | Select component   |
|       | Deleter component       Daily       30/07/2007       13/08/2007       All         Image: Deleter component       Daily       30/07/2007       All       Image: Deleter component         Image: Deleter component       Daily       30/07/2007       All       Image: Deleter component         Image: Deleter component       Image: Deleter component       Mounts       Image: Deleter component       Image: Deleter component         Image: Deleter component       Image: Deleter compo |
|       | Errors<br>30/0 <sup>-</sup> 31/0 <sup>-</sup> 01/0 <sup>-</sup> 02/0 <sup>-</sup> 03/0 <sup>-</sup> 04/0 <sup>-</sup> 05/0 <sup>-</sup> 06/0 <sup>-</sup> 07/0 <sup>-</sup> 08/0 <sup>-</sup> 09/0 <sup>-</sup> 10/0 <sup>-</sup> 11/0 <sup>-</sup> 12/0 <sup>-</sup> 13/0<br>Errors<br>30/0 <sup>-</sup> 31/0 <sup>-</sup> 01/0 <sup>-</sup> 02/0 <sup>-</sup> 03/0 <sup>-</sup> 04/0 <sup>-</sup> 05/0 <sup>-</sup> 06/0 <sup>-</sup> 07/0 <sup>-</sup> 08/0 <sup>-</sup> 09/0 <sup>-</sup> 10/0 <sup>-</sup> 11/0 <sup>-</sup> 12/0 <sup>-</sup> 13/0<br>30/0 <sup>-</sup> 31/0 <sup>-</sup> 01/0 <sup>-</sup> 02/0 <sup>-</sup> 03/0 <sup>-</sup> 04/0 <sup>-</sup> 05/0 <sup>-</sup> 06/0 <sup>-</sup> 07/0 <sup>-</sup> 08/0 <sup>-</sup> 09/0 <sup>-</sup> 10/0 <sup>-</sup> 11/0 <sup>-</sup> 12/0 <sup>-</sup> 13/0<br>30/0 <sup>-</sup> 31/0 <sup>-</sup> 01/0 <sup>-</sup> 02/0 <sup>-</sup> 03/0 <sup>-</sup> 04/0 <sup>-</sup> 05/0 <sup>-</sup> 06/0 <sup>-</sup> 07/0 <sup>-</sup> 08/0 <sup>-</sup> 09/0 <sup>-</sup> 10/0 <sup>-</sup> 11/0 <sup>-</sup> 12/0 <sup>-</sup> 13/0   |
|       | Properties Statistics Tape Alert   |
|       | 12:04 admin connected to kiev1     12:20 Ticket created successfully   |
|       | 🗐 🔲 📃 🔮 Internet   |

| Field/Button    | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|-----------------|------|-----------|---|
| Statistics rate |      | Select    | Show daily/weekly statistics.                                       |
| Start date      |      | Select    | Start date in range.  |
| End date        |      | Select    | End date in range.  |
| Statistics type |      | Select    | Statistics type (All / Mounts only / Errors only / Cleanings only). |
| Mounts          |      | Supplied  | Mounts executed by the drive.                                       |
| Errors          |      | Supplied  | Errors encountered in the drive.                                    |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Cleanings    |      | Supplied  | Cleanings done in drive.               |
| Refresh      | ø    | Click     | Refresh Logical Library statistics.    |
| Help         | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

### **Tape Alert**

Selecting the Tape Alert tab displays information concerning current tape alerts. A drive issues a tape alert whenever there is a problem in the drive that relates to a tape cartridge. The problem can be with the drive or the with the tape cartridge.

You can use this function to cross-reference tape alerts for drives and tape cartridges over a specified period of time, in order to determine if the problem belongs to the drive or to a specific tape cartridge. For more information, refer to <u>Viewing Tape Alerts</u> on page 26.



| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help   |           |  |  |  |
|--|-----------|--|--|--|
| adic User admin connected to kiev1   |           |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service   |           |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target   |           |  |  |  |
| Select component       P Im Library1 (online)     Current Month       Current Month     Current Month  | с 7<br>4ц |  |  |  |
| Cartridges     DR_IBM LTO-2 SCSI     DR_IBM LTO-4 FC_     DR_ST_LTO_1     E01     E01     Drives     G P3DR260 IBM LT(     G P3DR261 IBM LT(     G P4DR256 IBM LT(     G P4DR257 IBM LT(     G P |           |  |  |  |
| Properties Statistics Tape Alert   | ?         |  |  |  |
| 12:04 admin connected to kiev1   |           |  |  |  |
| 12:20 Ticket created successfully  |           |  |  |  |
| 🕘 🛛 🔮 Internet   | .:        |  |  |  |

| Field/Button                              | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---|------|-----------|--|
| Show the cartridge for the selected drive | Ŧ    | Supplied  | Displays the cartridge that prompted the tape alert                  |
| Search a cartridge                        | Ē    | Click     | Select a cartridge from a list of cartridges that caused tape alerts |

| Field/Button              | lcon           | Operation           | Description                            |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--|
| Report                    |                | Click               |  |
|                           | ⊑⊐<br>₩∎       |                     |  |
| Help                      | ?              | Click               | Open online help for the current pane. |
| Figure 87 Report Criteria |                |                     |  |
|                           | 🚔 Report Crite | eria                | ×                                      |
|                           | Sort By:       | Drive               | •                                      |
|                           | Grouping:      |                     |  |
|                           | 📄 Cartri       | idge 🛛 🗹 Tape Alert | ✓ Drive                                |
|                           | ित्र to XLS    | 다. to PDF           | Cancel                                 |

In the Report Criteria dialog box, choose how you want to sort the report and how you want to group the report. It is possible to limit the report by selected objects:

- Cartridge
- Tape Alert
- Drive

You can export the report into either a spreadsheet file or into a PDF file.

# **Create Library**

Under the Controller properties, the **Add new Logical Library** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up library creation pane.



Only administrator users can create the library. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Library** button is disabled.

### Figure 88 Logical Library Creation

| 🚖 Add new Library      |            | ×            |
|------------------------|------------|--------------|
| Property               | Value      | $\checkmark$ |
| 🖉 Name                 | Library1   | ×            |
| 🗟 ID                   | 0          | <b>••</b>    |
| 🗟 Number of cartridges | 0          |              |
| 🗟 Number of drives     | 0          |              |
| 🗟 Number of slots      | 0          |              |
| 🗟 Number of I/E slots  | 0          |              |
| 🗟 State                |            |              |
| 🖉 Auto-cleaning        | On         |              |
|                        |            |              |
| Clients                |            |              |
|                        |            |              |
|                        |            |              |
|                        |            |              |
| Properties Resource    | Statistics | ?            |

| Field/Button         | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name                 | ø    | Enter     | New logical library name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.                               |
| ID                   | 8    | Supplied  | Logical library identification number.  |
| Number of cartridges | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available cartridges.   |
| Number of drives     | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available drives.   |
| Number of slots      | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available storage slots.  |
| Number of I/E slots  |      | Supplied  | Number of available mailbox slots.  |
| State                | 8    | Supplied  | Logical library state. See <u>Table 10</u> on page 69.  |
| Auto-cleaning        | ø    | Supplied  | Indicates if auto-cleaning is enabled or turned off.  |
| Clients              |      | Supplied  | The clients attached to the logical library.<br>Always empty for the library that is being created. |
| Create               | 1    | Click     | Create logical library.   |
| Cancel               | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.  |
| Help                 | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |



The created logical library is *invalid* and not operable. To complete the library configuration, at least two partitions (storage and drive, three recommended — storage, insert/eject, and drive) should be assigned to the logical library before the inventory can be executed. Refer to <u>Assign Partition</u> on page 122 and <u>Assign Partitions</u> on page 40.

# **Assign Partition**

Under the Library properties, the **Assign Partition** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up partition assignment pane.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can assign the partitions. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Assign Partition** button is disabled.

**W** Note There is a more powerful engine for the multiple partition assignment operation. It is accessible from the Main Menu bar. Refer to <u>Assign Partitions</u> on page 40.

Figure 89 Partition Assign

| 🌺 Assign Partition |                         | X |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Properties         |                         |   |
| Property           | Value                   |   |
| 🖉 Name             | Partition18             |   |
| 🗟 Element Class    | Storage                 |   |
| 🗟 Element Type     | LTO                     |   |
| 🗟 Start            | LIB2_35768 LTO (200031) |   |
| 🗟 End              | LIB2_36767 LTO          |   |
| 🗟 Allocation       | Robot1                  | 3 |

| Field/Button  | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name          | ø    | Select    | Select the partition to assign  |
| Element class | Ø    | Supplied  | Partition class (storage, I/E, drive). See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71.              |
| Element type  | 8    | Supplied  | Partition element type.   |
| Start         | ۲    | Supplied  | Start element of partition range.   |
| End           | 8    | Supplied  | End element of partition range.   |
| Allocation    | Ø    | Supplied  | <i>Robot1 / Robot2</i> indicates the robotic device where the partition is located. |
|               |      |           | Shared means the partition is shared between two robots.                            |
| Assign        | 1    | Click     | Assign partition  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Cancel assignment.                     |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

# **Create Pool**

Under the Library properties, the **Add new Scratch Pool** and **Add new Clean Pool** buttons appear. Clicking either opens a pop-up pool creation pane.

Note Only administrator users can create the mailboxes. For the user without administrative privileges, both the Add new Scratch Pool and Add new Clean Pool buttons are disabled.

### Figure 90 Pool Creation

| 🔹 Add new Clean Pool       |                    |          |  |  |
|----------------------------|--------------------|----------|--|--|
| Properties                 |                    |          |  |  |
| Property                   | Value              |          |  |  |
| 🗟 ID                       | 10                 | <b>_</b> |  |  |
| 🗟 Media Pool type          | Clean              | ×        |  |  |
| 🗟 Device                   | ADIC Scalar 1000 # |          |  |  |
| 🖉 Media Type               | 8mm                |          |  |  |
| 🗟 Number of volsers        | 1                  |          |  |  |
| 🖉 Watermark                | 3                  |          |  |  |
| 🖉 Maximum cleanings per ta | ape 10 🔽           |          |  |  |
| Volsers                    |                    |          |  |  |
| Name                       | State              |          |  |  |
| <b>E</b> 000010            |                    |          |  |  |

| Field/Button      | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name              | ø    | Enter     | Pool name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.                                       |
| ID                | 7    | Supplied  | Pool identification number.  |
| Media Pool type   | 6    | Supplied  | Pool type (data/clean).  |
| Device            | Ð    | Supplied  | The name of device (physical library) where the pool is located.                             |
| Media type        | ø    | Select    | The type of media contained in the pool. Refer to <u>Media Types</u> on page 263.            |
| Number of volsers | Ø    | Supplied  | The number of cartridges currently contained in the pool.                                    |
| Watermark         | ø    | Enter     | The minimal number of valid cleaning media the pool should contain.<br>For clean pools only. |

| Field/Button                  | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|-------------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Maximum cleanings<br>per tape | ø    | Enter     | The number of times the cleaning cartridge belonging<br>to the pool can be used.<br>For clean pools only.   |
| Volsers                       |      | Supplied  | The list of cartridges that are currently contained in the pool. The cartridge state is also indicated. Also refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103. |
| Assign/Unassign               | Ť    | Click     | Pop-up Assign/Unassign cartridges dialog opens.<br>Refer to <u>Assign Media to Pool</u> on page 108.  |
| Create                        | -    | Click     | Create pool.  |
| Cancel                        | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.  |
| Help                          | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |



Pool names are unique for a logical library. Using the default name ensures uniqueness.

# **Create Mailbox**

Under the Library properties, the **Add new Mailbox** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up mailbox creation pane.

Only administrator users can create the mailboxes. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Mailbox** button is disabled.

### Figure 91 Mailbox Creation

| 🎇 Add new MailBox |                  |         |              | ×                     |   |
|-------------------|------------------|---------|--------------|-----------------------|---|
| Properties        |                  |         |              | EG                    |   |
| Property          | /                |         | Value        |                       |   |
| 🖉 Name            |                  | E02     |              | <ul> <li>✓</li> </ul> |   |
| 🗟 ID              |                  |         | 0            |                       | × |
| 🗟 Number of I/E : | slots            | 50      |              |                       |   |
| IESIots           |                  |         |              |                       |   |
| Name              | Element type     |         | Partition    |                       |   |
| ⊏⊐ P20_IE1026     | Generic half inc |         | Partition20  |                       |   |
| ⊏⊐ P20_IE1027     | Generic half inc |         | Partition20  | 222                   |   |
| ⊏⊐ P20_IE1028     | Generic ha       | alf inc | Partition20  |                       | 7 |
| D20 1E4020        | Conorio hy       | alfina  | Doutition 20 |                       |   |

| Field/Button        | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name                | ø    | Enter     | Mailbox name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.  |
| ID                  | F    | Supplied  | Mailbox identification number.   |
| Number of I/E slots |      | Supplied  | The number of assigned slots.  |
| I/E slots           |      | Supplied  | The list of slots that are currently assigned to the mailbox. The slot names, element type, and partition are indicated. |
| Assign/Unassign     | EŞ   | Click     | Pop-up Assign/Unassign mailbox slots dialog opens.<br>Refer to <u>Assign Media to Pool</u> on page 108.                  |
| Create              | 1    | Click     | Create mailbox.  |
| Cancel              | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.   |
| Help                | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

😻 Note

Mailbox names are unique for a logical library. Using a default name ensures uniqueness.

<sup>😻</sup> Note

# Physical Tab

The Physical Tab pane describes the configuration of a physical library. The starting Physical pane shows the Scan SCSI properties of the Scalar DLC host PC.

Note Only administrator users can modify the Scalar DLC system configuration. For the user without administrative privileges the operation buttons remain disabled.

| 🌺 Scalar DLC 📃 🗖 🗙  |                     |       |     |  |
|---|---------------------|-------|-----|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |                     |       |     |  |
| adic User admin connected   | i to computer       |       |     |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service  |                     |       |     |  |
| Logical Physical Users C  | Clients SCSI Target |       |     |  |
| Select component  | Properties          |       |     |  |
| 🛛 🗣 🔜 computer  | Property            | Value | 8.8 |  |
| 🕒 📴 ADIC Scalar 10K#1   | 🖉 Rescan number     | 5     |     |  |
| 🕒 📴 ADIC Scalar 1000 #  | 🖉 Timeout (s)       | 180   |     |  |
|   |                     |       |     |  |
|   |                     |       |     |  |
| <ul> <li>15:22 Please wait. Assigning</li> <li>15:23 Logical library "Library1" has no DRIVEs to match "3590E" media.</li> <li>15:28 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> <li>15:29 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 67 cartridges.</li> </ul> |                     |       |     |  |

| Field/Button  | lcon       | Operation | Description   |
|---------------|------------|-----------|---|
| Rescan number | ø          | Enter     | The number of Rescan SCSI Bus operations done.                                    |
| Timeout(s)    | ø          | Enter     | The default timeout time, ms.   |
| Scan SCSI Bus | <b>8,8</b> | Click     | Scan SCSI bus and create the physical library objects for each new library found. |
| Update        | Þ          | Click     | Save properties after edit.   |
| Help          | 7          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |
## Library

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Physical Libraries appear. Clicking the expand/ collapse button causes an element expansion.

There are three sets of properties associated with a physical library.

- Properties. The properties of physical library. Refer to Properties on page 127.
- Media Rules. Setting the media rules for the physical library. Refer to Media Rules on page 129.
- Statistics. Monitoring the statistics fir the physical library. Refer to <u>Statistics</u> on page 131.

## **Properties**

| Figure 93 | Physical | Library | Properties | s |
|-----------|----------|---------|------------|---|
|-----------|----------|---------|------------|---|

| 🛓 Scalar DLC  |                                       |                         |           |
|---|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended   | Service Help                          |                         |           |
| adic User admin connected   | to computer                           |                         |           |
| Library Configuration Ev  | ents Service                          |                         |           |
| Logical Physical Users  | Clients SCSI Target                   |                         |           |
| Select component  | Property                              | Value                   |           |
| P 🔜 computer  | 🖻 Name                                | ADIC Scalar 1000 #11111 |           |
|   | 🖻 State                               | Online                  |           |
| ADIC Scalar 10K #22   | ProductID                             | Scalar 1000             | <b>**</b> |
|   | 🗟 VendorID                            | ADIC                    |           |
|   | 🗟 Command queue execution             | Activated               | 8         |
|   | 🗟 Number of storage                   | 90                      | 3         |
|   | Number of I/E slots                   | 36                      |           |
|   | 🗟 Number of drives                    | 10                      |           |
|   | 🗟 Number of cartridges                | 29                      |           |
|   |                                       |                         |           |
|   | Properties Media rules Stat           | istics                  | ?         |
| <ul> <li>17:47 Initializing element status</li> <li>17:47 Inventory for library Library</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000007</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000017</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000017</li> </ul> | for library Library1<br>/1 completed. |                         |           |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name         | ۲    | Supplied  | Tape device name.                                       |
| State        | ۲    | Supplied  | Physical library state. See <u>Table 11</u> on page 70. |
| Product ID   | ۲    | Supplied  | Library product ID.                                     |
| Vendor ID    | ß    | Supplied  | Library vendor ID.                                      |

| Field/Button                            | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---|------|-----------|---|
| Command queue<br>execution <sup>a</sup> | ۲    | Supplied  | Activated means commands should be executed when they arrive to the physical library.           |
|   |      |           | <i>Frozen</i> means commands should be executed only after the library will be activated again. |
| Number of storage                       | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available storage slots.  |
| Number of I/E slots                     | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available mailbox slots.  |
| Number of drives                        | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available drives.   |
| Number of cartridges                    | 8    | Supplied  | Number of available cartridges.   |
| Remove                                  |      | Click     | Remove the physical library.  |
| Add new Partition                       | 堦    | Click     | Add new partition. Refer to <u>Create Partition</u> on page 143.                                |
| Freeze                                  | *    | Click     | Freeze command queue execution.   |
| Activate                                |      | Click     | Activate command queue execution (after freeze).  |
| Reset Alarm flag                        | 8    | Click     | Remove Alarm flag (active only when the library is in <i>Alarm</i> state).                      |
| Refresh Alarm flag                      | 2    | Click     | Refresh Management GUI for Alarm.   |
| Help                                    | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

a. The Freeze command queue execution feature currently is implemented for the Scalar 10K DA libraries only.

AUTION

If the physical library properties are changed (for example, another drive added), the Scan SCSI Bus operation does <u>not</u> update the existing library properties. The update can be done only by the Teach command from the device operator panel.

AUTION

When new drive(s) and/or insert/eject slot(s) have been added to the physical library that already contains a working configuration (logical library, clients, etc.), the admin must check whether the configuration of partitions is still correct. Refer to <u>Partition</u> on page 136.

The operation of assign-unassign partitions may be required. Refer to <u>Assign</u> <u>Partition</u> on page 122 and <u>Assign Partitions</u> on page 40.



If the physical library is removed, all partitions, media rules, and offline cartridges are lost. Library delete confirmation is required.

## **Media Rules**

The physical library cannot always correctly identify the cartridge media type by recognizing its barcode label (especially for the old models of barcode readers). The media domain is always recognized correctly, the media type is not. In such cases the un-recognized volser receives the media type as default to the slot where it has been found during **Inventory**.

However, this may lead to incorrect assignment of media type to cartridge, and that can even lead to a hardware crash (for example, if the SDLT cartridge has been mis-identified as DLT III and mounted to the Quantum DLT 4000 drive).

To improve the situation, a Media rules feature has been provided so the Scalar DLC administrator can assign a correct media type to the range of volsers. The typical rule is, "if the cartridge is in the specified volser range and has the specified media domain, check whether it has the specified media type". The volser ranges specified in different rules cannot overlap by media domain (that means, two rules cannot have both same media domain and overlapped volser ranges). See Figure 94 on page 129.

Also refer to Media Types on page 263 and Drive Types on page 266.



The media rules do <u>not</u> work automatically and require the manual appliance and confirmation.



The media rules feature should be used only by expert users. The incorrect assignment of media type to cartridge can cause a hardware crash.

#### Figure 94 Media Rules

| 🚖 Scalar DLC  |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |                             |
| adic User admin connected to computer   |                             |
| Library Configuration Events Service  |                             |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target  |                             |
| Select component       Media domain       Volser range       Media type <ul> <li>Maccinet and the second s</li></ul> | - 6 <sup>4</sup><br>67<br>∕ |
| Properties Media rules Statistics   | ?                           |
| <ul> <li>17:47 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> <li>17:47 Inventory for library Library1 completed.</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000007</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000011</li> <li>17:49 move cartridge 000007 fniched.</li> </ul>   |                             |

| Field/Button | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|----------|-----------|---|
| Media domain |          | Supplied  | The domain of media selected by the rule.   |
| Volser Range |          | Supplied  | The range of volsers selected by the rule.  |
| Media type   |          | Supplied  | The media type that should be assigned.   |
| Add          | ð        | Click     | Add a new media rule. A pop-up window opens, refer to <u>Create</u><br><u>Media Rule</u> on page 130.   |
| Remove       | <b>É</b> | Click     | Remove an existing rule.  |
| Apply        |          | Click     | Apply the selected rule. A pop-up window opens, refer to <u>Apply</u><br><u>Media Rule</u> on page 130. |
| Help         | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

## **Create Media Rule**

The pop-up pane allows to create media rule.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can create the media rules. For the user without administrative privileges the button is disabled.

#### Figure 95 Media Rule Creation

| 🌺 Add Volser range | ×                                |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Volser range       | 000002 - 240000                  |
| Media domain       | 8 mm 🔻                           |
| Media type         | AIT                              |
|                    | <ul> <li>✓</li> <li>×</li> </ul> |

Enter the volser range. Select the media domain. Specify the media type that should be assigned to the cartridges in the specified range, if they do have an appropriate media domain. Click **OK** to create and apply the media rule. Click **Cancel** to exit without creating the media rule.

## **Apply Media Rule**

The pop-up pane allows to apply the existing media rule.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can apply the media rules. For the user without administrative privileges the button is disabled.

#### Figure 96 Apply Media Rule

| 🌺 Use new m | edia type      |                |          | X |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------|---|
| Volser      | Old media type | New media type | Use      | 1 |
| 000042      | 8mm            | AIT            | <b>V</b> |   |
| 2221u1      | 8mm            | AIT            | <b>V</b> | X |
| 2222u2      | 8mm            | AIT            | Ľ        |   |
| 2223u3      | 8mm            | AIT            | Ľ        |   |
|             |                |                |          |   |

For every *Volser*, check whether the *New* media type should be used instead of *Old* media type. Leave *Use* check box blank if it is not true. Click **OK** to apply the media rule. Press **Cancel** to close the pane without applying the rule.

#### **Statistics**





| Field/Button    | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Statistics rate |      | Select    | Show daily/weekly statistics.                                      |
| Start date      |      | Select    | Start date in range.   |
| End date        |      | Select    | End date in range.   |
| Statistics type |      | Select    | Statistics type (All / Mounts only / Errors only / Requests only). |
| Mounts          |      | Supplied  | Mounts executed in physical library.                               |
| Errors          |      | Supplied  | Errors encountered in physical library.                            |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Requests     |      | Supplied  | Requests received by physical library. |
| Refresh      | ¢    | Click     | Refresh Physical Library statistics.   |
| Help         | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

## Robot

Depending on type, the physical library can have either one robotic controller (single-aisle library - Scalar 1000, Scalar 10K), or two (dual-aisle library, Scalar 10K DA).

| Library Configuration Ever | its Service         |        |  |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--------|--|
| Logical Physical Users     | Clients SCSI Target |        |  |
| Select component           | Properties          |        |  |
| 📍 🖿 ADIC Scalar 10Kl 🔺     | Property            | Value  |  |
| Robot1                     | 🖻 Name              | Robot1 |  |
| Robot2                     | 🖻 Number            | 1      |  |
| 🕒 💁 🚮 Offline Cartrid      | 🗟 State             | active |  |
| Storage Slots              | 🖻 Barcode mode      | I∎ Yes |  |
| E MailBoxes                |                     |        |  |
| 📄 🔁 Drives                 |                     |        |  |
| Partition10 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition11 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition12 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition13 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition14 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition16 (G             |                     |        |  |
| Partition17 (L             |                     |        |  |
| Partition18 (              |                     |        |  |
|                            |                     |        |  |
|                            |                     |        |  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name         | Ø    | Supplied  | Robotic controller name.  |
| Number       | Ð    | Supplied  | Robotic controller number (1 for single-aisle robot, 1 or 2 for dual-aisle robots). |
| State        | 6    | Supplied  | Robotic controller state. See <u>Table 12</u> on page 70.                           |
| Barcode mode | 6    | Supplied  | Barcode reader is always active for the Scalar robots.                              |
| Start        | Þ    | Click     | Start the robot that is currently offline.  |

| Field/Button | lcon       | Operation | Description                              |
|--------------|------------|-----------|--|
| Stop         | <b>100</b> | Click     | Stop the robot that is currently online. |
| Update       | Ø          | Click     | Update the robot parameters after edit.  |
| Help         | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

### Figure 99 Robot Offline

| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |                                      |            |     |  |
|---|--------------------------------------|------------|-----|--|
| adic User admin connected to kiev1  | adic User admin connected to kiev1   |            |     |  |
| Library Configuration Events Se   | Library Configuration Events Service |            |     |  |
| Logical Physical Users Client   | s SCSI Target                        |            |     |  |
| Select component  | Properties                           |            |     |  |
| P 🔜 kiev1   | Property                             | Value      |     |  |
|   | 🗟 Name                               | Robot1     |     |  |
| - 🛱 Offline Cartridges  | State                                | active     | - 💌 |  |
| - 🛱 Auto Clean Cartridges   | Barcode mode                         |            |     |  |
| Storage Slots<br>MailBoxes<br>Drives<br>DR_IBM LTO-2 SCSI3<br>DR_IBM LTO-4 FC4<br>IE_LTO2<br>ST_LTO1<br>? |                                      |            | ?   |  |
| 11:49 admin connected to kiev1  |                                      |            |     |  |
| Applet sdlc3gui.panels.Prowler3 started   |                                      | 🥥 Internet |     |  |

# Auto Clean Cartridges

To use the auto clean functionality, you must have already created at least one cleaning partition. For more configuration information, see <u>Auto Clean Cartridges</u> on page 19.

| Figure 100 | Auto Clean | Cartridges Pane |
|------------|------------|-----------------|
|------------|------------|-----------------|



| Field/Button                             | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--|------|-----------|--|
| Volser                                   | ۲    | Supplied  | The volume serial number, a cartridge name. Each cartridge has one volser.   |
| Media Type                               | ₿    | Supplied  | Cartridge media type. Refer to Media Types on page 263   |
| Import Clean<br>Cartridges               | æ    | Click     | Import cleaning media.   |
| Export<br>expired<br>cleaning<br>mediums | ÷    | Click     | Cleaning media can be used a limited number of times. If a piece of media is expired, export it to remove it from the library. |

## Properties

| Value 00101 .IB1_4005 .LT IV 0 | 2<br>2 |
|--------------------------------|--------|
|                                |        |

|--|

| Field/Button      | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Volser            | ۵    | Supplied  | The volume serial number, a cartridge name. Each cartridge has one volser.                                 |
| Home<br>position  | ۲    | Supplied  | An offline cartridge home position, in both LSCI and SCSI format. Refer to Element Addressing on page 260. |
| Media Type        | ۲    | Supplied  | Cartridge media type. Refer to Media Types on page 263   |
| Use count         | ø    | Enter     | Number of mounts performed (for the data cartridge only).  |
| Max use<br>count  | ø    | Enter     | Shows how long the drive could be used without cleaning (number of mounts between cleanings).              |
| State             | ø    | Enter     | Reflects whether the cartridge is available or expired.  |
| Edit              | Þ    | Click     | Change Auto Clean Cartridges properties.   |
| Export            | ÷    | Click     | Export cleaning media.   |
| Cleaning<br>drive | ÷    | Click     | Initiates manual drive cleaning operation via the auto-cleaning media, not the Clean Pool media.           |



## Partition

Partition is a segment of the physical library that contains a continuous range of slots of single class (for example, Storage) and type (for example, DLT). The partitions cannot overlap, so if the admin wants to create a partition that includes a part of an occupied range, it is required to remove the previous partition and create two new partitions instead.

Table 13 on page 71 shows the different partition classes.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can modify or remove the partition. For the user without administrative privileges, the operation buttons remain disabled.

#### Figure 102 Physical Partition



| Field/Button     | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name             | ø    | Enter     | Partition name. Should be unique throughout all physical<br>libraries.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| Element<br>class | 8    | Supplied  | Partition class (storage, I/E, drive). See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Element type | ٨    | Supplied  | Partition element type. Refer to <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264, <u>Mailbox Types</u> on page 265, or <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266.  |
| Start        | 8    | Supplied  | Start element of partition range.  |
| End          | 9    | Supplied  | End element of partition range.  |
| Allocation   | Ð    | Supplied  | <i>Robot1 / Robot2</i> indicates the robotic device where the partition is located.  |
|              |      |           | Shared means the partition is shared between two robots.   |
| Ranges       |      | Supplied  | The element ranges of selected class and type inside the current physical library.<br>The ranges already occupied with the partitions are shown in gray, and the partition name is indicated. The ranges that are free for the new partition are shown in black. |
| Update       | Þ    | Click     | Save partition properties after edit.  |
| Remove       | 25   | Click     | Remove the partition.  |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

Νote

The shared partitions are always based on tower storages. Non-shared storage partition may be based either on tower, or on linear shelve.

# Offline Cartridge

If the cartridge is not found in the library after the **Inventory** has been executed, its state changes to offline. After that, the cartridge is removed from the Cartridge list of the Logical library and goes to the archive list, or the list of offline cartridges. It is displayed on the Physical tab and contains the information about cartridges that were removed from the physical library.

The offline cartridge typically contains a short description (for example, when and why it has been removed). The user can physically remove the offline cartridge if this cartridge should not be returned to the system.

The offline cartridges could either save their home position (if they were removed from the library in either *stored, ejected*, or *mounted* state), or lose it (if they were removed in *problem box* or *unloaded* state). If the offline cartridge resided in the home position right before it was removed, this coordinate is saved. If the cartridge later returns to the library, the executed **Inventory** restores its old home position. However, when the cartridge is offline, another cartridge may occupy its old home slot because it is not marked as the home position of a valid cartridge. Should that be the case, the user can either move that cartridge to another storage slot to free the home position of the offline cartridge that he wants to return to the library later, or he can simply return the cartridge to the library. If the user prefers the last, an **Inventory** assigns a new valid home position to a cartridge.

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Offline Cartridges is displayed. Clicking the expand/ collapse button results in an element expansion.

## Figure 103 Offline Cartridges

| 🅵 Scalar DLC 📃 🗆 🔀   |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
|--|--|-------------------------------|-------------|---|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help                   |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
| adic User admin connected                                  | adic User admin connected to computer  |                               |             |   |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service                       |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users (                                   | Clients SCSIT  | arget                         |             |   |  |  |
| Select component   | Offline Cartrige   | 95                            |             |   |  |  |
| 🛛 🛛 🗣 🔜 computer   | Volser   | Home position                 | Occupied by |   |  |  |
| Im ADIC Scalar 10K   | 000038   | LSCI : LW01020502 SCSI : 2029 |             |   |  |  |
| - 🗗 Offline Cartridges                                     | □ 000058   | LSCI : LW01020602 SCSI : 2030 |             | Φ |  |  |
| Storage Slots  | □ 000028   | LSCI : LW01040604 SCSI : 2080 |             |   |  |  |
| MailBoxes  | <b>□</b> 000048  | LSCI : LW01041204 SCSI : 2086 |             |   |  |  |
| - 🗃 Drives   | <b>□</b> 000018  | LSCI : LW02082402 SCSI : 2198 |             |   |  |  |
|  | 000008   | LSCI : LW02090103 SCSI : 2200 | 00066       |   |  |  |
| ELTO_2<br>BE_LTO_1   |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
|  |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
| 15:58 Inventory for library Library                        | 15:59 Inventory for library Library Lorendeted Found 61 contridence                                      |                               |             |   |  |  |
| 16:03 admin connected to com                               | 15.58 Inventory for inprary Library Completed. Found 61 carthoges.     16:03 admin connected to computer |                               |             |   |  |  |
| 16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9 |  |                               |             |   |  |  |
| 🛛 16:08 Inventory completed successfully.                  |  |                               |             |   |  |  |

| Field/Button  | lcon           | Operation | Description  |
|---------------|----------------|-----------|--|
| Volser        |                | Supplied  | Data cartridge offline, home position is free.   |
|               |                |           | Cleaning cartridge offline, home position is free.   |
|               | C <sup>2</sup> |           | Data cartridge offline, home position is occupied.   |
|               | P              |           | Cleaning cartridge offline, home position is occupied.   |
| Home position |                | Supplied  | An offline cartridge home position, in both LSCI and SCSI format. Refer to Element Addressing on page 260.                                   |
| Occupied by   |                | Supplied  | A cartridge that occupies offline cartridge home slot, if any.   |
| Remove        | ₫              | Click     | Remove selected offline cartridge(s) from the archive.   |
| Refresh       | Φ              | Click     | Force refresh the offline cartridges and apply changes in case<br>of any difference. The offline cartridges list itself is not<br>refreshed. |
| Help          | 7              | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

To remove a cartridge from the archive list of the offline cartridges, select it and press **Remove** button. Multiple cartridges can be selected by the <Ctrl>+Click, too, and removed the same way.

Selecting a single cartridge opens Offline Cartridge pane with its properties.

## Figure 104 Offline Cartridge

| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help         Ibrary Configuration Events Service         Logical Physical Users Clients SCPI Terget         Select component         Properties         Image: Configuration Events         Select component         Properties         Image: Configuration Events         Select component         Properties         Image: Configuration Events         Image: Computer         Image: Computer <th>🌺 Scalar DLC</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th>_ 🗆 ×</th>   | 🌺 Scalar DLC  |   |                               | _ 🗆 × |  |  |  |
|--|---|---|-------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| Ibray       Configuration       Events       Service         Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       BCSITarget         Select component       Properties            •          •          •  | Connection Wizards Extended   | d Service Help                          |                               |       |  |  |  |
| Library       Configuration       Events       Service         Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       BCSI Target         Select component       Properties       Properties   | adic User admin connecte  | d to computer                           |                               |       |  |  |  |
| Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       SCSI Target         Select component       Properties <ul> <li>Mail C Scalar 10k</li> <li>Molos Molos Scalar 10k</li> <li>Molos Molos Classical Scalar 10k</li> <li>Molos Molos Class Molos</li></ul>   | Library Configuration Events  | Service                                 |                               |       |  |  |  |
| Select component       Properties            P im ADIC Scalar 10k           P operty        Value             P im ADIC Scalar 10k           P operty        Value             P im ADIC Scalar 10k             P operty        Value             P im ADIC Scalar 10k           P operties             P operty        Value             P im ADIC Scalar 10k           P operty           D 00008                 P 0000038           O 000028           O 000028           O offlined at           O4/04/2002               D OR_IBM LTO-           Storage Slots           Offlined at           O4/04/2002               D R_IBM LTO-             St_ILTO   | Logical Physical Users  | Clients SCSI Target                     |                               |       |  |  |  |
| P computer   P ADIC Scalar 10K   P Otolscalar 10K   P Otols   | Select component  | Properties                              |                               |       |  |  |  |
| P ADIC Scalar 10K   P Ø Offline Cartri   I 000038   I 000038   I 000058   I 000028   I 000048   II Offlined at   II 000048   II III   III III   III III   III IIII   IIII IIIII   IIIIIIIIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII  | 🛛 🛛 🗣 🔜 computer  | Property                                | Value                         |       |  |  |  |
| Offline Cartrig     O00038     O00058     O000058     O000028     O000048     O000048     Offlined at     O4/04/2002     Offlined at     Offlined at     O4/04/2002     Offlined at     Offlined at     Offlined at     Offlined at     Offlined at     O4/04/2002     Offlined at     Offlined     Offlined     Offlined at       | 🛛 🛛 🕈 🖬 ADIC Scalar 10K   | 🖻 Volser                                | 000008                        |       |  |  |  |
| Occupied by 00066 Offlined at 04/04/2002 Offline   | 🌳 🛱 Offline Cartri  | 🖻 Home position                         | LSCI : LW02090103 SCSI : 2200 |       |  |  |  |
| Outputs Ou   |   | 🖻 Occupied by                           | 00066                         | Φ     |  |  |  |
| Output to the second secon |   | 🗟 Offlined at                           | 04/04/2002                    |       |  |  |  |
| Auto Clean C:<br>Storage Slots<br>MailBoxes<br>DR_IBM LTO-<br>DR_IBM LTO-<br>DR_IBM LTO-<br>DR_IBM LTO-<br>IE_LTO2<br>ST_LTO1<br>Comment<br>T5:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges.<br>16:03 admin connected to computer<br>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9<br>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9<br>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9   |   |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| DR_IBM LTO-<br>DR_IBM LTO-<br>IE_LTO_2<br>ST_LTO_1<br>IS:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges.<br>16:03 admin connected to computer<br>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9<br>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9<br>16:08 Inventory completed successfully   | Auto Clean Ca Storage Slots MailBoxes                               |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>IE_LTO2<br/>ST_LTO1</li> <li>ST_LTO1</li> <li>The state of the state of t</li></ul> |   | Comment                                 |                               |       |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>ST_LTO1</li> <li>ST_LTO_1</li> </ul>  | E_LTO2  |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges.</li> <li>16:03 admin connected to computer</li> <li>16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9</li> <li>16:08 Inventory completed successfully.</li> </ul>  | ST_LTO1   |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| 15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges.     16:03 admin connected to computer     16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9     16:08 Inventory completed successfully.   |   |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| 15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges.     16:03 admin connected to computer     16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9     16:08 Inventory completed successfully.   |   |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| 16:03 admin connected to computer     16:08 Initializing element status for Partition Partition9     16:08 Inventory completed successfully  | 15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.Found 61 cartridges. |   |                               |       |  |  |  |
| 16:08 Inventory completed successfully   | 16:03 admin connected to com<br>16:00 Initializing element statu    | iputer<br>a for Partition Partition®    |                               |       |  |  |  |
|  | 16:08 Inventory completed succession                                | s ior Farillion Parillion9<br>resefully |                               | 333   |  |  |  |

| Field/Button     | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Volser           |      | Supplied  | Offline cartridge name.   |
| Home<br>position | 8    | Supplied  | An offline cartridge home position, both SCSI and LSCI format.<br>Refer to <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260.                           |
| Occupied by      |      | Supplied  | A cartridge that occupies offline cartridge home slot, if any.  |
| Offlined at      |      | Supplied  | The date (mm/dd/yyyy) when the cartridge has gone to offline.   |
| Comment          |      | Enter     | The comment about the situation with the cartridge (for example, the reason why it is offline).   |
| Remove           | ₽    | Click     | Removes an offline cartridge from the archive.  |
| Update           | Þ    | Click     | Save offline cartridge properties after edit.   |
| Refresh          | Φ    | Click     | Force refresh the offline cartridges and apply changes in the event of any difference. The offline cartridges list itself is not refreshed. |
| Help             | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

# Storage Slots

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Storage Slots are displayed.



| adic User admin connecte       | d to kiev1    |           |                |  |   |  |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------------|--|---|--|
| Library Configuration Eve      | ents Service  |           |                |  |   |  |
| Logical Physical Users         | Clients SCS   | 3I Target |                |  |   |  |
| Select component               | List of Slots |           |                |  |   |  |
| ዮ- 💂 kiev1                     | Name          | MediaType | Current Volser |  | Φ |  |
| 🕂 🏪 ADIC Scalar 10K #00:       | 📼 LIB1_4096   | LTO       | 000240         |  | ¥ |  |
| - C Robot1                     | 📼 LIB1_4097   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
| - 🛱 Auto Clean Cartrid         | 📼 LIB1_4098   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
| - E Storage Slots              | 📼 LIB1_4099   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
| MailBoxes                      | 📥 LIB1_4100   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
| - 🗃 Drives                     | - LIB1_4101   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                | 📼 LIB1_4102   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                | 📼 LIB1_4103   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                | 📼 LIB1_4104   | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                | <br>LIB1 4105 | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                | <br>LIB1 4106 | LTO N     |                |  |   |  |
|                                | <br>LIB14107  | LTO       |                |  |   |  |
|                                |               | L TO      |                |  | 7 |  |
|                                |               |           |                |  |   |  |
| 11:40 admin connected to kieve |               |           |                |  |   |  |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name           |      | Supplied  | The slot name. The icon also shows the slot state. See <u>Table 14</u> on page 71.                       |
| Media Type     |      | Supplied  | The slot type. Refer to <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264.  |
| Current volser |      | Supplied  | If the slot is occupied, a contained cartridge is shown. For the optical disk, two cartridges are shown. |
| Refresh        | Φ    | Click     | Force refresh the cartridge list and apply changes in case of any difference.                            |
| Help           | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

# Mailboxes

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Mailboxes is displayed.

### Figure 106 Physical Mailboxes

| 🖀 http://172.16.108.33 - Scalar DLC - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 🔀 |               |               |                |          |  |  |
|---|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended   | Bervice Help  |               |                |          |  |  |
| adic User admin connected   | to kiev1      |               |                |          |  |  |
| Library Configuration Eve   | nts Service   |               |                |          |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users  | Clients SCS   | 31 Target     |                |          |  |  |
| Select component  | List of Slots |               |                |          |  |  |
| 👇 🖳 kiev1   | Name          | MediaType     | Current Volser | - C      |  |  |
|   | ⊑⊐ LIB1_16    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
| - C Robot1  | ⊑⊐ LIB1_17    | LTO I/E       | 000257         |          |  |  |
| - 🛱 Auto Clean Cartric  | ⊏⊐ LIB1_18    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
| - E Storage Slots   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_19    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
| - 🛃 MailBoxes   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_20    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
|   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_21    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
|   | □ LIB1_22     | Unknown Eleme |                |          |  |  |
| - 💾 IE_LTO2   | □ LIB1_23     | Unknown Eleme |                |          |  |  |
| - 🔁 ST_LTO1   | □ LIB1_24     | Unknown Eleme |                |          |  |  |
|   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_25    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
|   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_26    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
|   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_27    | LTO I/E       |                |          |  |  |
|   | ⊏⊐ LIB1_28    | LTO I/E       |                | - ?      |  |  |
|   |               |               |                |          |  |  |
| 11:49 admin connected to kiev1  |               |               |                | <b>^</b> |  |  |
|   |               |               |                | =        |  |  |
|   |               |               |                | -        |  |  |
| J   |               |               |                | •        |  |  |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name           |      | Supplied  | The slot name. The icon also shows the slot state. See <u>Table</u> <u>15</u> on page 72.                  |
| Media Type     |      | Supplied  | The slot type. Refer to Mailbox Types on page 265.   |
| Current volser |      | Supplied  | If the slot is occupied, the contained cartridge is shown. For the optical disk, two cartridges are shown. |
| Refresh        | Φ    | Click     | Force refresh the cartridge list and apply changes in the event of any difference.                         |
| Help           | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

# Drives

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Drives appear.

## Figure 107 Physical Drives

| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |               |                |                |     |  |  |
|--|---------------|----------------|----------------|-----|--|--|
| adic User admin connected                | to kiev1      |                |                |     |  |  |
| Library Configuration Eve                | nts Service   |                |                |     |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users                   | Clients SC:   | SI Target      |                |     |  |  |
| Select component                         | List of Slots |                |                |     |  |  |
| 👇 塁 kiev1                                | Name          | MediaType      | Current Volser | 6   |  |  |
| 🛉 🏪 ADIC Scalar 10K #00:                 | 📾 LIB1_256    | IBM LTO-4 FC   |                |     |  |  |
| - C Robot1                               | 📾 LIB1_257    | IBM LTO-4 FC   |                |     |  |  |
| - ∰ Auto Clean Cartrig                   | 🖨 LIB1_258    | Unknown Eleme  |                | =   |  |  |
| - E Storage Slots                        | 🖨 LIB1_259    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
| - El MailBoxes                           | 📾 LIB1_260    | IBM LTO-2 SCSI | 000196         |     |  |  |
|  | 📾 LIB1_261    | IBM LTO-2 SCSI | 000208         |     |  |  |
|  | 🖨 LIB1_262    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
|  | 🗇 LIB1_263    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
| ST_LTO1                                  | 🗇 LIB1_264    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
|  | 📾 LIB1_265    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
|  | 🗇 LIB1_266    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
|  | 🖨 LIB1_267    | Unknown Eleme  |                |     |  |  |
|  | 🖨 LIB1_268    | Unknown Eleme  |                | - 7 |  |  |
|  |               |                |                |     |  |  |
| 11:49 admin connected to kiev1           |               |                |                |     |  |  |
|  |               |                |                |     |  |  |
|  |               |                |                | _   |  |  |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|----------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name           |      | Supplied  | The slot name. The icon also shows the slot state. See <u>Table</u> <u>16</u> on page 73.                                     |
| Media Type     |      | Supplied  | The slot type. Refer to <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266.   |
| Current volser |      | Supplied  | If the slot is occupied, the contained cartridge is shown. For the optical disk, two cartridges are shown, active side first. |
| Refresh        | φ    | Click     | Force refresh the cartridge list and apply changes in the event of any difference.  |
| Help           | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

## **Create Partition**

Under the Library properties, the **Add new Partition** button appears. Click it to open a pop-up partition creation pane.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can create the partitions. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Partition** button is disabled.



| 🌺 Create new Partition |     |                        |           |   |
|------------------------|-----|------------------------|-----------|---|
| Properties             |     |                        |           |   |
| Property               |     |                        | Value     |   |
| 🖉 Name                 |     | Partition4             |           |   |
| 🖋 Element Class        |     | Drive                  |           | X |
| 🖉 Element Type         |     | Quantum                | DLT 4000  |   |
| 🖉 Start                |     | LIB1_100 Quantum DLT 4 |           |   |
| 🖉 End                  |     | LIB1_100               |           |   |
| 🗟 Allocation           |     | Robot1                 |           |   |
| Start                  | Rar | nges ——                | Partition |   |
| 100                    | 100 |                        | - unution |   |
|                        |     |                        |           | ? |

| Field/Button  | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name          | ø    | Enter     | Partition name. Should be unique throughout all physical libraries.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.   |
| Element class | ₿    | Supplied  | Partition class (storage, I/E, drive). See <u>Table 13</u> on page 71.  |
| Element type  | ₿    | Supplied  | Partition element type.Refer to <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264, <u>Mailbox Types</u> on page 265, or <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266.  |
| Start         |      | Supplied  | Start element of partition range.   |
| End           |      | Supplied  | End element of partition range.   |
| Allocation    |      | Supplied  | <i>Robot1 / Robot</i> 2 indicates the robotic device where the partition is located.  |
|               |      |           | Shared means the partition is shared between two robots.  |
| Ranges        |      | Supplied  | The element ranges of selected class and type inside<br>the current physical library.<br>The ranges already containing the partitions are<br>shown in gray, and the partition name is indicated. The<br>ranges that are free for the new partition are shown in<br>black. |
| Create        | 1    | Click     | Create partition.   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.                       |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane. |

V Note Using the default partition name is recommended but not required.

# Users Tab

The user is the person who has the rights to log on the Scalar DLC Management GUI.

All users have access to the Users Tab. Users that are known to the Scalar DLC software are indicated by different icons.

| Name            | lcon              | Description                                |
|-----------------|-------------------|--|
| Logged user     | <mark>ايما</mark> | A user is currently logged into the system |
| Not logged user | Å                 | A user is not logged into the system.      |

The user access lever is described in Table 20.

#### Table 20User Access Level

| Access Level | Explanation  |
|--------------|--|
| Admin        | Administrator of Management GUI is authorized to create/manage configuration and execute all service operations. Refer to <u>Table 21</u> on page 145. |
| CE           | Customer Engineer is authorized to manage customer requests (tickets) and execute basic operations. Refer to <u>Table 21</u> on page 145.              |
| User         | Typical user with changeable rights. Refer to <u>Table 21</u> on page 145.   |

Depending on the access level, the user may have additional rights to manage the Scalar DLC via the Management GUI and execute some Scalar DLC operations. The user access level cannot be changed, however the administrator can grant the user additional rights beyond those of a typical user. Refer to <u>Table 21</u> on page 145 for the details.

## Table 21User Rights

| Brivilogo                    | Description   | User Access Level |        |        |  |
|------------------------------|---|-------------------|--------|--------|--|
| Frivilege                    | Description   | Admin             | User   | CE     |  |
| Change<br>configuration      | <ul> <li>Manage Logical library, Pools,<br/>Mailboxes, Cartridges</li> <li>Scan SCSI bus; stop/start robotic<br/>controller; manage the partitions of<br/>Physical library</li> <li>Manage barcode reader and<br/>command execution</li> <li>Manage Media rules</li> <li>Manage Users and user rights</li> <li>Manage Clients, reserve slots and<br/>cartridges, define drives and<br/>cartridges</li> <li>Manage SCSI Targets and LUNs</li> <li>Manage Cluster settings</li> <li>Manage SNMP settings</li> </ul> | Yes               | No     | No     |  |
| Standard move<br>commands    | <ul> <li>Mount</li> <li>Dismount</li> <li>Import</li> <li>Export</li> <li>Drag&amp;drop</li> </ul>  | Yes               | Yes/No | Yes/No |  |
| Expert move commands         | <ul> <li>Move</li> <li>Execute logical library diagnostic tests</li> </ul>  | Yes               | No/Yes | Yes/No |  |
| Logical library manipulation | Inventory   | Yes               | Yes/No | Yes/No |  |
| Rules<br>manipulation        | <ul><li>Create rule</li><li>Remove rule</li><li>Update rule</li></ul>   | Yes               | No/Yes | No     |  |
| Physical library diagnostic  | Execute service diagnostic for the robotic accessor   | Yes               | No/Yes | Yes/No |  |
| Logs<br>manipulation         | <ul><li>Save log to file</li><li>Send log via email</li></ul>   | Yes               | No/Yes | Yes/No |  |
| Acknowledge notification     | Acknowledge the notification sent<br>via Management GUI   | Yes               | Yes/No | No/Yes |  |
| Ticket<br>manipulation       | <ul><li>Update problem report</li><li>Close problem report</li><li>Remove problem report</li></ul>  | No/Yes            | No     | Yes    |  |

The starting Users pane shows the properties of Scalar DLC host PC.

## Figure 109 User Controller

| 🌺 Scalar DLC                           |  |                                 | _ 🗆 × |  |  |  |
|--|--|---------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended            | Service Help   |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connected              | d to computer  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events           | Service  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users                 | Clients SCSI Target  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| Select component                       | Properties   |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| 💡 🗏 computer                           | Property   | Value                           | 磷     |  |  |  |
| 🙀 admin                                | 🗟 CPU Identifier   | GenuineIntel                    |       |  |  |  |
| 🕺 🕺 🖞                                  | 🔒 CPU Vendor Identifier  | x86 Family 5 Model 4 Stepping 3 |       |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 CPU Speed (MHz)  | 200                             |       |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 Total Physical Memory (K)                                    | 64948                           |       |  |  |  |
|  | 🗟 Free Physical Memory (K)                                     | 5312                            |       |  |  |  |
| 🖬 Total Virtual Memory (K) 2097024     |  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
| 🔓 Free Virtual Memory (K) 1938780      |  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
|  |  |                                 |       |  |  |  |
|  |  |                                 | 7     |  |  |  |
| • 46:24 Logical library III Proceeding | boo no DDIVEo to motob "25205" -                               | aadia                           |       |  |  |  |
| 16.24 Logical library "Library"        | nas no DRives to match "3590E" n<br>) was successfully created | neura.                          |       |  |  |  |
| 16:24 Please wait for updating         |  |                                 | 222   |  |  |  |
| 16:24 Updating finished succes         | ssfully.   |                                 | -     |  |  |  |

| Field/Button            | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|-------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| CPU Identifier          | Ø    | Supplied  | The CPU identifier  |
| CPU Vendor ID           | Ø    | Supplied  | The CPU vendor identifier   |
| CPU Speed               | Ø    | Supplied  | The CPU speed   |
| Total physical memory   |      | Supplied  | The total physical memory size  |
| Free physical<br>memory | ۲    | Supplied  | The free physical memory size   |
| Total virtual memory    | 8    | Supplied  | The total virtual memory size   |
| Free virtual memory     | 8    | Supplied  | The free virtual memory size  |
| Add new User            | 辭    | Click     | Pop-up user creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create</u><br><u>User</u> on page 149. |
| Help                    | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

# User

The *Select Component* area of the pane indicates a list of users. When the user is selected from the list, the user is highlighted.



| Scalar DLC                  |                                    |           | <u>_     ×</u> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|----------------|
| Connection wizards Extend   | ed Service Heip                    |           |                |
| adic User admin connec      | ted to computer                    |           |                |
| Library Configuration Even  | Its Service                        |           |                |
| Logical Physical Users      | Clients SCSI Target                |           |                |
| Select component            | Properties                         |           |                |
| 💡 🔜 computer                | Property                           | Value     |                |
| inn aurnin<br>⊗atac         | 🗟 Access Level                     | User      |                |
| A Z                         | 🥖 Email Address                    | z@z       |                |
|                             | 🖉 SMTP Server Name                 | mail      |                |
|                             | 🖉 SMTP Port Number                 | 25        | 3000           |
|                             | 🖉 From Address                     | sdlc@mail |                |
|                             | 🖉 Change password                  |           |                |
|                             | 🔀 Password                         |           | 19990          |
|                             | 🔀 Confirm                          |           | 00000          |
|                             | 🏴 Change configuration             |           |                |
|                             | 🖉 🖉 Standard move commands         |           |                |
|                             | 🖉 Expert move commands             |           |                |
|                             | 🥒 🖉 Logical Libraries manipulation | r         |                |
|                             | 🖉 Rules manipulation               |           | - 3            |
|                             |                                    |           |                |
| 15:24 admin connected to co | mputer                             |           |                |
|                             |                                    |           |                |
|                             |                                    |           |                |
|                             |                                    |           |                |

| Field/Button     | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Logon Name       | ø    | Enter     | User logon name (changeable).   |
| Access Level     | ₿    | Supplied  | User access level (refer to Table 20 on page 144).  |
| Email Address    | ø    | Enter     | User's email when sending notifications.  |
| SMTP Server Name | ø    | Enter     | SMTP server name.   |
| SMTP Port Number | ø    | Enter     | SMTP port number.   |
| From Address     | ø    | Enter     | Email address appears in the email field from.  |
| Change password  | Ø    | Check     | If the field is checked, the <i>password</i> and <i>confirm</i> fields<br>become editable. Otherwise, user's password cannot<br>be changed.<br>Note that the user cannot change own password. |
| Password         | ×    | Supplied  | User's password must be entered here.   |
| Confirm          | ×    | Supplied  | User's password must be confirmed here.   |

| Field/Button | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|----------|-----------|---|
| User rights  | ø        | Check     | The list of user rights as described in <u>Table 21</u> on page |
|              | 8        | Supplied  | UTU.  |
| Update       | Þ        | Click     | Save user properties after edit.                                |
| Remove       | <b>§</b> | Click     | Remove the user. The user cannot remove himself.                |
| Help         | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                          |

😻 Note

Even though the email server parameters are configured during the installation, the value can be edited.

Whote User access level is not changeable after it is created. The default CE **atac** cannot be removed. The user cannot remove himself.

## **Create User**

Under the Controller properties, the **Add new User** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up user creation pane.



Only administrator users can create additional users. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new User** button is disabled.

#### Figure 111 User Creation

| 🚔 Add new User                   |            | ×      |
|----------------------------------|------------|--------|
| Properties                       |            |        |
| Property                         | Value      | 1      |
| 🖉 Login Name                     | user1      | V      |
| 🖋 Access Level                   | Admin      | $\sim$ |
| 🖉 Email Address                  | user1@mail |        |
| 🖉 SMTP Server Name               | mail.int   |        |
| 🖉 SMTP Port Number               | 25         |        |
| 🖉 From Address                   |            |        |
| 🖉 Change password                |            |        |
| 🖉 Password                       | ******     |        |
| 🖉 Confirm                        | *****      |        |
| 🗟 Change configuration           | V          |        |
| 🗟 Standard move commands         | V          |        |
| 🗟 Expert move commands           | V          |        |
| 🗟 Logical Libraries manipulation | V          |        |
| 🗟 Rules manipulation             | V          |        |
| 🗟 Physical library diagnostic    | V          |        |
| 🗟 Logs/Error/Dumps manipulation  | V          |        |
| 🗟 Acknowledge notifications      | V          |        |
| 🖉 Ticket manipulation            |            | ?      |
|                                  |            |        |

| Field/Button     | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Logon Name       | ø    | Enter     | User logon name.  |
| Access Level     | ø    | Select    | User access level (refer to <u>Table 20</u> on page 144).   |
| Email Address    | ø    | Enter     | User's email when sending notifications.  |
| SMTP Server Name | ø    | Enter     | SMTP server name.   |
| SMTP Port Number | ø    | Enter     | SMTP port number.   |
| From Address     | ø    | Enter     | Email address appears in the email field from.  |
| Change password  | ø    | Check     | If the field is checked, the <i>password</i> and <i>confirm</i> fields become editable. Otherwise, user's password cannot be changed. |
| Password         | ×    | Supplied  | User's password must be entered here.   |
| Confirm          | ×    | Supplied  | User's password must be confirmed here.   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| User rights  | ø    | Check     | The list of user rights as described in <u>Table 21</u> on page 145 |
|              | 8    | Supplied  |   |
| Create       | -    | Click     | Create user.  |
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.  |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                              |

# **Clients Tab**

Clients connect to the Scalar DLC software through various interfaces. This release of Scalar DLC software supports application-based DAS, ROBAR, and SCSI clients. A host software application client connects through the DAS or ROBAR interface, or SCSI.

The selected client area of the pane indicates a list of clients. When a client is selected from the list, the client is highlighted.

Table below shows the icons that represent the Clients tab objects.

| Name             | lcon     | Description   |
|------------------|----------|---|
| Client interface | ð        | A client interface (DAS, SCSI, and ROBAR).              |
| Client (online)  | ø        | This icon indicates a client that is currently online.  |
| Client (offline) | <u>_</u> | This icon indicates a client that is currently offline. |

The three compatible client interfaces are:

- DAS. Refer to DAS on page 151.
- SCSI. Refer to <u>SCSI</u> on page 163.
- ROBAR. Refer to <u>ROBAR</u> on page 172.

Note DAS and SCSI clients are considered online when a client-sent command is being executed. ROBAR client is considered online when a TCP/IP connection with the client host is established.

# DAS

The DAS Interface needs no pre-configuration.

#### Figure 112 DAS Interface Pane

| 🚖 Scalar DLC   |          |
|--|----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help   |          |
| adic User admin connected to computer  |          |
| Library Configuration Events Service   |          |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target   |          |
| Select component   |          |
| P       ■       computer         P       Image: Clients         Image: P       Image: Clients         Image: P       Image: Clients         Image: P       Image: Clients         Image: P       Image: P         Image: P       Image: P </td <td>1 Sec. 1</td> | 1 Sec. 1 |
|  | 7        |
| • 13.04 move caloridge 000008  |          |
| 13:04 move cartridge 000008 finished<br>13:04 move cartridge 000008  |          |
| 13:04 move carridge 000006     13:04 move carridge 000006 finished   | 202      |
| 13:04 Diagnostic procedure terminated.   |          |

| Button            | lcon     | Operation | Description   |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|---|
| Add new<br>Client | Ъ        | Click     | Pop-up client creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create DAS</u><br><u>Client</u> on page 160.     |
| Enable            | <u>(</u> | Click     | Enable DAS Interface.   |
| Disable           | ų        | Click     | Disable DAS interface. All requests send by DAS Clients will receive 'interface is disabled' error. |
| Help              | ?        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

## **DAS** Client

There are four sets of properties associated with the DAS Client:

- Properties. The basic client properties, statistics, and operational settings. Refer to <u>Properties</u> on page 152.
- Drives. The list of drives that are reserved for the clients and that are defined for the selected client. Refer to <u>Drives</u> on page 155.

- Volsers. The list of volsers (cartridges) that are reserved and that are defined for the selected client. Refer to <u>Volsers</u> on page 157.
- Aliasing. The media and drive aliasing properties for the selected client. Refer to <u>Aliasing</u> on page 159.

## **Properties**

### Figure 113 DAS Client Properties

| 👙 Scalar DLC                                  |                                     |              |   |  |  |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------------|---|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help      |                                     |              |   |  |  |
| adic User admin connect                       | ed to ABROWN                        |              |   |  |  |
| Library Configuration E                       | vents Service                       |              |   |  |  |
| Logical Physical User                         | s Clients SCSI Target               |              |   |  |  |
| Select component                              | Property                            | Value        |   |  |  |
| P 🗏 ABROWN                                    | / Name                              | Client1      |   |  |  |
| ዮ 🖓 DAS Clients                               | 🖉 Library                           | AIT (online) | 6 |  |  |
| - <sup>12</sup> Client1                       | 🖉 Client Host Name                  | localhost    |   |  |  |
| ROBAR Clients                                 | 🖉 Respond When Eject Area Full      | V            |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Dismount Before Mount             |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Supervisor                        |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Check I/E Area Names              |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Avoid Media Identifier Contention | <b>V</b>     |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Requires Drive Allocation         |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Priority                          | Medium       |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Sequence                          |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Wait insert before mount          |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Command pause                     |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Drive pause                       |              |   |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Use FireWall                      |              |   |  |  |
|   | Accept only FW connection           |              |   |  |  |
|   | TCP/IP Port                         | 4500         |   |  |  |
|   | Number of reserved Storage          | 0            |   |  |  |
|   | Number of reserved I/E Slots        | 0            | _ |  |  |
|   | Number of reserved Drives           | 0            |   |  |  |
| Properties Drives Volsers Aliasing            |                                     |              |   |  |  |
| 15:54 Inventory for library DLT (             | completed                           |              |   |  |  |
| 15:54 Initializing element statu              | s for library IBM3590               |              |   |  |  |
| 15:54 Inventory for Library IBM3590 completed |                                     |              |   |  |  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name         | ø    | Enter     | The client name. It must not duplicate an existing client name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| Library      | ø    | Select    | The client will operate with the selected logical library and its resources.                                |

Note Only administrator users can modify or remove clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the operation buttons are disabled.

| Field/Button                         | lcon | Operation    | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|------|--------------|---|
| Client Host Name                     | ø    | Enter        | The host name of the computer running the client software. It recommended that you use the following:   |
|                                      |      |              | <ul> <li>client host IP address</li> <li>client host DNS name, short</li> <li>client host DNS name, full</li> <li><i>localhost</i> for the client operating from local host<br/>(possible but not recommended because of security<br/>reasons)</li> </ul> |
|                                      |      |              | • <i>any</i> for the client operating from any host (possible but not recommended because of security reasons)  |
| Respond When Eject<br>Area Full      | ġ    | Check        | Scalar DLC software returns an error (Area Full) if the client tries to eject a cartridge into an eject area with no free slots.  |
| Dismount Before<br>Mount             | ġ    | Do not check | Scalar DLC software does not execute a dismount when a client tries to mount a cartridge into an occupied drive.  |
| Supervisor                           | Ø    | Do not check | A client without the supervisor rights is not authorized<br>to use drives and/or cartridges that are reserved by<br>another client.   |
| Check I/E Area<br>Names              | ø    | Do not check | The I/E (mailbox) area names that can be used by the client are not limited with the DAS naming standard.   |
| Avoid Media Identifier<br>Contention | ø    | Check        | Cartridge media identifiers are shown only as a result of executing a cartridge information operation.  |
| Requires Drive<br>Allocation         | ø    | Do not check | A client does not need to reserve the drive before executing a mount or dismount.   |
| Priority                             | ø    | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
|                                      |      |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|                                      |      |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
| Sequence                             | ø    | Do not check | A commands sent by client without sequence option<br>will be executed as they're ready. The system will not<br>wait until the previous client command is finished.  |
| Wait insert before mount             | ø    | Do not check | A client without wait insert option cannot wait until the ejected cartridge will be inserted for the mount could be executed.   |
| Command pause                        | ø    | Do not check | A client without command pause rights is not authorized to execute " <b>pausedas</b> " DAS command.   |
| Drive pause                          | ø    | Do not check | A client without drive pause rights is not authorized to execute " <b>pausedrive</b> " DAS command.   |

| Field/Button                    | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---------------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Use FireWall                    | ø    | Check     | If selected, activates the TCP/IP receiver for the client.  |
| Accept only FW connection       | ø    | Check     | If selected, the RPC connection is refused.   |
| TCP/IP Port                     | ø    | Enter     | The TCP/IP address of the library. You can edit only if the Accept only FW connection is checked. |
| Number of reserved storages     | Ð    | Supplied  | The total number of storage slots reserved by the client.   |
| Number of reserved<br>I/E slots | Ð    | Supplied  | The total number of mailbox (I/E) slots reserved by the client.                                   |
| Number of reserved drives       | ۵    | Supplied  | The total number of drives reserved by the client.  |
| Update                          | Þ    | Click     | Save client properties after edit.  |
| Remove                          | в,   | Click     | Remove the client.  |
| Help                            | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

**Note** If a firewall exists between the client host and the Scalar DLC, the DAS/ACI firewall PC should be specified under the client host name. Refer to *Scalar DLC Installation Guide*, *Installing DAS Client* section.

## Drives

The Drives pane shows the list of all drives in the library, defines what drives are defined to the current client, shows the drives reserved by the client, and allows the status to be changed.



| 🅵 Scalar DLC 📃 🗆 🔟 🗵                       |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|--|----------------------------|------------------|---------|----|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended                | d Service Help             |                  |         |    |  |  |
| adic User admin connecte                   | ed to computer             |                  |         |    |  |  |
| Library Configuration E                    | vente Renvice              |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
| Select component                           | Reserving                  |                  |         | 0  |  |  |
| စု- 🔜 computer                             | Drive                      | Media type       | Client  |    |  |  |
| P DAS Clients                              | SP3DR256                   | Sony SDX 310/500 | Client1 |    |  |  |
|  |                            | Sony SDX 310/500 |         | _  |  |  |
| • 10 SCSI Clients                          | B P3DR259  S0NySDX 310/500 |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         | 41 |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         | Ĵ. |  |  |
|  | Defining                   |                  |         | ÷  |  |  |
|  | Drive                      | Media type       | Client  |    |  |  |
|  | ➡ P3DR257                  | Sony SDX 310/500 | Client1 |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
| Properties Drives Volsers Aliasing         |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
| 16:06 admin connected to com               | nputer                     |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |
|  |                            |                  |         |    |  |  |

| Field/Button  | lcon | Operation |   | Description   |
|---------------|------|-----------|---|---|
| Reserving     |      | Supplied  | The drive rese  | rving list.   |
|               |      | Select    | Drive   | The drive name.   |
|               |      | Select    | Media Type  | The drive type. Refer to <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266.  |
|               |      | Select    | Client  | The drive owner, if any.  |
| Defining      |      | Supplied  | The drive defining list.  |   |
|               |      | Select    | Drive   | The drive name.   |
|               |      | Select    | Media Type  | The drive type. The drive type. Refer to <u>Drive</u><br><u>Types</u> on page 266.  |
|               |      | Select    | Client  | The drive owner.  |
| Unreserve All | ☞₯   | Click     | Unreserve all slots currently reserved for the client (storage, I/E, and drives). |   |
| Up            | Ĵ†   | Click     | Reserve the se<br>empty. Has the<br><b>drive UP</b> ". Ref                        | elected drive for the client, the drive should be<br>a same effect as the DAS command " <b>allocd</b><br>fer to DAS Administration Guide. |

| Field/Button | lcon       | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------------|-----------|---|
| Down         | Ĵ+         | Click     | Unreserve the selected drive for the client, the drive should be empty. Has the same effect as the DAS command " <b>allocd drive DOWN</b> ". Refer to <i>DAS Administration Guide</i> . |
| Force Up     | <b>J</b> t | Click     | Reserve the selected drive for the client. Has the same effect as the DAS command " <b>allocd drive FUP</b> ". Refer to <i>DAS Administration Guide</i> .                               |
| Force Down   | Ĵŧ         | Click     | Unreserve the selected drive for the client. Has the same effect as the DAS command " <b>allocd drive FDOWN</b> ". Refer to DAS Administration Guide.                                   |
| Define       | £          | Click     | Open pop-up Define Drives pane. See <u>Figure 115</u> on page 156.  |
| Help         | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Note The client may access only the reserved drives if there is **Requires Drive Allocation** property <u>checked</u> (refer to <u>Properties</u> on page 152); if this property is not checked, the client does not need reserving the drive(s).

Reserving drive(s) however guaranties that no <u>other</u> client will access the reserved drive, especially when the reservation is <u>exclusive</u> (refer to <u>Drive</u> on page 115).

### **Define Drives**

The drives defined by the client may represent only the drives that are currently installed and successfully recognized by the library.



The client with no drives defined (empty list) may access <u>all</u> drives in the logical library. The client with drives defined may access only the <u>defined</u> drives.



| Jndefined |                |    | Defined   |                |
|-----------|----------------|----|-----------|----------------|
| Name      | Media Type     |    | Name      | Media Type     |
| 🗃 P3DR256 | SonySDX310/500 |    | 🗐 P3DR257 | SonySDX310/500 |
| D P3DR259 | SonySUX310/500 | ** |           |                |
|           |                |    | × 1       |                |

With the arrow buttons define the required drive(s) for the current client. Press **OK** when finish. Press **Cancel** to exit without changing the drive defining settings.

## Volsers

The Volsers pane describes the volser ranges reservation and definition list for the DAS clients authorized to work with the library.



| 🌺 Stalar DLC 📃 🗖 🗙                       |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------------|---------|----------|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connect                  | ed to computer              |         |          |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Event              | s Service                   |         |          |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users                   | Clients SCSI Target         |         |          |  |  |  |
| Select component                         | Reserving                   |         | at       |  |  |  |
| 📍 🔜 computer                             | Range                       | Client  |          |  |  |  |
| P B DAS Clients                          | Tape04-Tape22               | Client1 | - 5      |  |  |  |
| or to SCSI Clients                       |                             |         | -st      |  |  |  |
| 🔑 ScsiClient1                            |                             |         | <u>+</u> |  |  |  |
| 💁 🕅 ROBAR Clients                        |                             |         | <b>6</b> |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  | Defining                    |         |          |  |  |  |
|  | Range                       | Client  |          |  |  |  |
|  | Tape00                      | Client1 | _        |  |  |  |
|  | Таре63-Таре68               | Client1 |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  | Properties Drives Volsers A | liasing | ~ 7      |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
| 0 16:09 admin connected to computer      |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |
|  |                             |         |          |  |  |  |

| Field/Button             | lcon     | Operation |   | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------|-----------|---|--|
| Reserving                |          | Supplied  | Reserving vols                            | er list.   |
|                          |          | Select    | Range                                     | The volser range. It can be either a single volser or a range separated by a hyphen. |
|                          |          | Select    | Client                                    | An owner of the volser range.  |
| Defining                 |          | Supplied  | Defining volser list.                     |  |
|                          |          | Select    | Range                                     | The volser range. It can be either a single volser or a range separated by a hyphen. |
|                          |          | Select    | Client                                    | An owner of the volser range.  |
| Add Reserved Range       | Ť        | Click     | Pop-up volser r<br><u>Figure 117</u> on p | ange reservation window appears. See<br>bage 158.                                    |
| Remove Reserved<br>Range | <b>₫</b> | Click     | Remove the se reserved volse              | elected volser range from the list of rs.  |

| Field/Button            | lcon     | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------------|----------|-----------|--|
| Add Defined Range       | ð        | Click     | Pop-up volser range definition window appears. See Figure 117 on page 158. |
| Remove Defined<br>Range | <b>f</b> | Click     | Remove the selected volser range from the list of defined volsers          |
| Help                    | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                     |

## **Reserve or Define Volsers**

The volsers reserved or defined for the client may represent the cartridges that are currently not in the library. However, if the cartridge appears in the library, it is marked automatically as 'allocated'/reserved, or 'defined', and can be accessed and managed only by its owner. The ownership can be changed either by the client himself or by the Scalar DLC Management GUI administrator.

😻 Note

The client may access all cartridges in the logical library and does not need to reserve volsers before using media.

Reserving volser(s) however guaranties that no <u>other</u> client will access the reserved media, especially when the reservation is <u>exclusive</u> (refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103).



| 🌺 Add new Volsers Range 🛛 🗙 |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Elements Range:             |  |  |
|                             |  |  |
| ✓ ×                         |  |  |

Enter the start and end volser in the range. Press **OK** to reserve/define them for the current client. Press **Cancel** to exit without adding volsers to the range of reserved or defined volsers.

Note The client cannot reserve or define only half of an optical disk. Only the whole disk can be reserved/defined. Even if the volser reservation or definition table contains only one volser for the one side, the other is also reserved/defined for the client. This is shown under Cartridge properties (refer to <u>Cartridge</u> on page 103).



The client with no volsers defined (empty list) may access <u>all</u> cartridges in the logical library. The client whose volser defining list is not empty may access only the <u>defined</u> cartridges.

## Aliasing

The DAS Client Aliasing feature is required for certain DAS interface-based applications that use the media type and element type that differs from default Scalar-based types.

Note DAS Client aliasing takes effect only on the data output in DAS interface, and only on the client that has executed this aliasing.

| 🌺 Scalar DLC 📃 🗆   |                       |                         |                  | - 🗆 × |          |
|--|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------|-------|----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help   |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| adic User admin connected to computer  |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| Library Configuration Events   | Service               |                         |                  |       |          |
| Logical Physical Users (   | Clients SCSI Target   |                         |                  |       |          |
| Select component   | Element type aliasing |                         |                  |       |          |
| 🕈 🖳 computer   | Drive                 | Default                 | Alias            |       |          |
| P DAS Clients  | IBM 3590              | IBM Magstar (3590)      | IBM Magstar (3 💌 |       |          |
| ve Client2<br>10 Client3   | NCTP                  | Philips LMS (3490)      | Philips LMS (3 💌 |       |          |
| v Client1  | Philips 3610/ADIC 8   | Philips LMS (3490)      | Philips LMS (3 💌 |       |          |
| 💁 👘 SCSI Clients   | Quantum DLT 4000      | DLT drive (low profile) | DLT drive (low 💌 | ]_    |          |
| 🖭 📴 🕅 ROBAR Clients  |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
|  | Media type aliasing   |                         |                  |       |          |
|  | Media                 | Default                 | Alias            |       |          |
|  | 3480                  | 3480                    | 3480 💌           |       |          |
|  | 3490E                 | 3480                    | 3480 💌           |       |          |
|  | 3590                  | 3590                    | 3590 💌           |       |          |
|  | 3590E                 | 3590                    | 3590 💌           |       |          |
|  |                       |                         | -                |       | <b>1</b> |
| Properties Drives Volsers Aliasing   |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| A 40-00 solutio seguna de das segunados  |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| 13:32 Admin Connected to Computer     13:32 Please wait Scapping                   |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| 13:40 Scanning finished successfully   |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
| 13:41 Scalar DLC configuration was successfully created for ADIC Scalar 10K #11111 |                       |                         |                  |       |          |
|  |                       |                         |                  |       |          |

## Figure 118 DAS Client Aliasing

| Field/Button Icon     | Operation | Description   |
|-----------------------|-----------|---|
| Element type aliasing | Supplied  | Assign the alias to the drive accessible by the client.   |
| Drive                 | Supplied  | The drive type in the library accessible by the client.   |
| Default               | Supplied  | The drive type as in the Scalar DLC-DAS specification. Refer<br>to <u>Drive Types</u> on page 266 and also to the <i>DAS</i><br><i>Administration Guide</i> .<br>Old models of drives are seldom used in modern tape libraries,<br>but still supported by some backup applications. |
| Alias                 | Select    | The same drive type that is in the client specification.  |
| Media type aliasing   | Supplied  | Assigns the alias to the media accessible by the client.  |
| Media                 | Supplied  | The media type in the library accessible by the client.   |
| Default               | Supplied  | The same media type that is in the Scalar DLC-DAS specification. Refer to Media Types on page 263.  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                                    |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Alias        |      | Select    | The media type as in the client specification. |
| Update       | 1    | Click     | Save client properties after edit.             |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.         |

## **Create DAS Client**

Under the DAS Interface properties, the **Add new Client** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up client creation pane.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can create additional clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Client** button is disabled.

It is recommended that the default name be accepted, but it is not required. Be sure that the name specified manually does not duplicate an existing client name.

Figure 119 DAS Client Creation

| Property                      | Value        | 1 |
|-------------------------------|--------------|---|
| 🖋 Name                        | Client2      |   |
| 🖋 Library                     | AIT (online) | × |
| 🖋 Client Host Name            | localhost    |   |
| 🖋 Respond When Eject Area     | . 💌          |   |
| 🖋 Dismount Before Mount       |              |   |
| 🖋 Supervisor                  |              |   |
| 🖋 Check I/E Area Names        |              |   |
| 🖋 Avoid Media Identifier Cont | V            |   |
| 🖉 Requires Drive Allocation 👘 |              |   |
| 🖉 Priority                    | Medium       |   |
| 🖋 Sequence                    |              |   |
| 🖋 Wait insert before mount    |              |   |
| 🖋 Command pause               |              |   |
| 🖋 Drive pause                 |              |   |
| 🖋 Use FireWall                | ~            |   |
| Accept only FW connection     |              |   |
| / TCP/IP Port                 | 4500         |   |
|                               |              |   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name         | ø    | Enter     | The client name. It must not duplicate an existing client name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| Library      | ø    | Select    | The client will operate with the selected logical library<br>and its resources.                             |

| Field/Button                         | lcon | Operation    | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|------|--------------|---|
| Client Host Name                     | ø    | Enter        | The host name of the computer running the client software. It recommended that you use the following:   |
|                                      |      |              | <ul> <li>client host IP address</li> <li>client host DNS name, short</li> <li>client host DNS name, full</li> <li><i>localhost</i> for the client operating from local host<br/>(possible but not recommended because of security<br/>reasons)</li> </ul> |
|                                      |      |              | • <i>any</i> for the client operating from any host (possible but not recommended because of security reasons)  |
| Respond When Eject<br>Area Full      | ġ    | Check        | Scalar DLC software returns an error (Area Full) if the client tries to eject a cartridge into an eject area with no free slots.  |
| Dismount Before<br>Mount             | ġ    | Do not check | Scalar DLC software does not execute a dismount when a client tries to mount a cartridge into an occupied drive.  |
| Supervisor                           | ø    | Do not check | A client without the supervisor rights is not authorized<br>to use drives and/or cartridges that are reserved by<br>another client.   |
| Check I/E Area<br>Names              | ø    | Do not check | The I/E (mailbox) area names that can be used by the client are not limited with the DAS naming standard.   |
| Avoid Media Identifier<br>Contention | ø    | Check        | Cartridge media identifiers are shown only as a result of executing a cartridge information operation.  |
| Requires Drive<br>Allocation         | ø    | Do not check | A client does not need to reserve the drive before executing a mount or dismount.   |
| Priority                             | ø    | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
|                                      |      |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|                                      |      |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
| Sequence                             | ø    | Do not check | A commands sent by client without sequence option<br>will be executed as they're ready. The system will not<br>wait until the previous client command is finished.  |
| Wait insert before mount             | ø    | Do not check | A client without wait insert option cannot wait until the ejected cartridge will be inserted for the mount could be executed.   |
| Command pause                        | ø    | Do not check | A client without command pause rights is not authorized to execute " <b>pausedas</b> " DAS command.   |
| Drive pause                          | ø    | Do not check | A client without drive pause rights is not authorized to execute " <b>pausedrive</b> " DAS command.   |

| Field/Button              | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Use FireWall              | ø    | Check     | If selected, activates the TCP/IP receiver for the client. |
| Accept only FW connection | ø    | Check     | If selected, the RPC connection is refused.                |
| TCP/IP Port               | ø    |           |  |
| Create                    | 1    | Click     | Create client.   |
| Cancel                    | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.   |
| Help                      | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                     |

Whote If a firewall exists between the client host and the Scalar DLC, under the client host name, specify the DAS/ACI firewall PC name. Refer to Scalar DLC Installation Guide, Installing DAS Client section.

Whote The new DAS Client is functional immediately after creation. No Scalar DLC service restart is required.
## SCSI

All the operations with the SCSI Clients are enabled only after the configuration of SCSI Target software. That can be done via the SCSI Target tab. Refer to <u>SCSI Target Tab</u> on page 178.





| Button            | lcon     | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|--|
| Add new<br>Client | Ъ        | Click     | Pop-up client creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create SCSI</u><br><u>Client</u> on page 171.   |
| Enable            | <u>(</u> | Click     | Enable SCSI Interface.   |
| Disable           | <u>©</u> | Click     | Disable SCSI interface.<br>The following commands are serviced in the regular way then:  |
|                   |          |           | <ul> <li>Inquiry for the Standard Inquiry Data page</li> <li>Request Sense</li> <li>Report LUNs (SCSI-3 mode)</li> <li>All other commands and the Inquiry command for other pages are rejected with the CHECK CONDITION SCSI status, and 02/04/00 "Not ready due to unknown cause" SCSI sense data.</li> </ul> |
| Help              | 7        | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

# **SCSI** Client

There are five sets of properties associated with the SCSI Client.

- Properties. Main client properties. Refer to Properties on page 164.
- Mode. SCSI mode parameters. Refer to Mode on page 166.
- Drives. The library drives as they are seen from the client side. Refer to Drives on page 168.
- I/E slots. The library I/E slots as they are seen from the client side. Refer to I/E Slots on page 169.
- Storages. The library storages as they are seen from the client side. Refer to <u>Storages</u> on page 170.

Note Only administrator users can modify or remove clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the operation buttons are disabled.

## **Properties**

#### Figure 121 SCSI Client Properties

| 😹 Scalar DLC                              |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connecte                  | d to computer                  |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration E                   | vents Service                  |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical User                     | s Clients SCSI Target          |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| Select component                          | Property                       | Value                         | • |  |  |  |  |
| စု- 🔜 computer                            | 🖉 Name                         | ScsiClient3                   |   |  |  |  |  |
| • 🍘 DAS Clients                           | 🖉 Library                      | Library1 (online)             |   |  |  |  |  |
| φ- top SCSi Clients<br>→ top ScSi Client1 | 🖻 Port                         | ADIC Local SCSI Target Port 0 | 6 |  |  |  |  |
| - 🔁 ScsiClient2                           | 🗟 Target                       | Target65                      |   |  |  |  |  |
| – 📜 ScsiClient3                           | 🗟 LUN                          | LUN1                          |   |  |  |  |  |
| ScsiClient4                               | 🖉 Priority                     | Medium                        |   |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🖉 Sequence                     | 🗆 No                          |   |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🗟 Number of reserved Storage   | 0                             |   |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🗟 Number of reserved I/E Slots | 0                             |   |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🗟 Number of reserved Drives    | 0                             |   |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|   | Properties Mode Drives         | IEslots Storage               | 7 |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| 18:32 admin connected to com              | puter                          |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| 18:33 Initializing element status         | s for library Library1         |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
| 18:33 Inventory for library Librar        | y1 completed.                  |                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                |                               |   |  |  |  |  |



| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name         | ø    | Enter     | The client name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| Library      | ø    | Select    | The client operates with the selected logical library.       |

| Field/Button                    | lcon       | Operation    | Description   |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------|---|
| Port                            | ۲          | Supplied     | The client is connected to the SCSI bus via the selected port.  |
| Target                          | 8          | Supplied     | The client is assigned to the selected target.  |
| LUN                             | ۵          | Supplied     | The client is assigned to the selected LUN on the target.   |
| Priority                        | ø          | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
|                                 |            |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|                                 |            |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
| Sequence                        | ø          | Do not check | A commands sent by client without sequence option<br>will be executed as they are ready. The system will not<br>wait until the previous client command is finished. |
| Number of reserved storages     | ۵          | Supplied     | The number of storage slots reserved by the client.   |
| Number of reserved<br>I/E slots | Ð          | Supplied     | The number of mailbox (I/E) slots reserved by the client.   |
| Number of reserved drives       | ۲          | Supplied     | The number of drives reserved by the client.  |
| Unreserve All                   | <b>6-0</b> | Click        | De-allocates all slots currently reserved by the client (storage, I/E, and drives).   |
| Update                          | Þ          | Click        | Save client properties after edit.  |
| Remove                          | 6          | Click        | Remove the client.  |
| Help                            | 7          | Click        | Open online help for the current pane.  |



The SCSI Client connection parameters (port-target-LUN) cannot be modified. It is only possible to remove the client, or change its name and the assigned library.

Note Because of interface properties, only one SCSI Client can be assigned to the single LUN of the specified SCSI Target.



After the client is assigned to the LUN 0 of any target, all other clients assigned to the non-zero LUNs of this target are activated.

## Mode

|  | 🛓 Scalar DLC |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help                                     |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| adjc User admin connected to computer  | Ī            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service   |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSITarget                                    |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Select component Property Value  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🛛 🗣 🗏 computer 🖉 🖉 Parity checking enabled                                   | -            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🛛 🕈 🕅 DAS Clients 👘 🖉 Maximum parity retries 1                               |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Client1 Storage address 4096   | 1            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ScsiClient1 / Drive address 256  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 👁 🟟 ROBAR Clients 🥒 Accessor address 1                                       |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🖉 Mixed media enabled 🗌  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| A Extend RES   |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🖉 Vendor ASCQ  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🖉 Volser extension enabled   |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🗶 Post-fix media ID  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| P Extended media ID  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🖉 Auto cleaning enabled 🗌 📃 🔽  |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Properties Mode Drives IEslots Storage                                       |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| • 13.04 move camoye 000006   |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13:04 move cartridge 000008 finished   | -            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13:04 move cartridge 000006     13:04 move cartridge 000006 finished         |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13.04 move cannage boodbb finished     13:04 Diagnostic procedure terminated | -99<br>      |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The SCSI Client Mode pane indicates the SCSI mode parameters.

😻 Note

The details about SCSI Client Mode Parameters can be found in the *Scalar 10K Operator Guide* and the *Scalar 1000 Operator Guide (Mode Sense (1Ah) Response).* 

| Field/Button               | lcon | Operation    | Description  |
|----------------------------|------|--------------|--|
| Parity checking<br>enabled | ø    | Do not check | Whether the parity checking enabled  |
| Maximum parity retries     | ø    | Enter        | The maximum number of times to retry the message out, command out, or data out phase after a parity error. |
| Storage address            | ø    | Enter        | First storage address (0=default).   |
| Import/export<br>address   | ø    | Enter        | First mailbox address (0=default).   |
| Drive address              | ø    | Enter        | First drive address (0=default).   |
| Accessor address           | ø    | Enter        | Accessor address (0=default).  |
| Mixed media enabled        | ø    | Do not check | Manage whether the library operates in <b>mixed media</b> mode or not.                                     |

| Field/Button                | lcon | Operation    | Description  |
|-----------------------------|------|--------------|--|
| Extended res                | ø    | Do not check | Manage whether the <b>Read Element Status</b> and <b>Request Volume Element Address</b> commands return extended element status information. |
| Vendor Ascq                 | ø    | Do not check | The <b>ASC/ASCQ</b> returned if a <b>Move Media</b> command is issued to an incompatible location.   |
| Volser extension<br>enabled | ø    | Do not check | The Volser extension identification for <b>Read Element</b><br><b>Status</b> and <b>Request Volume Element Address</b><br>commands.          |
| Post-fix media ID           | ×    | Supplied     | The media ID pre-pend or post-pend. Selectable for the enabled <i>Volser Extension</i> .   |
| Auto cleaning<br>enabled    | ø    | Do not check | Whether the auto-cleaning is enabled.  |
| Delayed cleaning<br>enabled | ø    | Do not check | Whether the delayed cleaning is enabled.   |
| Cleaning hour               | ø    | Enter        | Cleaning schedule, hour.   |
| Cleaning minute             | ø    | Enter        | Cleaning schedule, minute.   |
| Auto teach enabled          | ø    | Do not check | Whether the auto-teach is enabled.   |
| Auto inventory enabled      | ø    | Do not check | Whether the auto-inventory is enabled.   |
| Operation mode              | ø    | Enter        | Operation mode parameter.  |
| LCD security valid          | ø    | Do not check | Whether the LCD security is valid.   |
| LCD security enabled        | ø    | Do not check | Whether the LCD security is enabled.   |
| LCD write line1             | ø    | Do not check | LCD write line1.   |
| LCD write line2             | ø    | Do not check | LCD write line2  |
| LCD write line3             | ø    | Do not check | LCD write line3  |
| LCD write line4             | ø    | Do not check | LCD write line4  |
| LCD display line1           | ø    | Enter        | LCD display line1  |
| LCD display line2           | ø    | Enter        | LCD display line2  |
| LCD display line3           | ø    | Enter        | LCD display line3  |
| Update                      | Ø    | Click        | Save client properties after edit.   |
| Help                        | 7    | Click        | Open online help for the current pane.   |

## Drives

Figure 123 SCSI Client Drives

| 📥 Scalar DLC   |                                      |             |          |        | _      |   |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------|----------|--------|--------|---|
| Connection Wizards Extended  | Service Hel                          | р           |          |        |        |   |
| adic User admin connected  | l to computer                        |             |          |        |        |   |
| Library Configuration Eve  | Library Configuration Events Service |             |          |        |        |   |
| Logical Physical Users   | Clients                              | SCSI Target | _        |        |        |   |
| Select component   | Target                               | Element     | Physical | Robot1 | Robot2 |   |
| 🗣 🔜 computer   | 256                                  | 🖾 P3DR256   | 256      | 256    | -1     |   |
| 🕒 📴 🖓 DAS Clients  | 257                                  | 🖾 P3DR257   | 257      | 257    | -1     |   |
| 💿 🖗 SCSI Clients   | 258                                  | 🖾 P3DR259   | 259      | 259    | -1     |   |
| P @ SCSI Clients       258       P3DR259       259       -1         P @ ROBAR Clients       Properties       Mode       Drives       IEslots       Storage       ? |                                      |             |          |        |        | ? |
| 19:01 admin connected to comp  | uter                                 |             |          |        |        |   |
| 19:01 admin connected to computer  |                                      |             |          |        |        |   |

The SCSI Client Drives pane indicates the Drives coordinates as the SCSI client will see them.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Target       |      | Supplied  | The element coordinate as seen to the client.                                     |
| Element      |      | Supplied  | The element, as shown in the Management GUI.                                      |
| Physical     |      | Supplied  | The element physical coordinate.  |
| Robot1       |      | Supplied  | The Robot1 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot1. |
| Robot2       |      | Supplied  | The Robot2 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot2. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Refer also to Drive on page 115.

## I/E Slots

Figure 124 SCSI Client I/E Slots

| 🚔 Scalar DLC                   |               |             |            |         | _      |   |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------|------------|---------|--------|---|
| Connection Wizards Extended    | d Service Hel | p           |            |         |        |   |
| adic User admin connecte       | d to computer |             |            |         |        |   |
| Library Configuration Ex       | vents Servi   | ce          |            |         |        |   |
| Logical Physical User          | s Clients     | SCSI Target |            |         |        |   |
| Select component               | Target        | Element     | Physical   | Robot1  | Robot2 |   |
| 🗣 🔜 computer                   | 16            | 🖙 P2_IE16   | 16         | 16      | -1     |   |
| 💿 🏟 DAS Clients                | 17            | 🖙 P2_IE17   | 17         | 17      | -1     |   |
| 🌳 🏟 SCSI Clients               | 18            | 🖙 P2_IE18   | 18         | 18      | -1     |   |
| 🚽 💭 ScsiClient1                | 19            | ⊏⊐ P2_IE19  | 19         | 19      | -1     |   |
| 💁 👘 ROBAR Clients              | 20            | ➡ P2_IE20   | 20         | 20      | -1     |   |
|                                | 21            | □ □ P2_IE21 | 21         | 21      | -1     |   |
|                                | 22            | □ □ P2_IE22 | 22         | 22      | -1     |   |
|                                | 23            | ➡ P2_IE23   | 23         | 23      | -1     |   |
|                                | 24            | ⊏⊐ P2_IE24  | 24         | 24      | -1     |   |
|                                | 25            | □ □ P2_IE25 | 25         | 25      | -1     |   |
|                                | 26            | □ □ P2_IE26 | 26         | 26      | -1     |   |
|                                | 27            | □ □ P2_IE27 | 27         | 27      | -1     |   |
|                                | 28            | P2_IE28     | 28         | 28      | -1     |   |
|                                | 29            | ⊏⊐ P2_IE29  | 29         | 29      | -1     |   |
|                                |               |             |            |         |        |   |
|                                | Properties    | Mode Driv   | /es Eslots | Storage |        | 3 |
| -                              |               |             |            |         |        |   |
| 🙂 19:01 admin connected to com | puter         |             |            |         |        |   |
|                                |               |             |            |         |        |   |
|                                |               |             |            |         |        |   |
|                                |               |             |            |         |        |   |
| 1                              |               |             |            |         |        |   |

The SCSI Client I/E slots pane indicates the I/E slots coordinates as the SCSI client will see them.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Target       |      | Supplied  | The element coordinate as seen to the client.                                     |
| Element      |      | Supplied  | The element, as shown in the Management GUI.                                      |
| Physical     |      | Supplied  | The element physical coordinate.  |
| Robot1       |      | Supplied  | The Robot1 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot1. |
| Robot2       |      | Supplied  | The Robot2 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot2. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Refer also to Mailbox Slot on page 113.

## Storages

| Figure 125 SCSI Client Storage |
|--------------------------------|
|--------------------------------|

| \pm Scalar DLC                 |               |             |          |         |        | <u> </u> |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------|----------|---------|--------|----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended    | d Service He  | lp          |          |         |        |          |
|                                | d to computer |             |          |         |        |          |
|                                | a to compater |             |          |         |        |          |
| Library Configuration E        | vents Servi   | ce          |          |         |        |          |
| Logical Physical User          | s Clients     | SCSI Target | -        |         |        |          |
| Select component               | Target        | Element     | Physical | Robot1  | Robot2 |          |
| 🗣 💻 computer                   | 4096          | 📼 P1_ST4 40 | 096      | 4096    | -1     |          |
| 🗢 🖓 DAS Clients                | 4097          | 📼 P1_ST4 40 | 097      | 4097    | -1     | 222      |
| © m <sup>®</sup> SCSI Clients  | 4098          | 📼 P1_ST4 40 | 098      | 4098    | -1     |          |
| - 🕒 ScsiClient1                | 4099          | 📼 P1_ST4 40 | 099      | 4099    | -1     |          |
| ☉ 🖓 ROBAR Clients              | 4100          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 100      | 4100    | -1     |          |
| ~                              | 4101          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 101      | 4101    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4102          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 102      | 4102    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4103          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 103      | 4103    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4104          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 104      | 4104    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4105          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 105      | 4105    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4106          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 106      | 4106    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4107          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 107      | 4107    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4108          | 📼 P1_ST4 41 | 108      | 4108    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4109          | - P1_ST4 41 | 109      | 4109    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4110          | - P1_ST4 41 | 110      | 4110    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4111          | - P1_ST4 41 | 111      | 4111    | -1     |          |
|                                | 4110          | - D1 OTA A1 | 112      | 4110    | 1      |          |
|                                | Properties    | Mode Drive: | s Eslots | Storage |        | 3        |
|                                | 1             |             |          |         |        |          |
| 📵 19:01 admin connected to com | puter         |             |          |         |        |          |
|                                |               |             |          |         |        |          |
|                                |               |             |          |         |        |          |
|                                |               |             |          |         |        |          |
|                                |               |             |          |         |        |          |

The SCSI Client Storages pane indicates the storage slots coordinates as the SCSI client will see them.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Target       |      | Supplied  | The element coordinate as seen to the client.                                     |
| Element      |      | Supplied  | The element, as shown in the Management GUI.                                      |
| Physical     |      | Supplied  | The element physical coordinate.  |
| Robot1       |      | Supplied  | The Robot1 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot1. |
| Robot2       |      | Supplied  | The Robot2 element coordinate.<br>-1 means the element does not belong to Robot2. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Refer also to <u>Storage Slot</u> on page 112.

# **Create SCSI Client**

Under the SCSI properties, the Add new Client button appears. Click it to open pop-up client creation pane.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can create clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Client** button is disabled.

× Value Property 🥖 Name ScsiClient5 × 🖉 Library Library1 (online) 🥖 Port ADIC Local SCSI Target Po. 🖉 Target Target65 • 🥖 LUN LUNO 🥖 Priority Medium 🗌 No 🖋 Sequence 3 Properties Mode

| Figure 126 | SCSI Client Creation Properties |
|------------|---------------------------------|
|            | 🌺 Add new SCSI Client           |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation    | Description  |
|--------------|------|--------------|--|
| Name         | ø    | Enter        | The client name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.   |
| Library      | ø    | Select       | The client operates with the selected logical library.   |
| Port         | ø    | Select       | The client is connected to the SCSI bus via the selected port.   |
| Target       | ø    | Select       | The client is assigned to the selected target.   |
| LUN          | ø    | Select       | The client is assigned to the selected LUN.  |
| Priority     | ø    | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|              |      |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
|              |      |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
| Sequence     | ø    | Do not check | A commands sent by client without sequence option will be<br>executed as they're ready. The system will not wait until the<br>previous client command is finished. |
| Create       | 1    | Click        | Create client.   |
| Cancel       | ×    | Click        | Cancel creation.   |
| Help         | 7    | Click        | Open online help for the current pane.   |

- Whote The new SCSI Client is functional immediately after creation. No Scalar DLC service restart is required.
- Whote Because of interface properties, only one SCSI Client can be assigned to the single LUN.

After the client is assigned to the LUN 0 of any target, all other clients assigned to the non-zero LUNs of this target are activated.

## ROBAR

Figure 127 ROBAR Interface Pane



| Field/Button      | lcon       | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------|------------|-----------|--|
| Port              | ø          | Enter     | The port to establish the ROBAR client TCP/IP connection(s). Note that the default value of ${\bf 0}$ is <u>not</u> valid. |
| Update            | Þ          | Click     | Save port properties after edit.   |
| Add new<br>Client | <b>ı₀⁺</b> | Click     | Pop-up client creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create</u><br><u>ROBAR Client</u> on page 176.                          |

| Field/Button | lcon       | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------------|-----------|---|
| Enable       | <u>(b)</u> | Click     | Enable ROBAR Interface.   |
| Disable      | <u> </u>   | Click     | Disable ROBAR interface. All requests send by ROBAR<br>Clients will receive 'interface disabled' error.<br>Because of ROBAR interface properties, this is the same error<br>as "invalid client", "server stopped", etc.). |
| Help         | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

AUTION

The ROBAR interface must be valid before the ROBAR client can be created either manually or by the configuration wizard (refer to <u>Create Configuration</u> on page 34).

Whote Changing the port number applies to all ROBAR clients. The Scalar DLC service restart is required.

# **ROBAR Client**

| Figure 128 | <b>ROBAR</b> Clie | ent Properties |
|------------|-------------------|----------------|
|            |                   |                |

| <b>≜ Scalar DLC</b>          |                                   |                |   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|---|
| adic User admin connec       | ed to ABROW                       |                |   |
| Library Configuration E      | vents Service                     |                |   |
| Logical Physical User        | s Clients SCSI Target             |                |   |
| Select component             | Properties                        |                |   |
| 👇 🖳 ABROW                    | Property                          | Value          |   |
| ዮ- 🝘 DAS Clients             | 🖉 Name                            | A1ClientH1     |   |
| - 💭 Client1                  | 🖉 Library                         | DLT (online)   |   |
| - 🖓 DLTClient                | 🖉 Client Hostname                 | localhost      | 6 |
| 🖵 📴 LTOClient                | 🖉 Host alias                      | H1             |   |
| 👇 👘 ROBAR Clients            | 🖉 Numeric system                  | Decimal system |   |
| – 🐙 A1ClientH1               | 🖉 Clean pool prefix               | P              |   |
|                              | 🖉 Dismount after clean            |                |   |
|                              | A Host is allowed to set the time |                |   |
|                              | 🖉 Notification sender name        | A1             |   |
|                              | 🖉 Priority                        | Medium         |   |
|                              | 🖉 Sequence                        |                |   |
|                              | 🖉 HCC Major                       |                |   |
|                              | 🖉 Translate HCC Coordinates       |                |   |
|                              | 🗟 Number of reserved Storages     | 0              |   |
|                              | 🗟 Number of reserved I/E Slots    | 0              |   |
|                              | 🗟 Number of reserved Drives       | 0              | 2 |
|                              |                                   |                |   |
| 12:09 admin connected to ABE | 201W                              |                |   |
| 12:37                        |                                   |                |   |
|                              |                                   |                |   |

😻 Note

Only administrator users can modify or remove clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the operation buttons are disabled.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Name         | ø    | Enter     | Client name. It must not duplicate an existing client<br>name.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16. |
| Library      | ø    | Select    | The client works with the selected logical library.  |

| Field/Button                    | lcon | Operation    | Description   |
|---------------------------------|------|--------------|---|
| Client Host Name                | ø    | Enter        | The host name of the computer running the client software. It recommended that you use the following:   |
|                                 |      |              | <ul> <li>client host IP address</li> <li>client host DNS name, short</li> <li>client host DNS name, full</li> </ul>   |
|                                 |      |              | <ul> <li>localhost for the client operating from local host<br/>(possible but not recommended because of security<br/>reasons)</li> </ul>                         |
|                                 |      |              | <ul> <li>any for the client operating from any host (possible<br/>but not recommended because of security reasons)</li> </ul>                                     |
| Host alias                      | ø    | Enter        | Host alias (ROBAR format).  |
| Numeric system                  | ø    | Select       | Numeric system format (decimal/hexadecimal).  |
| Clean pool prefix               | ø    | Enter        | Clean pool prefix used by ROBAR client.   |
| Dismount after clean            | ø    | Check        | Indicates whether the cleaning cartridge should be dismounted after the cleaning ends.  |
| Host is allowed to set the time | ø    | Do not check | A client host should not be allowed to set the time.  |
| Notification sender name        | ø    | Enter        | Notification sender (ROBAR format).   |
| Priority                        | ø    | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
|                                 |      |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|                                 |      |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.   |
| Sequence                        | ø    | Do not check | Commands sent by client without sequence option will<br>be executed as they are ready. The system will not<br>wait until the previous client command is finished. |
| HCC Major                       | ø    | Do not check | Commands send by client without major host parameter cannot be addressed/replied via the HCC/ MVS application.  |
| Translate HCC<br>Coordinates    | ø    | Check        | Translate (re-map) LSCI coordinates to the HCC form.<br>For more information, refer to <u>Translating HCC</u><br><u>Coordinates for ROBAR HACC</u> on page 261.   |
| Number of reserved storages     | ۲    | Supplied     | The number of storage slots assigned to the client.   |
| Number of reserved<br>I/E slots | ₿    | Supplied     | The number of mailbox (I/E) slots assigned to the client.   |
| Number of reserved drives       | 8    | Supplied     | The number of drives assigned to the client.  |

| Field/Button  | lcon       | Operation | Description   |
|---------------|------------|-----------|---|
| Unreserve All | <b>6-0</b> | Click     | De-allocates all slots currently allocated for the client (storage, I/E, and drives). |
| Update        |            | Click     | Save client properties after edit.  |
| Remove        | 6          | Click     | Remove the client.  |
| Help          | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

# Create ROBAR Client

Under the ROBAR Interface properties, the **Add new Client** button appears. Clicking it opens a pop-up client creation pane.



Only the administrator users can create the clients. For the user without administrative privileges, the create client button is disabled.

It is recommended that the default name be accepted, but it is not required. Be sure that the name specified manually does not duplicate an existing client name.

Figure 129 ROBAR Client Creation

| ≜ Add new ROBAR Client      |                | ×         |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| Properties                  |                |           |
| Property                    | Value          |           |
| 🖉 Name                      | A1ClientH2     | V         |
| 🖉 Library                   | AIT (online)   | $\square$ |
| 🖉 Client Hostname           | localhost      |           |
| 🖉 Host alias                | H2             |           |
| 🖉 Numeric system            | Decimal system |           |
| 🖉 Clean pool prefix         | Р              |           |
| 🖉 Dismount after clean      |                |           |
| 🖋 Host is allowed to set th |                |           |
| 🖋 Notification sender name  | A1             |           |
| 🖉 Priority                  | Medium         |           |
| 🖉 Sequence                  |                |           |
| 🖋 HCC Major                 |                |           |
| 🖋 Translate HCC Coordin     |                |           |
|                             |                | ?         |

Whote The new ROBAR Client is functional immediately after creation. No Scalar DLC service restart is required.

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Name         | ø    | Enter     | The client name. It must not duplicate an existing client name. |
|              |      |           | Also refer to <u>Table 6</u> on page 16.                        |

| Field/Button                    | lcon | Operation    | Description  |
|---------------------------------|------|--------------|--|
| Library                         | ø    | Select       | The client works with the selected logical library.  |
| Client Host Name                | ø    | Enter        | The host name of the computer running the client software. It recommended that you use the following:  |
|                                 |      |              | <ul><li>client host IP address</li><li>client host DNS name, short</li></ul>   |
|                                 |      |              | client host DNS name, full   |
|                                 |      |              | <ul> <li><i>localhost</i> for the client operating from local host<br/>(possible but not recommended because of security<br/>reasons)</li> </ul>                 |
|                                 |      |              | <ul> <li>any for the client operating from any host (possible<br/>but not recommended because of security reasons)</li> </ul>                                    |
| Host alias                      | ø    | Enter        | Host alias (ROBAR format).   |
| Numeric system                  | ø    | Select       | Numeric system format (decimal/hexadecimal).   |
| Clean pool prefix               | ø    | Enter        | Clean pool prefix used by ROBAR client.  |
| Dismount after clean            | ø    | Check        | Indicates whether the cleaning cartridge should be dismounted after the cleaning ends.   |
| Host is allowed to set the time | ø    | Do not check | A client host should not be allowed to set the time.   |
| Notification sender name        | ø    | Enter        | Notification sender (ROBAR format).  |
| Priority                        | ø    | Select       | <i>Low</i> means the client-sent commands have the lowest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
|                                 |      |              | <i>Medium</i> means the client-sent commands have the standard priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.                                       |
|                                 |      |              | <i>High</i> means the client-sent commands have the highest priority in a queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.  |
| Sequence                        | ø    | Do not check | Commands sent by client without sequence option will<br>be executed as they're ready. The system will not wait<br>until the previous client command is finished. |
| HCC Major                       | ø    | Do not check | Commands send by client without major host<br>parameter cannot be addressed/replied via the HCC/<br>MVS application.   |
| Translate HCC<br>Coordinates    | ø    | Check        | Translate (re-map) LSCI coordinates to the HCC form.<br>For more information, refer to <u>Translating HCC</u><br><u>Coordinates for ROBAR HACC</u> on page 261.  |
| Create                          | 1    | Click        | Create client.   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description                            |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.                       |
| Help         | 7    | Click     | Open online Help for the current pane. |

# SCSI Target Tab

Note The new ROBAR Client is functional immediately after creation. No Scalar DLC service restart is required.

The SCSI Target tab is designed for the configuration of the Target part of the SCSI interface.

| 🖅 Nlafa | This tab is seese sible and | if the Cooler DLC CCCI Client |                         |
|---------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 🔣 Note  | This tab is accessible only | if the Scalar DLC SCSI Client | component is installed. |

The SCSI Target is an intermediary between the logical library (configured by the Scalar DLC) and the SCSI. This intermediary requires a configuration that is executed into two steps. First, the SCSI target must be configured. Second, the Scalar DLC SCSI Client(s) must be created and assigned to the appropriate logical libraries. The fist step is executed here. The second step is executed via the Clients tab. Refer to SCSI Client on page 164.

The SCSI client (either a person or a software application) connects to the Scalar DLC via the LUN object that is shown to it as a part of the Target on a SCSI bus. One LUN may contain one client (SCSI Client). The Target always contains LUN 0 and may contain other LUNs; the number is limited by the SCSI HBA properties. All initiators of the SCSI bus may use the LUN configured for that bus. The physical connection is established via the host bus adapter (this hardware is called SCSI Adapter, the model of adapter does not matter if it is supported by the Scalar DLC software). Table 1 on page 6 describes the target adapters the Scalar DLC software currently supports.

The host bus adapter sends and receives commands via the channels called SCSI Ports. Depending on the command stream direction, the ports are operating either in Initiator or Target mode (called Initiator ports or Target ports). The Scalar DLC works with the Target ports only, the initiator mode is not used for the port configured as Target. The configuration of the Target mode for the SCSI Ports is executed via the SCSI Target Port Tool (refer to <u>SCSI Target Port Tool</u> on page 233).

The Targets and LUNs are created manually. After the LUN is created, a SCSI client can be added as an intermediary between the logical library and the LUN object that represents an initiator of the SCSI bus (it can be either a user or a software application).

Table below shows the icons that represents the SCSI Target tab objects.

| Name              | lcon | Text Color | Description   |
|-------------------|------|------------|---|
| Available<br>port | ¢    | Black      | Indicates a SCSI Port (available).<br>The port is functional, and the connection with the initiators<br>can be established. |

| Table 22 | SCSI Target Icons |
|----------|-------------------|

| Table 22 | SCSI | Target Icons | (Continued) |
|----------|------|--------------|-------------|
|----------|------|--------------|-------------|

| Name                  | lcon       | Text Color | Description  |
|-----------------------|------------|------------|--|
| Not available<br>port | ¢          | Gray       | Indicates a SCSI Port (not available).<br>The port will be functional after enabling, but the connection<br>with the initiators currently cannot be established. The new<br>targets cannot be added but all operations with the existing<br>targets are enabled. |
| Absent port           | ¢          | Light-gray | Indicates a SCSI Port (not present).<br>The port is not functional. The new targets cannot be added<br>but all operations with the existing targets are enabled.   |
| Active target         | <u>Å</u>   | Black      | Indicates a SCSI Target (active).<br>There is a client configured for this target at LUN 0. The SCSI<br>bus initiators may now work with the target.   |
| Not active target     | Ţ          | Gray       | Indicates a SCSI Target (not active).<br>The target LUN 0 is ready to accept a SCSI client. The SCSI<br>bus initiators may not work with the target until it will be <i>active</i> .   |
| Active LUN            | $\diamond$ | Black      | Indicates a LUN (active).<br>The SCSI client is configured to use this LUN.  |
| Not active<br>LUN     | $\diamond$ | Gray       | Indicates a LUN (not active).<br>The SCSI client is not configured to use this LUN.  |

The Target may work either in SCSI-2 or in SCSI-3 mode. All the LUNs of this target will work in this mode, too, and this will be the standard for all clients assigned to these LUNs. For the details refer to the SCSI *Primary Commands 2 (SPC-2)* and SCSI *Primary Commands 3 (SPC-3)* manuals.

Depending on the adapter model and the SCSI operating mode, the number of targets pro port and the number of LUN per target are indicated in <u>Table 23</u>.

| Adapter   | Туре          | Max target | Max SCSI ID | Max LUNs per target  |
|-----------|---------------|------------|-------------|----------------------|
| LSI 20860 | SCSI          | 7          | 7           | 8                    |
| LSI 8751D | SCSI          | 15         | 15          | 8                    |
| LSI 8951U | SCSI          | 15         | 15          | 8                    |
| QLA 2200  | Fibre Channel | 1          | 1           | 256 (8) <sup>a</sup> |
| QLA 23xx  | Fibre Channel | 1          | 1           | 256 (8)              |
| Local     | SCSI          | 128        | 128         | 255 (8)              |

 Table 23
 SCSI and Fibre Channel Adapter Target-LUN Settings

a. Indicated max LUN number in SCSI-3 (SCSI-2) mode.

## Port

In the *Select Components* area of the pane, selectable Ports appear. Clicking the expand/collapse button will result in an element expansion.

Note The SCSI ports cannot be configured by means of the Scalar DLC Management GUI because they are built-in external system objects. The Scalar DLC software can only use them or indicate that the port is not usable.

The operation of enable/disable the Port is executed by means of the SCSI Target Port Tool. Refer to <u>SCSI</u> <u>Target Port Tool</u> on page 233.

## Figure 130 Port: SCSI

| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help         Image: Configuration Events Service         Library Configuration Events Service         Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target         Select component         Properties         Properties         Property       Value         Property       Value         Image: Computer       Properties         Image: Computer       Properticomputer         Ima   | 🌺 Scalar DLC   |  |                               |  |
|--|--|--|-------------------------------|--|
| Price         Library       Configuration       Events       Service         Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       SCSI Target         Select component       Properties       Properties         P       ADIC Local SCSI Target 64       Port ID       0         P       Target64       Available       Port ID         P       Target65       3       Available         P       Target65       3       Available         P       Target65       3       Available         P       Target66       Max number of targets       128         Max number of LUNs       255       Max number of LUNs       255  | Connection Wizards Extended  | l Service Help                                   |                               |  |
| Library       Configuration       Events       Service         Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       SCSI Target         Select component       Properties         P       ADIC Local SCSI Target         Port ID       0         IUN0       LUN1         LUN1       State         Available       Max number of targets         IUN0       LUN1         Max number of targets       128         Max number of LUNs       255   | adic User admin connected  | d to computer                                    |                               |  |
| Logical       Physical       Users       Clients       SCSI Target         Select component       Properties         P       ADIC Local SCSI Target         P       ADIC Local SCSI Target         P       Target64         LUN0       LUN1         LUN1       State         Available       Number of targets         Max number of targets       128         Max number of LUNs       255  | Library Configuration Ev   | rents Service                                    |                               |  |
| Select component       Properties         Property       Value         Property   | Logical Physical Users   | Clients SCSI Target                              |                               |  |
| Property       Value         ADIC Local SCSI Ta       Property       Value         Target64       ADIC Local SCSI Target Port 0         LUN0       LUN1         Target65       Available         LUN1       Max number of targets       3         Max number of LUNs       255   | Select component   | Properties                                       |                               |  |
| Port ID       0         Target64       LUN0         LUN1       Available         Available       Available   | 🗣 🔜 computer   | Property   | Value                         | The second secon |
| Image: Construction of the second | P C ADIC Local SCSI Ta   | 🗟 Port ID  | 0                             | <b></b>  |
| P EUN1<br>LUN1   P Target65<br>LUN1   Q UN0<br>LUN1   P Target66<br>LUN0   LUN1 Max number of targets   128   Max number of LUNs   | Ÿ ₩ Target64   | 🗟 Name   | ADIC Local SCSI Target Port 0 |  |
| P       Target65       3         LUN0       LUN1         P       Target66         LUN0       Max number of targets       128         Max number of LUNs       255  |  | 🗟 State  | Available                     |  |
| P       LUN0<br>LUN1         P       Target66         LUN0   | P- Target65<br>LUN0<br>LUN1  | 🗟 Number of targets                              | 3                             |  |
| CUN1     Target66     LUN0   |  | 🗟 Max number of targets                          | 128                           |  |
|  |  | 🗟 Max number of LUNs 255                         |                               |  |
|  | LUN0   |  |                               |  |
|  |  |  |                               | 2  |
|  |  |  |                               |  |
| <ul> <li>18:32 admin connected to computer</li> <li>18:33 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> <li>18:33 Inventory for library Library1 completed.</li> </ul>   | <ul> <li>18:32 admin connected to comp</li> <li>18:33 Initializing element status</li> <li>18:33 Inventory for library Librar</li> </ul> | puter<br>3 for library Library1<br>y1 completed. |                               |  |

| Field/Button          | lcon        | Operation | Description   |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------|---|
| Port ID               | Θ           | Supplied  | The port ID.  |
| Name                  | ۲           | Supplied  | The port unique name.   |
| State                 | ٰ           | Supplied  | The port state. See <u>Table 22</u> on page 178.  |
| Number of targets     | ۲           | Supplied  | The number of targets currently configured for the SCSI port.   |
| Max number of targets | Ð           | Supplied  | The maximum number of targets that can be configured for the SCSI port. Refer to Table 23 on page 179.                    |
| Max number<br>of LUNs | ß           | Supplied  | The maximum number of LUNs that can be configured for the targets of the SCSI port. Refer to <u>Table 23</u> on page 179. |
| World wide<br>name    | ß           | Supplied  | (only for the Fibre Channel)<br>The world wide port name, hexadecimal.  |
| Add new<br>Target     | <b>≣</b> €t | Click     | Pop-up target creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create</u><br><u>Target</u> on page 185.                               |
| Help                  | ?           | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

## Figure 131 Port: Fibre Channel

| 🌺 Scalar DLC                             |                         |                                   | . 🗆 🗵 |  |
|--|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |                         |                                   |       |  |
| adic User admin connecte                 | d to computer           |                                   |       |  |
| Library Configuration Events             | Service                 |                                   |       |  |
| Logical Physical Users (                 | Clients SCSI Target     |                                   |       |  |
| Select component                         | Properties              |                                   |       |  |
| 💡 🔜 computer                             | Property                | Value                             | Tet I |  |
|  | 🖻 Port ID               | 1                                 |       |  |
| ASC-OWNEPCI DUS                          | 🗟 Name                  | QLA2300 PCI bus 2, device 9, func |       |  |
| • • QLA2200 PCI bus 2                    | 🗟 State                 | Available                         |       |  |
| Ů Ů                                      | 🗟 Number of targets     | 1                                 |       |  |
|  | 🗟 Max number of targets | 1                                 |       |  |
|  | 🗟 Max number of LUNs    | 255                               |       |  |
| 🖬 World wide name 210000E08B04CF4C       |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   | 3     |  |
| -  |                         |                                   |       |  |
| 16:49 admin connected to com             | puter                   |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
|  |                         |                                   |       |  |
| J  |                         |                                   |       |  |

# Target

In the Select Components area of the pane, selectable Targets appear.

## Figure 132 SCSI Target

| Scalar DLC Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  Configuration Events Service  Library Configuration Events Service  Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Select component<br>P P ADIC Local SCSI Ta<br>P Target64<br>LUN0<br>LUN1<br>P Target65<br>LUN0<br>LUN1<br>P Target66<br>LUN0<br>LUN1<br>P Target66<br>LUN0<br>LUN1  | Properties<br>Property<br>Target ID<br>SCSI ID<br>SCSI ID<br>SCSI mode | Value<br>1<br>Target64<br>64<br>SCSI-2 |  |  |
| 18:32 admin connected to computer     18:33 Initializing element status for library Library1     18:33 Inventory for library Library1 completed.                    |  |  |  |  |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Target ID    | ۲    | Supplied  | The target ID (internal).  |
| Name         | ₿    | Supplied  | The target name. Contains 'Target' and the SCSI ID.  |
| SCSI ID      | ₿    | Supplied  | The target SCSI ID (external, seen by SCSI initiator).   |
| SCSI Mode    | ۲    | Supplied  | The target operating mode.<br>Only SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 are currently supported.<br>Also refer to <u>Table 23</u> on page 179 |

| Field/Button   | lcon        | Operation | Description   |
|----------------|-------------|-----------|---|
| Add new<br>LUN | æ           | Click     | Pop-up LUN creation window appears. Refer to <u>Create LUN</u> on page 186. |
| Remove         | <b>\$</b> = | Click     | Remove the SCSI Target.   |
| Help           | 7           | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                      |

The not active Target becomes active after a client (SCSI Client) assigned to the LUN 0 of this target. Refer to <u>SCSI Client</u> on page 164.

For the details of the SCSI command format, refer to:

- SCSI Reference Manual for the Scalar 10K library.
- SCSI Reference Manual for the Scalar 1000 library.
- 😻 Note

The newly created target already contains LUN 0. If the other LUNs are required, they should be created manually.



# When the SCSI Target is removed, all SCSI Clients configured for LUNs of this target are removed as well.

The Target can operate either in SCSI-2 or in SCSI-3 mode. All the LUNs of this target will work in this mode as well, and this will be the standard for all clients assigned to these LUNs. For the details of the SCSI Mode refer to:

- SCSI Primary Commands 2 (SPC-2) Manual
- SCSI Primary Commands 3 (SPC-3) Manual



Because of interface properties, one and only one SCSI Client can be assigned to the single LUN.



After the client is assigned to the LUN 0 of any target, all other clients assigned to the non-zero LUNs of this target are activated.

# Logical Unit Number (LUN)

| Figure 13 | 3 SCSILUN |
|-----------|-----------|
|-----------|-----------|

| & Scalar DLC  |  |             |   |  |
|---|--|-------------|---|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |  |             |   |  |
| adic User admin connected   | d to computer                                  |             |   |  |
| Library Configuration Ev  | ents Service                                   |             |   |  |
| Logical Physical Users Clients SCSI Target  |  |             |   |  |
| 🖗 🔜 computer  | Property                                       | Value       |   |  |
| စု- 🏟 ADIC Local SCSI Ta  | 🗟 LUN ID                                       | 2           | ~ |  |
| Y 🗑 Target64  | 🖻 Name   | LUN1        |   |  |
|   | 🗟 LUN number                                   | 1           |   |  |
| 🗣 🕡 Target65  | 🗟 Vendor ID                                    | ADIC        |   |  |
|   | 🗟 Product ID                                   | Scalar 1000 |   |  |
| □ □ ↓ LUN1<br>□ □ □ □ Target66  | 🗟 Firmware Revision                            | 3.00        |   |  |
|   | 🗟 Full Firmware Revision                       | 1.00.0000   |   |  |
| •   | 🗟 Client                                       | ScsiClient1 |   |  |
|   |  |             |   |  |
| <ul> <li>18:32 admin connected to comp</li> <li>18:33 Initializing element status</li> <li>18:33 Inventory for library Library</li> </ul> | buter<br>for library Library1<br>/1 completed. |             |   |  |

| Field/Button           | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| LUN ID                 | Ð    | Supplied  | LUN ID (internal).   |
| Name                   | ۲    | Supplied  | LUN name. Contains 'LUN' + LUN Number.                                     |
| LUN Number             | ۲    | Supplied  | LUN SCSI ID (external, seen by SCSI initiator).                            |
| Vendor ID              | ۲    | Supplied  | Vendor ID, as will be seen by the SCSI Initiator.                          |
| Product ID             | ß    | Supplied  | Product ID. The format of the data transferred from/to the SCSI initiator. |
| Firmware revision      | 6    | Supplied  | The firmware revision level, short form.                                   |
| Full firmware revision | Θ    | Supplied  | The firmware revision level, complete.                                     |
| Client                 | Θ    | Supplied  | The assigned SCSI Client (for the active LUN only).                        |
| Remove                 | چ    | Click     | Remove the LUN.  |
| Help                   | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                     |



The LUN 0 cannot be removed manually. It is deleted only with the Target.

The not active LUN becomes active after a client (SCSI Client) assigned to it. Refer to <u>SCSI Client</u> on page 164.



Because of interface properties, one and only one SCSI Client can be assigned to the single LUN.



After the client is assigned to the LUN 0 of any target, all other clients assigned to the non-zero LUNs of this target are activated.

# **Create Target**

Under the SCSI Port properties, the **Add new Target** button appears (active for the *enabled* ports only). Clicking it opens a pop-up target creation pane.



Only administrator users can create targets. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new Target** button is disabled.

Figure 134 SCSI Target Creation

| 🌺 Add new target         |            | × |
|--------------------------|------------|---|
| Properties               |            |   |
| Property                 | Value      | 1 |
| 🗟 Target ID              | 0          | ~ |
| 🗟 Name                   | Target67   | ^ |
| 🖉 SCSHD                  | 67         |   |
| 🖉 SCSI mode              | SCSI-2     |   |
| 🖉 LUN Vendor ID          | ADIC       |   |
| 🖉 LUN Product ID         | Scalar 100 |   |
| 🖉 LUN Firmware Revision  | 3.00       |   |
| 🖋 LUN Full Firmware Revi | 1.00.0000  | 3 |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|----------------|------|-----------|---|
| Target ID      | ₿    | Supplied  | The target ID (internal).   |
| Name           | ₿    | Supplied  | The target name. Contains 'Target' and the SCSI ID.   |
| SCSI ID        | ø    | Enter     | The target SCSI ID (external, seen by SCSI initiator).  |
| SCSI Mode      | ø    | Select    | The target operating mode.<br>Only SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 are currently supported.                   |
| LUN Vendor ID  | ø    | Select    | Current target LUN 0 vendor ID.   |
| LUN Product ID | ø    | Select    | Current target LUN 0 product ID. The format of the data transferred from/to the SCSI initiator. |

| Field/Button               | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|----------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| LUN Firmware revision      | ø    | Enter     | Current target LUN 0 firmware revision level, short form. |
| LUN Full Firmware revision | ø    | Enter     | Current target LUN 0 firmware revision level, complete.   |
| Create                     | 1    | Click     | Create SCSI target  |
| Cancel                     | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.  |
| Help                       | 2    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                    |



The target creation is not possible if the port already contains the maximum number of targets.

- Whote The newly created target will *not* be active until there is a SCSI client assigned to the LUN 0 of that target.
- Note The newly created target already contains LUN 0. If other LUNs are required they should be created manually

# Create LUN

Under the SCSI Target properties, the **Add new LUN** button is displayed. Clicking it opens a pop-up target creation pane.

😻 Note

Only administrator users can create LUNs. For the user without administrative privileges, the **Add new LUN** button is disabled.

Figure 135 SCSI LUN Creation

| 🌺 Add new LUN            |            | ×        |
|--------------------------|------------|----------|
| Properties               |            |          |
| Property                 | Value      |          |
| 🗟 LUN ID                 | 0          | <u> </u> |
| 🖉 Name                   | Lun1       | X        |
| 🖉 LUN number             | 1          | <u></u>  |
| 🖋 Vendor ID              | ADIC       |          |
| 🖉 Product ID             | Scalar 100 |          |
| 🖋 Firmware Revision      | 3.00       |          |
| 🖋 Full Firmware Revision | 1.00.0000  | 3        |

| Field/Button              | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------------|------|-----------|--|
| LUN ID                    |      | Supplied  | LUN ID (internal).   |
| Name                      | ø    | Enter     | LUN name. Contains 'LUN' + LUN Number.                                     |
| LUN Number                | ø    | Enter     | The LUN SCSI ID (external, seen by SCSI initiator).                        |
| Vendor ID                 | ø    | Select    | Vendor ID, as will be seen by the SCSI Initiator.                          |
| Product ID                | ø    | Select    | Product ID. The format of the data transferred from/to the SCSI initiator: |
| Firmware Revision         | ø    | Enter     | The firmware revision level, short form.                                   |
| Full Firmware<br>Revision | ø    | Enter     | The firmware revision level, complete.                                     |
| Create                    | -    | Click     | Create SCSI LUN  |
| Cancel                    | ×    | Click     | Cancel creation.   |
| Help                      | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                     |



The LUN creation is not possible if the target already contains the maximum number of LUNs.

W Note The newly created LUN will *not* be active until there is a SCSI client assigned to this LUN.

Moreover, the LUN requires the target to be active, and the target becomes *active* only when the SCSI client is assigned to the LUN 0.

# Events Tab

The Events Tab is designed for viewing event notifications or modifying rules that govern event reporting. The Events Tab contains an additional level with the following tabs:

- Queue Tab. Managing command queue. Refer to <u>Queue Tab</u> on page 190.
- Monitoring Tab. Monitoring the current login session events. Refer to Monitoring Tab on page 192.
- Acknowledge Tab. Acknowledging the notifications. Refer to <u>Acknowledge Tab</u> on page 194.
- History Tab. Monitoring the events during all sessions. Refer to <u>History Tab</u> on page 195.
- Rules Tab. Managing the rules. Refer to <u>Rules Tab</u> on page 195.

# Queue Tab

## Figure 136 Queue Tab

| 🌺 Scalar DLC   |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|----------------|-------------------------|------------------|------------|---------------|------------|--|
| Connection     | Wizards Extende         | d Service I      | Help       |               |            |  |
| adic V         | ser admin connect       | ed to comput     | er         |               |            |  |
| Library Cor    | nfiguration Event       | s Service        |            |               |            |  |
| Queue Mor      | nitoring Acknowled      | ge History       | Rules      |               |            |  |
| Time           | Command                 | Client           | Library    |               | Parameters | na na katala 🙀   |
| 16:24:10       | Dismount volser         | Client1          | Library1   | volser=000003 |            |  |
| 6:24:14        | Dismount volser         | Client1          | Library1   | volser=000001 |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            |  |
|                |                         |                  |            |               |            | 1999 - Serie 1997 - Serie 199 |
| , 13.31 uisin  | iouni cannoqe oooi      | JU4 millioneu    |            |               |            |  |
| ) 15:53 Initia | lizing element statu    | is for library L | .ibrary2   |               |            |  |
| ) 15:54 Inver  | ntory for library Libra | ary2 complete    | d. Found 4 | D cartridges. |            |  |
| ) 15:54 Initia | lizing element statu    | is for library L | ibrary2    |               |            |  |
| 15:54 Inver    | ntory for library Libra | ary2 complete    | d.         |               |            |  |

The Queue Tab shows the queue of commands currently accepted and executed by the Scalar DLC software. Typically these commands are sent by client backup applications.

😻 Note

This tab is accessible for all users. The operation buttons are active for the Admin only.

| Field/Button      | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Time              |      | Select    | The current command arriving/execution time (HH:MM:SS format). A command status is indicated here (see below). |
| Running/Preparing | •    | Select    | The command is running or preparing to be executed.  |
| Pending           | 9    | Select    | The command is pending the required resources.   |
| Waiting, normal   | 6    | Select    | The command is waiting, its priority is normal.  |
| Waiting, high     | 6    | Select    | The command is waiting, its priority has been raised.  |

| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Waiting, low   | C    | Select    | The command is waiting, its priority has been lowered. |
| Idle           |      | Select    | The command is idle (stopped).                         |
| Command        |      | Select    | The current command.                                   |
| Client         |      | Select    | The client who send a command.                         |
| Library        |      | Select    | The logical library where the command is executed.     |
| Parameters     |      | Select    | The command operating parameters.                      |
| Cancel         | ×    | Click     | Cancel command execution and remove command from list. |
| Raise priority | Δ    | Click     | Raise waiting command priority.                        |
| Lower priority | 7    | Click     | Lower waiting command priority.                        |
| Stop           | 1    | Click     | Stop command execution. The command remains idle.      |
| Help           | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                 |

# Monitoring Tab

## Figure 137 Monitoring Tab

| 🛓 Scalar DLC   |  |
|--|--|
| Connection Wizard  | s Extended Service Help  |
| adic Useradr   | nin connected to computer  |
| Library Configu  | ration Events Service  |
| Queue Monitori   | ng Acknowledge History Rules   |
| Filter Events:   | Event List:  |
| All  Operator  Hardware  Firmware  Statistical  Service Call | 10/11/2002 15:51 Initialization in Library1         10/11/2002 15:51 Begin dismount in Library1         10/11/2002 15:51 Dismount in Library1         10/11/2002 15:54 Initialization in Library2         10/11/2002 16:22 Begin mount in Library1         10/11/2002 16:22 Begin dismount in Library1 |
|  | 10/11/2002 16:22 Dismount in Library1  |
| More information:  |  |
| The cartridge 00000<br>from P1_ST2001<br>to p3dr101          | 2 is being mounted   |
| 🖲 16:29 admin conn   | ected to computer  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

The Monitoring Tab pane describes notifications that it receives during the current login session.

In the *Filter Events* area of the pane, there are seven predefined event classes. Each event class is shown in a different color. See <u>Table 24</u>.

| Event Class   | Color     | Checked | Description                                    |
|---------------|-----------|---------|--|
| All           | Black     | Yes     | All received notifications are displayed.      |
|               |           | No      | Only checked notifications are displayed.      |
| Operator      | Red       | Yes     | Operator notifications are displayed.          |
|               |           | No      | Operator notifications are not displayed.      |
| Hardware      | Pink      | Yes     | Hardware notifications are displayed.          |
|               |           | No      | Hardware notifications are not displayed.      |
| Firmware      | Blue      | Yes     | Firmware notifications are displayed.          |
|               |           | No      | Firmware notifications are not displayed.      |
| Configuration | Turquoise | Yes     | Configuration notifications are displayed.     |
|               |           | No      | Configuration notifications are not displayed. |

| Table 24 | <b>Event Classes</b> |
|----------|----------------------|
|----------|----------------------|

## Table 24 Event Classes (Continued)

| Event Class  | Color     | Checked | Description                                   |
|--------------|-----------|---------|---|
| Statistical  | Dark Blue | Yes     | Statistical notifications are displayed.      |
|              |           | No      | Statistical notifications are not displayed.  |
| Service Call | Green     | Yes     | Service Call notifications are displayed.     |
|              |           | No      | Service Call notifications are not displayed. |

In the *Event List* area of the pane, every event is detailed in a series of single rows. The description of the event is copied from the internal table of events. See <u>Table 25</u>. The event information for the current login session is updated automatically, but the information is lost after the Scalar DLC Management GUI is closed.

|  | Table | 25 | Event | Data |
|--|-------|----|-------|------|
|--|-------|----|-------|------|

| Event | Description   |
|-------|---|
| Date  | This is the date of the event in the MM/DD/YYYY format. |
| Time  | This is the time of the event in the HH:MM format.      |
| Event | This is the event notification data.                    |

In the *More Information* area of the pane, additional information about the current session is listed. If the *Event List* area cannot contain the complete message, the entire message appears in the *More Information* area.

# Acknowledge Tab

#### Figure 138 Acknowledge Tab

| Queue Monitorii<br>Filter Events:                                     | ng Acknowledge<br>Event List: | History Rules | ] |               |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------|---|---------------|
| All Operator Hardware Firmware Configuration Statistical Service Call |                               |               |   |               |
| More information:   |                               |               |   | 🖌 Acknowledge |
|   |                               |               |   |               |

The Acknowledge Tab pane describes the notifications received during current login sessions that require a user acknowledgement.

If the **Acknowledge** button is clicked after an event is selected from the *Event List*, the event is acknowledged by the Scalar DLC software. If a rule associated with the event specifies a service ticket, the Scalar DLC software service generates the service ticket. Refer to <u>Tickets Tab</u> on page 205 for the description of procedures associated with ticket generation.

In the *Filter Events* area of the pane, there are seven predefined event classes. Each class of event is shown in a different color (see <u>Table 24</u> on page 192).

In the *Event List* area of the pane, every event is detailed in a series of single rows. The description of the event is copied from the internal table of events. The event information is updated automatically. See <u>Table</u> <u>25</u> on page 193.

In the *More Information* area of the pane, additional information about the current session is listed. If the *Event List* area cannot contain the complete message, the entire message appears in the *More Information* area.

## Figure 139 History Tab

| 🝨 Scalar DLC        |   | <u>_     ×</u> |
|---------------------|---|----------------|
| Connection Wizar    | ds Extended Service Help                    |                |
| adic User ad        | Imin connected to computer                  |                |
| Library Configu     | uration Events Service                      |                |
| Queue Monitor       | ring Acknowledge History Rules              |                |
| Filter Events:      | Event List:                                 |                |
| 💌 All               | 12/28/2004 15:56 Begin mount in Library1    | <b>^</b>       |
|                     | 12/28/2004 15:56 Move in Library1           | 1994           |
| Uperator            | 12/28/2004 15:56 Begin dismount in Library1 |                |
| Hardware            | 12/28/2004 15:56 Move in Library1           |                |
| □ Firmware          | 12/28/2004 15:56 Begin mount in Library1    |                |
| Configuration       | 12/28/2004 15:56 Move in Library1           |                |
| Statistical         | 12/28/2004 15:56 Begin dismount in Library1 |                |
| Service Call        | 12/28/2004 15:56 Move in Library1           |                |
|                     | 12/28/2004 15:56 Begin mount in Library1    |                |
|                     |   | •              |
| More information:   |   |                |
| The cartridge 00001 | 11 is being mounted                         |                |
| from P60_ST4111     |   |                |
| to P71DR264         |   |                |
|                     |   |                |
| 16:29 admin con     | nected to computer                          |                |
| 19:15 Ticket creat  | ted successfully                            |                |
|                     |   |                |
|                     |   |                |

The History Tab pane contains the last 200 notifications that were received during all login sessions.

In the *Filter Events* area of the pane, there are seven predefined event classes. Each class of event is shown in a different color (see <u>Table 24</u> on page 192).

In the *Event List* area of the pane, every event is detailed in a series of single rows. The description of the event is copied from the internal table of events. The event information is updated automatically. See <u>Table</u> <u>25</u> on page 193.

In the *More Information* area of the pane, additional information about the current session is listed. If the *Event List* area cannot contain the complete message, the entire message appears in the *More Information* area.

# **Rules** Tab

The Rules pane displays the list of both pre-defined and user-created rules along with their properties.

W Note This section is available only for the users with the rules management rights.

The rules are used to act when a specific event occurs. The actions include simple notification of event, notification of events that require acknowledgment, and service call ticket generation.

It is also possible to launch the wizard-based process for adding user-defined rules. Refer to <u>Create Rule</u> on page 47.

## Figure 140 Rules Tab

| 🚔 Scalar DLC                          |                          | _                         | . 🗆 ×    |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service H | elp                      |                           |          |
| adic User admin connected to computer | ,                        |                           |          |
| Library Configuration Events Ser      | rice                     |                           |          |
| Queue Monitoring Acknowledge His      | story Rules              |                           |          |
| List of rules                         | Properties               |                           |          |
| SDLC has been started (SNMP)          | Property                 | Value                     |          |
| Library state has been changed (SNMP) | 🖉 Rule Name              | SDLC has been started (SN |          |
| SDLC has been started (E-Mail)        | 🖉 State                  |                           | <u> </u> |
| SDLC is going to be stopped (E-Mail)  | 🥒 Event group            | Statistical               | <b>*</b> |
| Licence expiration warning (E-Mail)   | 🗟 Notification of events | Scalar DLC has been succe |          |
| ISDLC is going to be stopped (SNMP)   | 🖉 Error code             | 0                         |          |
| New library has been created (SNMP)   | 🖉 Device                 | None                      |          |
| Library Tane Alert Tran (SNMP)        | 🖉 Library                | None                      |          |
| Drive Tape Alert Trap (SNMP)          | 🖉 Client                 | None                      |          |
| Cluster Node Changed (E-Mail)         | 🖻 via                    | SNMP                      |          |
| Move cartridge to problem box (SNMP)  |                          |                           |          |
|                                       |                          |                           |          |
|                                       |                          |                           |          |
|                                       |                          |                           | ?        |
| J                                     |                          |                           |          |
| 16:29 admin connected to computer     |                          |                           |          |
| 19:15 Ticket created successfully     |                          |                           |          |
|                                       |                          |                           |          |
|                                       |                          |                           |          |

| Field/Button           | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Rule Name              | ø    | Enter     | Rule name.  |
| State                  | ø    | Check     | Whether the rule is active.   |
| Event group            | ø    | Select    | The event group. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.   |
| Notification of events | ø    | Select    | The event to notify. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.   |
| Error code             | ø    | Select    | Error code. Refer to <u>Error Codes</u> on page 267 and <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.                          |
| Device                 | ø    | Select    | Physical library. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.  |
| Library                | ø    | Select    | Logical library. See <u>Table 8</u> on page 47.   |
| Client                 | ø    | Select    | Client. See Table 8 on page 47.   |
| via                    | ۵    | Supplied  | The method of sending notifications: Email, SNMP, or<br>GUI.<br>The notification method can not be changed. |
| Email Destination      | ø    | Select    | The notification email destination (email only).  |
| Email Template         | ø    | Select    | The notification email template (email only).   |

| Field/Button    | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|-----------------|------|-----------|--|
| User            | ø    | Select    | The user who should acknowledge the notification ( <i>GUI</i> only).       |
| Generate ticket | ø    | Check     | Whether a ticket should be generated after acknowledge ( <i>GUI</i> only). |
| Update          |      | Click     | Save the rule properties after edit.                                       |
| Remove          | Ŀ    | Click     | Remove the rule.   |
| Wizard          | 28   | Click     | Launch the Rule wizard. Refer to <u>Create Rule</u> on page 47.            |
| Help            | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                     |

WoteThe rules configured to send email notifications cannot be activated when the Email<br/>Notifications field in the Registration Info pane is not checked. Refer to Registration<br/>Information on page 60.

Whote The rules configured to send SNMP notifications cannot be activated when the SNMP service is <u>not</u> started. Refer to <u>SNMP Tab</u> on page 215.
# 8

## Service Tab

The Service Tab is designed for the Customer Engineer (CE) and Admin users. The Service Tab has an additional level with the following tabs:

- Logs Tab. Monitoring the library command log and error log. Refer to Logs Tab on page 199.
- Diagnostic Tab. Executing the library diagnostics. Refer to Diagnostic Tab on page 203.
- Tickets Tab. Managing the service requests (tickets). Refer to <u>Tickets Tab</u> on page 205.
- Operator Panel Tab. Executing operator panel commands from a remote console. Refer to Operator Panel Tab on page 211.
- Cluster Tab. Viewing and changing the cluster settings. Refer to Cluster Tab on page 214.
- SNMP Tab. Managing the SNMP service settings. Refer to <u>SNMP Tab</u> on page 215.

## Logs Tab

This pane allows the user to view the error log and the command history for the selected robot of the physical library. When a specific event is selected, the information that has been collected can be sent to a specified email address.

This section provides an additional level with the following tabs:

- Command Log. The commands executed by the physical library. Refer to <u>Command Log</u> on page 200.
- Error Log. The errors occurred in the physical library. Refer to Error Log on page 202.
- W Note The Command Log and Error Log features are not available for the Scalar 1000 library.
- Note The Scalar 10K DA library has two robots, so it contains two <u>different</u> Command logs and Error logs.

## Command Log

## Figure 141 Command Log

| 👍 Scalar DI C   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| Connection Wizards Extended   | Service Help  |   |
|   |   |   |
| adic User admin connected   | d to computer   |   |
| Library Configuration Ev  | ents Service  |   |
| Logs Diagnostic Ticke   | ts Operator Panel Cluster SNMP  |   |
| Select component  | Logs  |   |
| <ul> <li>♥ ■ computer</li> <li>♥ ■ ADIC Scalar 10KDA</li> <li>■ Robot1</li> <li>■ Robot2</li> </ul> | 05/05/03 14:09:27 SCSIDONE MDSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:09:28 SC1.5 LGSN: SV[F] CHG[F] PgCtr[01] PgCd[3B]<br>05/05/03 14:09:28 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:27 SC1.5 LGSN: SV[F] CHG[F] PgCtr[01] PgCd[2E]<br>05/05/03 14:10:27 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:27 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:27 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SC1.5 MDSN: PgCtl[00] PgCd[1D] Alloc[18]<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SC1.5 MDSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SC1.5 LGSN: SV[F] CHG[F] PgCtr[01] PgCd[3B]<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SC1.5 LGSN: SV[F] CHG[F] PgCtr[01] PgCd[3B]<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 PrmSt[0000] Alloc[FFF]<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good<br>05/05/03 14:10:28 PrmSt[0000] Alloc[FFF]<br>05/05/03 14:11:27 PrmSt[0000] Alloc[144]<br>05/05/03 14:11:27 PrmSt[0000] Alloc[144]<br>05/05/03 14:11:27 SCSIDONE LGSN: Status good |   |
|   |   |   |
| 14:12 The drive containing the<br>14:12 diamonstruct containing the                                 | cartridge is out of Library range   |   |
| 14.12 dismount carriège 001137     14.13 dismount cartridge 001137 finished                         |   |   |
| 14:15 move cartridge 000132   | in minimu   | - |

| Button       | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Save to file | ₿    | Click     | Save log to file.   |
| Send email   |      | Click     | Send the log via email. Refer to <u>Send Log via Email</u> on page 201. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online Help for the current pane.                                  |

## Send Log via Email

Figure 142 Email Data

| 🌺 Send     | X             |
|------------|---------------|
| То         |               |
| Subject    |               |
| Descriptio | on            |
|            |               |
|            | Send X Cancel |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| То           |      | Enter     | The recipient email address associated with the data. Multiple email addresses must be separated with semicolons. |
| Subject      |      | Enter     | The subject of the email.   |
| Description  |      | Enter     | The email message text (the data will be attached in a separate file).  |
| Send         |      | Click     | Send the email to the recipient.  |
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Close the Email dialog without sending email.   |

😻 Note

The email will be sent successfully <u>only</u> if the email parameters of the current user are <u>valid</u>. Refer to <u>User</u> on page 147 for the details on the user's email parameters.

## Error Log

## Figure 143 Error Log

| Scalar DLC                             |  |          |
|--|--|----------|
| Connection Wizards Extended            | Service Help   |          |
| adic User admin connected              | d to computer  |          |
| Library Configuration Ev               | ents Service   |          |
| Logs Diagnostic Tick                   | ets Operator Panel Cluster SNMP                            |          |
| Select component                       | Logs   |          |
| 🛛 🖳 computer                           | [05/04/03 12:46:05 HT[00000000] M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found |          |
| 💡 🌆 ADIC Scalar 10KDA                  | 05/04/03 12:48:08 HT[00000000] M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found  |          |
| Robot1                                 | 05/04/03 12:48:13 HT[00000000] M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found  |          |
| Robot2                                 | 05/04/03 12:51:16 HT[00000000] M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found  |          |
|  | 05/04/03 12:53:10 HT[00000000] M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found  |          |
|  | 05/04/03 12:55:03 HT(00000000) M_mclcf_fiducial_not_found  |          |
|  | 05/05/03 10:53:15 HT[00010002] M_dclkunlk_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 13:52:39 HT[00010002] M_dclkunlk_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 15:16:22 HT[00010002] M_dclkunlk_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 15:33:47 HT[00010002] M_dclkunlk_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 16:25:28 HT[00010002] M_dclkunlk_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 16:27:11 HT[00010002] M_dcikunik_retry_command    |          |
|  | 05/05/03 18:54:55 HT[00010002] M_dcikunik_retry_command    | 1. 1. 16 |
|  | 05/05/03 19:24:02 HT[0b021140] G_0tvetteng_engine_laned    |          |
|  |  |          |
|  | Command Log Error Log                                      | 3        |
| - 10.22 more cananage coor 21          |  |          |
| 13:22 move cartridge 000719            |  |          |
| • 13:22 move cartridge 000727 finished |  |          |
| 13:23 move cartridge 000719 fit        | nished   | -        |
|  |  |          |

| Button       | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|------|-----------|---|
| Save to file | 8    | Click     | Save log to file.   |
| Send email   |      | Click     | Send the log via email. Refer to <u>Send Log via Email</u> on page 201. |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                                  |

## **Diagnostic Tab**

#### Figure 144 Diagnostic Tab

| Scalar DLC   |
|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help   |
| adic User admin connected to computer  |
| Library Configuration Events Service   |
| Logs Diagnostic Tickets Operator Panel Cluster SNMP  |
| Select component Select Diagnostic   |
| Image: Computer       Self test         Image: ADIC Scalar 1000 #       Home accessor         Image: ADIC Scalar 10KDA       Cycle Gripper Finger         Image: Robot1       Cycle Horizontal Axis         Image: Robot2       Cycle Insert/Eject Station Door Lock         Teach New       Teach Current         Take Code Dump       Take Code Dump |
| Diagnostic information   |
| • 14:37 move cartridge 000007  |
| 14:37 move cartridge 000007 finished     14:39 mount activity 000044   |
| 14.38 mount cartridge 000011     14:38 mount cartridge 000011 finished   |

This Diagnostic pane specifies diagnostic tests that can be executed on a robot.

Select the diagnostic test and click on **Execute** button to launch it.

The result of the diagnostic test appears in the *Diagnostic Information* area on the right.

| Field/Button              | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|---------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Select Diagnostic         |      | Select    | Self test is the complete test included in all of the steps described in the following text.  |
|                           |      |           | Home Accessor moves the accessor to the home position on the vertical and horizontal axes.  |
|                           |      |           | Cycle Gripper Finger opens and closes the gripper fingers.  |
|                           |      |           | <i>Cycle Vertical Axis</i> moves the accessor to the home position on the vertical axis, then to the top of the vertical axis, and returns it to the home position.             |
|                           |      |           | <i>Cycle Horizontal Axis</i> moves the accessor to the home position on the horizontal axis, then to the far right of the horizontal axis, and returns it to the home position. |
|                           |      |           | <i>Cycle Insert/Eject Station Door Lock</i> locks and then unlocks the Insert/Eject solenoid.   |
|                           |      |           | Teach New reteaches the library configuration.  |
|                           |      |           | Teach Current reteaches the library current configuration.  |
|                           |      |           | <i>Take Code Dump</i> saves the current state of code execution in DRAM.  |
| Diagnostic<br>information |      | Supplied  | The results of the diagnostic test.   |
| Execute                   | 양    | Click     | Execute the selected diagnostic test.   |
| Description               | 9    | Click     | Show the selected diagnostic test description. See Figure 145 on page 204.  |
| Help                      | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Figure 145 Diagnostic Description



The Tickets tab shows the list of report issues (tickets) either created by the customer or generated automatically.

Note This tab is accessible only by Customer Engineers (CE) and the users with the ticket management rights. All CEs are a part of the Global Call Center (GCC).

Selecting the Tickets Tab pane is the first step to solving a problem. A written description of the problem is shown under the ticket properties.

Tickets can be generated manually by the customer or automatically by a notification rule.

The customer creates tickets with the help of the Ticket wizard launched from the Management GUI main menu. Refer to <u>Create Ticket</u> on page 42.

| Figure 146 Lickets La |
|-----------------------|
|-----------------------|

| 🌺 Scalar DLC   |                            |          | _ 🗆 ×           |
|--|----------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Set  | rvice Help                 |          |                 |
| adic User atac connected to co   | mputer                     |          |                 |
| Library Configuration Events S   | Service                    |          |                 |
| Logs Diagnostic Tickets  | Operator Panel Cluster SNM | P        |                 |
| List of reported problems:   | Properties                 |          |                 |
| AR1355725573   | Property                   | Value    | BX              |
| AR2224322314   | D ID                       | 1        |                 |
| AR3  | 🗟 Originator               | My_Name  |                 |
| AR4  | 🖻 Telephone                | My_Phone | <u>₿8</u>       |
|  | 🖻 Priority                 | 0        | B. <sup>⊕</sup> |
|  |                            |          | 20              |
|  |                            |          |                 |
|  | Description:               | <b>P</b> |                 |
|  |                            |          | ון ו            |
|  |                            |          |                 |
|  | Status                     |          |                 |
|  |                            |          |                 |
|  |                            | Torester | <u> </u>        |
|  |                            |          |                 |
| <ul> <li>18:25 Ticket created successfully</li> <li>18:25 Ticket created successfully</li> </ul> |                            |          |                 |
| 18:25 Ticket created successfully  |                            |          | 1996            |
| 18:25 atac connected to computer   |                            |          | -               |

In the *List of reported problems* area of the pane, all of the reported problems are listed. The ticket reports are color-coded for identification.

| List      | Color | Description   |
|-----------|-------|---|
| Open      | Red   | This color indicates an opened problem. The CE has not start working under the issue. |
| Suspended | Black | This color indicates a solved problem but the ticket has not been closed.             |

| List       | Color  | Description  |
|------------|--------|--|
| In Process | Yellow | This color indicates that a CE is working on the problem.              |
| Closed     | Green  | This color indicates a solved problem, and the ticket has been closed. |

In the *Properties* area of the pane, the ticket properties are shown for the selected problem report.

| Field/Button       | lcon       | Operation | Description   |
|--------------------|------------|-----------|---|
| ID                 | ۵          | Supplied  | The ticket ID (generated by the Scalar DLC software or applied manually by the CE).                                 |
| Originator         | ß          | Supplied  | The ticket originator.  |
| Telephone          | ß          | Supplied  | The originator's phone number.  |
| Priority           | 8          | Supplied  | The problem priority selected by the originator.  |
| Description        |            | Supplied  | The brief description of the problem entered by the originator.   |
| Status, All proble | ems        | Check     | Display all problems.   |
| Status, Opened     |            | Check     | Display all opened problems.  |
| Status, Suspend    | led        | Check     | Display all suspended problems.   |
| Status, Closed     |            | Check     | Display all closed problems.  |
| Start Repair       | ₽⊳         | Click     | Display the Start Repair dialog (for the <i>opened</i> tickets only).<br>See <u>Figure 147</u> on page 207.         |
| Under Repair       | X          | Click     | Display the Repair dialog (for the <i>suspended</i> or <i>in process</i> tickets only). See Figure 148 on page 208. |
| Close              | <b>b</b> • | Click     | Close ticket (for the opened or suspended tickets only).  |
| History            | BB         | Click     | Display the History pane. See <u>Figure 151</u> on page 210.  |
| Remove             | •          | Click     | Remove ticket (for the <i>closed</i> tickets only).   |
| Wizard             | *          | Click     | Launch the Ticket wizard. Refer to Create Ticket on page 42.  |
| Help               | ?          | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |

Figure 147 Start Repair

| 🌺 Start Repair | ×                |
|----------------|------------------|
| CE name:       | CE-1             |
| Service Code:  | Do not know      |
| Ticket: AR     | 2224322314       |
| Start Time:    | 04/04/2002 18:26 |
| <b>~</b>       | OK X Cancel      |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| CE Name      |      | Enter     | The CE name. It indicates a person assigned by GCC as responsible for solving a problem.                     |
| Start Time   |      | Supplied  | The start time of the repair.  |
| Service Code |      | Select    | <i>Do not know</i> means the CE cannot make a problem determination based on the service ticket information. |
|              |      |           | Unscheduled Repair means an unexpected repair is required.   |
|              |      |           | Scheduled Repair means a pre-arranged time has been allocated for the repair.                                |
|              |      |           | Information Call means information is being sent to GCC.   |
|              |      |           | <i>Customer Resp.</i> means the problem is caused or belongs to the customer.                                |
|              |      |           | <i>Preventive Maint.</i> means routine preventive maintenance is scheduled.                                  |
|              |      |           | <i>Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about the installation of the system.        |
|              |      |           | <i>De-Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about a system de-installation.           |
|              |      |           | <i>EC/Field Bill</i> means a service call is the result of an EC/Field build installation.                   |
|              |      |           | <i>Feature Code Change</i> means a new feature or function is added to the system.                           |
| Ticker AR    |      | Enter     | The AR registration number supplied by GCC support.  |
| Start Time   |      | Supplied  | The time when the CE start the work.   |
| ОК           | ✓    | Click     | Accept entered information.  |
| Cancel       | ×    | Click     | Return to the Tickets pane, changes discarded.   |

| 🌺 Repair Dialog     |                  | ×        |
|---------------------|------------------|----------|
| End time:           | 04/04/2002 18:28 |          |
| Travel h.           | 00.00            |          |
| Logistic h.         | 00.00            |          |
| Diagnostic h.       | 00.00            |          |
| Repair h.           | 00.00            |          |
| Parts Usage install | ed 🗌             |          |
| Support Diary       |                  |          |
|                     |                  |          |
|                     |                  |          |
|                     |                  |          |
| 🖁 🗖 Fixed           | 🖁 Not fixed      | 🗙 Cancel |

| Field/Button     | lcon  | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|-------|-----------|---|
| End Time         |       | Supplied  | The time repair ended.  |
| Travel h.        |       | Enter     | The time required to travel to the customer site.   |
| Logistics h.     |       | Enter     | The time for administrative functions associated with the repair. Parts ordering is an example of the logistics associated with a repair. |
| Diagnostic h.    |       | Enter     | The time it took to diagnose the problem.   |
| Repair h.        |       | Enter     | The time necessary to repair the problem.   |
| Parts Usage Inst | alled | Check     | Total repair parts usage.   |
| Support Diary    |       | Enter     | Comments about the repair process.  |
| Fixed            |       | Click     | The problem is fixed. See Figure 149 on page 209.   |
| Not fixed        | X     | Click     | The problem is not fixed. See <u>Figure 150</u> on page 209.  |
| Cancel           | ×     | Click     | Return to the Tickets pane, changes discarded.  |





| Field/Button        | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|------|-----------|--|
| Current Status      |      | Enter     | A description of the current problem status.                     |
| ОК                  | -    | Click     | Return to the GCC Calls pane. The ticket can be closed           |
| Cancel              | ×    | Click     | Return to the Repair dialog.                                     |
| Close the ticket me | for  | Check     | The Scalar DLC software closes the problem ticket automatically. |

Figure 150 Not Fixed Problem Confirmation



| Field/Button   | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|----------------|------|-----------|--|
| Current Status |      | Enter     | A description of the current problem status.                       |
| ОК             | -    | Click     | Return to the Tickets pane. The ticket will be <i>In process</i> . |
| Cancel         | ×    | Click     | Return to the Repair dialog.                                       |

The Repair History dialog lists the events associated with a specific repair.

Figure 151 Repair History



| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Ticket ID    |      | Supplied  | The ticket identifier generated by the Scalar DLC software service.  |
| CE Name      |      | Supplied  | The ticket originator identification.  |
| Start Time   |      | Supplied  | The start time of the repair service.  |
| Service Code |      | Supplied  | <i>Do not know</i> means the CE cannot make a problem determination based on the service ticket information. |
|              |      |           | Unscheduled Repair means an unexpected repair is required.   |
|              |      |           | Scheduled Repair means a pre-arranged time has been allocated for the repair.                                |
|              |      |           | Information Call means information is being sent to GCC.   |
|              |      |           | <i>Customer Resp.</i> means the problem is caused or belongs to the customer.                                |
|              |      |           | <i>Preventive Maint.</i> means routine preventive maintenance is scheduled.                                  |
|              |      |           | <i>Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about the installation of the system.        |
|              |      |           | <i>De-Installation</i> means the ticket is generated to notify GCC about a system de-installation.           |
|              |      |           | <i>EC/Field Bill</i> means a service call is the result of an EC/Field build installation.                   |
|              |      |           | <i>Feature Code Change</i> means a new feature or function is added to the system.                           |
| Ticket AR    |      | Supplied  | The AR registration number supplied by GCC support.  |
| End Time     |      | Supplied  | The Scalar DLC software service supplies the end time.   |
| Travel h.    |      | Supplied  | The travel time for arriving at the customer location.   |

| Field/Button Icc     | on Operation | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------|---|
| Logistics h.         | Supplied     | The time for administrative functions associated with the repair. Parts ordering is an example of the logistics associated with the repair. |
| Diagnostic h.        | Supplied     | The time to diagnose the problem.   |
| Repair h.            | Supplied     | The time necessary to repair the problem.   |
| Parts Usage Installe | ed Supplied  | The total repair parts.   |
| Support Diary        | Supplied     | Comments about the repair process.  |
| ОК                   | Click        | Return to the Tickets pane.   |

## **Operator Panel Tab**

This tab mimics the operator panel on the actual device and provides an interactive path between the operator and the library indicators and push-buttons that control the library.



The Scalar 10K DA library has two different robots and respectively two different operator panels.

Figure 152 Operator Panel Tab for the Scalar 10K

| 🌺 Scalar DLC  | _ D × |
|---|-------|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |       |
| adic User admin connected to computer   |       |
| Library Configuration Events Service  |       |
| Select component       ADIC Scalar 1000 #            • Robot1         • Robot1         • Robot1         • Robot2         • Robot2         • Robot2         • Robot2         • Robot2         • Robot3         • Robot4         • Robot4 |       |
| <ul> <li>14:37 move cartridge 000007</li> <li>14:37 move cartridge 000007 finished</li> <li>14:38 mount cartridge 000011</li> <li>14:38 mount cartridge 000011 finished</li> </ul>  |       |

#### Description

Item LCD Screen

reen The vendor ID, library type, date, and time are shown on the operator LCD screen. The operations with push-buttons are indicated here, too.



The **Locked** indicator is lit whenever the I/E station is locked (only for Scalar 1000 libraries).



The **Power On** indicator is lit whenever the Control Module is connected to the power source, the Control Module switch, and the AC Power Compartment(s) circuit breakers are ON.



The **Ready** indicator is lit whenever Power is available in the aisle and the library is ready to perform motion commands from the host.

The Up Arrow push button:

- scrolls the display to show previous line(s).
- moves the cursor (>) up from selection to selection.
- increases the current value to the next value when used in an entry field.

#### The **Down Arrow** push button:

- scrolls the display to show the next line(s).
- moves the cursor (>) down from selection to selection.
- decreases the current value to the previous value when used in an entry field.

#### The Escape push button:

- leaves the current display and returns to the previous display, if it exists.
- moves from the Initial Screen to the Main Menu.



#### The Enter push button:

- selects the current option as the next action to be performed by the library, the cursor
   (>) indicates the chosen option.
- acts as a TAB button to the next required entry field when multiple field entries are being entered. In this case, the button cycles through all the entry locations until the **Accept** option is chosen (with Y).

#### The **Ready** push button:



 transitions the library from a Ready state to Not Ready or Not Ready to the Ready state.

#### The Help push button:

 displays help text for the current selected item if available. In this mode, the Arrow buttons scroll through the help text, and the Escape button is used to exit the help display.



#### LOOK INTO THE AISLE TO MAKE SURE THERE ARE NO OBSTRUCTIONS OR PERSONNEL PRESENT PRIOR TO APPLYING LIBRARY POWER. MOVEMENTS OF MECHANICAL COMPONENTS IN THE LIBRARY CAN CAUSE SERIOUS INJURY.

WoteRefer to Scalar 1000 Operator Guide and Scalar 10K Operator Guide for detailed<br/>description of LCD Operator Screen

Figure 153 Operator Panel Tab for the Scalar 1000

| 🌺 Scalar DLC   |                                       |   |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| Connection Wizards Extended  | Service Help                          |   |
| adic User admin connected  | l to computer                         |   |
| Library Configuration Events   | Service                               |   |
| Select component   | ADIC Scalar 1000<br>02/12/03 15:45:05 |   |
| <ul> <li>14:37 move cartridge 000007</li> <li>14:37 move cartridge 000007 fir</li> <li>14:38 mount cartridge 000011</li> </ul> | ished                                 |   |
| V 14.56 mount cannuge 000011 ii  |                                       | - |

1

## **Cluster Tab**

The Cluster tab shows current Scalar DLC Cluster settings.

Note This tab is available only when the Scalar DLC is installed as a failover (redundant) solution.

When the Scalar DLC software is installed on the host, it can be accessed by this host name (for example, **computer**). In a Cluster solution, there are two ways: either login to the active host (for example, **sdicclust2**) or use a cluster virtual name (for example, **sdiccluster**). It recommended that you use the second way because there is no way to predict what host is active when the customer tries to access the Scalar DLC host.

#### Figure 154 Cluster Tab

| 🌺 Scalar DLC                             |                           |    | × |
|--|---------------------------|----|---|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help |                           |    |   |
| adic User admin connected to sdlcclust2  |                           |    |   |
| Library Configuration Events Service     |                           |    |   |
| Logs Diagnostic Tickets Operator Pane    | Cluster SNMP              |    |   |
| Property                                 | Value                     | ิล | 3 |
| 🗟 Cluster Name                           | SDLCCLUSTER               |    |   |
| Node 1: SDLCCLUST2                       | Active                    |    |   |
| A Node 2: SDLCCLUST1                     | Passive                   |    |   |
| 🗟 State node 1                           | The node is Up            |    |   |
| 🗟 State node 2                           | The node is Down          |    |   |
| 🗟 IP address                             | sdlccluster/192.168.1.215 |    |   |
| •  |                           |    |   |
| 11:33 admin connected to sdlcclust2      |                           |    |   |
|  |                           |    |   |
|  |                           |    |   |
|  |                           |    |   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Cluster name | 8    | Supplied  | The virtual host name used to access both cluster nodes. |
| Node1        | ß    | Supplied  | Cluster Node1 name and status.                           |
| Node2        | ß    | Supplied  | Cluster Node2 name and status.                           |
| State node1  | ß    | Supplied  | Scalar DLC state on Node1.                               |
| State node2  | A    | Supplied  | Scalar DLC state on Node2.                               |

| Field/Button           | lcon      | Operation | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------|--|
| IP address             | 8         | Supplied  | The IP address of the current cluster host.  |
| Change<br>cluster node | <b>\$</b> | Click     | Change active cluster node. The node that is currently active goes down and the node currently passive goes up. Note that this operation will be successful <b>only</b> when <u>both</u> node PCs are running. |
| Help                   | ?         | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

## **SNMP** Tab

The SNMP tab displays current SNMP Service settings.

Νote

This tab is available only when the SNMP Agent service is successfully started on Scalar DLC host PC.

To install the missing SNMP service, use **Control Panel > Add-Remove Windows Components > Management and Monitoring Tools > Simple Network Management Protocol**. Windows 2000 / 2003 system disk is required.

*SNMP* (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a network protocol used to manage TCP/IP networks. In Windows, the SNMP service is used to provide status information about a host on a TCP/IP network.

The SNMP Tab provides the same service as the SNMP Service options (Windows Desktop > Start > Settings > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services > SNMP Service Properties). It contains three additional tabs with the following properties:

- Agents is used to configure the settings for SNMP agents. Refer to Agents on page 216.
- Traps is used to configure the settings for SNMP traps. Refer to <u>Traps</u> on page 217.
- Security is used to configure the settings for SNMP security. Refer to <u>Security</u> on page 219.

## Agents

#### Figure 155 SNMP Agents

| 👙 Scalar DLC  | <u> </u> |  |  |  |  |
|---|----------|--|--|--|--|
| Connection Wizards Extended Service Help  |          |  |  |  |  |
| adic User admin connected to computer   |          |  |  |  |  |
| Library Configuration Events Service  |          |  |  |  |  |
| Logs Diagnostic Tickets Operator Panel Cluster SNMP   |          |  |  |  |  |
| Agents Traps Security   | N        |  |  |  |  |
| Internet management systems may request the contact person,<br>system location, and network services for this computer from<br>the SNMP service |          |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
| Contact:  |          |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
|   | -        |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
| Service   |          |  |  |  |  |
| Physical      Applications      Datalink and subnetwork   |          |  |  |  |  |
| ✓ Internet ✓ End-to-end   |          |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
|   |          |  |  |  |  |
| 15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1     15:59 Inventer for library1 invente completed  | Ê        |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.</li> <li>15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> </ul>             |          |  |  |  |  |
| 15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.   |          |  |  |  |  |

*Agent* is a computer running simple network management protocol (SNMP) agent software. In the Windows implementation of SNMP, agent information includes comments about the user, the physical location of the computer, and the types of service to report, based on the computer's configuration.

| Field/Button     | lcon | Operation    | Description   |
|------------------|------|--------------|---|
| Contact          |      | Enter        | Administrator or user (network account, local or domain) with the SNMP settings managing rights.            |
| Location         |      | Enter        | Physical location of the computer or contact.   |
| Service          |      | Supplied     | SMNP agent service settings   |
| Physical         |      | Do not check | Manage physical devices, such as a hard disk partition.   |
| Internet         |      | Check        | IP gateway (router).  |
| Applications     |      | Check        | Use any applications that send data using the TCP/IP protocol suite. This service should always be enabled. |
| End-to-end       |      | Check        | IP host. This service should always be enabled.   |
| Datalink and sub | net  | Do not check | Manage a bridge.  |
| Update           | P    | Click        | Save SNMP properties after edit.  |
| Start SNMP       |      | Click        | Start SNMP service (active when SNMP service is <i>stopped</i> ).   |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Stop SNMP    |      | Click     | Stop SNMP service (active when SNMP service is <i>started</i> ). |
| Help         | 7    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.                           |

## Traps

Figure 156 SNMP Traps

| Scalar DLC   | <u>_   ×</u> |
|--|--------------|
| adic User admin connected to computer  |              |
| Library         Configuration         Events         Service           Logs         Diagnostic         Tickets         Operator Panel         Cluster         SNMP           Agents         Traps         Security         The SNMP Service provides network management over TCP/IP and IPX/SPX protocols. If traps are required one or more community names must be specified. Trap destinations may be host names. IP addresses or IPX addresses |              |
| Community name Add Remove Trap destinations  |              |
| Add Edit Remove  |              |
| <ul> <li>15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> <li>15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.</li> <li>15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1</li> <li>15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.</li> </ul>   |              |

*Trap* is a message sent by an agent to a management system indicating that an event has occurred on the host running the agent. For example, the SNMP service can be configured to send a trap when it receives a request for information that does not contain the correct community name and does not match an accepted host name for the service.

| Field/Button Icon | Operation       | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------------|---|
| Community name    | Enter/Select    | Community to send traps.  |
| Add               | Click           | Add new Trap community  |
| Remove            | Click           | Remove community from list.   |
| Trap destinations | Click to select | Current trap destinations   |
| Add               | Click           | Add new trap. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 157 on page 218. |

| Field/Button | lcon | Operation | Description  |
|--------------|------|-----------|--|
| Edit         |      | Click     | Edit trap. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 157 on page 218. |
| Remove       |      | Click     | Remove trap.   |
| Update       | Þ    | Click     | Save SNMP properties after edit.   |
| Start SNMP   |      | Click     | Start SNMP service (active when SNMP service is <i>stopped</i> ).                      |
| Stop SNMP    |      | Click     | Stop SNMP service (active when SNMP service is <i>started</i> ).                       |
| Help         | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.   |

SNMP traps can be used for limited security checking. When configured for an agent, the SNMP service generates trap messages any time specific events occur. These messages are sent to a trap destination. For example, an agent can be configured to initiate an authentication trap if a request for information is sent by an unrecognized management system. Trap messages can also be generated for events such as host system startup or shutdown.

Trap destinations consist of the computer name or the IP or IPX address of the management system. The trap destination must be a network-enabled host that is running SNMP management software. Trap destinations can be configured, but the events (such as a system reboot) that generate a trap message are internally defined by the SNMP agent.

Figure 157 SNMP Service Configuration: Trap Destination

| SNMP Service Configuration    | X      |
|-------------------------------|--------|
|                               |        |
|                               |        |
|                               | Add    |
|                               |        |
| Host name, IP or IPX address: | Cancel |
|                               |        |
|                               |        |
|                               |        |

## Security

#### Figure 158 SNMP Security

| 🚔 Scalar DLC  |                    |                |         |        | [ | IJ× |
|---|--------------------|----------------|---------|--------|---|-----|
| Connection Wizards  | Extended Servi     | ice Help       |         |        |   |     |
| adic Useradmi   | in connected to co | omputer        |         |        |   |     |
| Library Configura   | ition Events       | Service        |         |        |   |     |
| Logs Diagnost   | ic Tickets         | Operator Panel | Cluster | BNMP   |   |     |
| Agents Traps  | Security           |                |         |        |   | ø   |
| 🗵 Send authenticatio  | on trap            |                |         |        |   |     |
| Accepted community  | names              |                |         |        |   |     |
|   | Community Rights   |                |         |        |   |     |
| Add Edit Remo   |                    |                | Remove  |        |   |     |
| Accept SNMP packets from any host     O Accept SNMP packets from these hosts  |                    |                |         |        |   |     |
|   |                    |                |         |        |   |     |
|   | Add                | Edit           |         | Remove |   |     |
| 15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1         15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.         15:58 Initializing element status for library Library1         15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed.         15:58 Inventory for library Library1 completed. |                    |                |         |        |   |     |

| Field/Button Icc            | on Operation          | Description   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Send authentication<br>trap | n Check               | Authentication is the process of verifying that a host name or<br>address is valid. When the SNMP agent receives a request<br>that does not contain the correct community name or is not<br>sent from a member of the acceptable host list, the agent<br>sends an authentication trap message to one or more trap<br>destinations (management systems), indicating the failure of<br>authentication. This option is checked by default. |
| Accepted communi<br>names   | ty Click to<br>select | The service requires at least one default community name.<br>'Public' is the common community name that is universally<br>accepted in all SNMP implementations.<br>If an SNMP request is received from a community which is not<br>on this list, it will generate an authentication trap.   |
| Rights                      | Supplied              | A permission level can be selected, determining how the<br>SNMP agent processes requests from a selected community.<br>For example, configure the permission level to block the<br>SNMP agent from processing any requests from a specific<br>community.  |
| Add                         | Click                 | Add new community. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 159 on page 220.  |

| Field/Button           | lcon | Operation | Description   |
|------------------------|------|-----------|---|
| Edit                   |      | Click     | Edit security settings for the community. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 159 on page 220.   |
| Remove                 |      | Click     | Remove community from list.   |
| Accept SNMP<br>packets |      | Select    | From all hosts means that the source host and list of<br>acceptable hosts are the source SNMP management system<br>and the list of acceptable management systems. No SNMP<br>packets are rejected on the basis of the name or address of<br>the source host or the list of acceptable hosts.  |
|                        |      |           | <i>From these hosts</i> means that the acceptable hosts enlisted the acceptable SNMP management systems. When selected, only SNMP packets received from the hosts in this list are accepted. Otherwise, the SNMP message is rejected and an authentication trap sent. This selection provides greater security than using a community name, which might contain many hosts. |
| Add                    |      | Click     | Add new destination. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 157 on page 218.  |
| Edit                   |      | Click     | Edit destination. Pop-up SNMP Service Configuration dialog opens, see Figure 157 on page 218.   |
| Remove                 |      | Click     | Remove destination from list.   |
| Update                 | Ø    | Click     | Save SNMP properties after edit.  |
| Start SNMP             |      | Click     | Start SNMP service (active when SNMP service is stopped).   |
| Stop SNMP              |      | Click     | Stop SNMP service (active when SNMP service is <i>started</i> ).  |
| Help                   | ?    | Click     | Open online help for the current pane.  |



If all the community names will be removed including the default name 'Public', SNMP will not respond to any community names presented.

#### Figure 159 SNMP Service Configuration: Security

| 🚖 SNMP Service Configuration | ×      |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Community rights:            |        |
| NONE                         |        |
|                              | Add    |
| Community name:              | Cancel |
|                              |        |
|                              |        |

9

# **Tools and Utilities**

This chapter describes the Tools and Utilities used as a part of the Scalar DLC software.

The available tools are:

- <u>Database Tool</u> on page 222. Managing the database.
- <u>SCSI Target Port Tool</u> on page 233. Managing SCSI Target Ports/Adapters.
- <u>Cluster Configurator Tool</u> on page 235. Making cluster configuration.
- <u>Problem Report Tool</u> on page 236. Preparing report issues for GCC in case of unusual problems.
- Log Viewer Utility on page 237. Viewing the Scalar DLC log.
- <u>Trace Manager Utility</u> on page 242. Configuring the Scalar DLC trace.
- <u>Trace Viewer Utility</u> on page 246. Tracing the Scalar DLC.
- <u>Scalar DLC Software Licensing</u> on page 248. Requesting and/or installing the Scalar DLC software license.

To launch the tool, right-click on Scalar DLC status icon, or launch a shortcut: **Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC DB Tool.** 

This tool can execute a backup, a compact or a restore of a database, as well as create schedules for the backup and compact jobs. The following functions are offered:

- <u>Database Backup</u> on page 223 is for setting up the automatic database backup or executing a manual backup.
- <u>Extended Mode</u> on page 225 is for setting up the database recovery mode and setting up the transaction logs backup.
- <u>Database Compact</u> on page 228 is for setting up the database compact or executing the same operation manually.
- <u>Database Restore</u> on page 230 is for restoring the database with or without transaction logs from a regular backup, or restoring the database and transaction log from device (file).
- <u>Database Save</u> on page 232 is for saving the database archive excluding the temporary data.

The DB Tool requires a separate log on, as shown in Figure 160.

#### Figure 160 Log On Dialog

| L Server:<br>tabase: | SDLC                |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| tabase:              | SDLC                |
|                      |                     |
|                      | Integrated security |
| er:                  | sa                  |
| ssword:              |                     |
|                      |                     |
|                      | er:<br>ssword:      |

| List        | Operation    | Description   |
|-------------|--------------|---|
| SQL Server  | Enter        | The SQL server name.  |
| Database    | Enter        | The database name, 'SDLC' by default.                                 |
| User        | Supplied     | SQL user with the admin rights (disabled for the trusted connection). |
|             | Enter        |   |
| Password    | Supplied     | SQL user password (disabled for the trusted connection).              |
|             | Enter        |   |
| Integrated  | Check        | The user tries to access the database via trusted connection.         |
| security Do | Do not check | The SQL Server admin name & password are to be specified.             |
| ОК          | Click        | Log on.   |
| Cancel      | Click        | Clear the dialog and end the process.                                 |



Figure 161

PC administrator rights are required to log on the SQL database via the trusted connection.

After the password is accepted and verified, the *Backup* dialog appears. Refer to <u>Database Backup</u> on page 223.

## Database Backup

| Database Backup  |              |
|--|--------------|
| ∭ ScalarDLC Database Service Tool                              | <u> </u>     |
| Backup Extended mode Compact Restore Save                      |              |
| Database: SDLC   | j            |
| _ Automatic backup   |              |
| Destination  |              |
| C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Backup\SDLC_backup |              |
| Time-generated file names                                      |              |
| Schedule   |              |
| Occurs every 1 day(s), at 01:00 AM                             |              |
| Enable schedule  |              |
| Database - Complete     Apply     Remove                       |              |
| Manual backup  |              |
| Destination  |              |
|  |              |
| Execute  |              |
|  |              |
|  |              |
|  | <u>E</u> xit |
|  |              |

| List                      | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------------|-----------|--|
| Database                  | Supplied  | The original database name.  |
| Automatic backup          |           | The automatic (scheduled) backup settings.   |
| Destination               | Supplied  | The backup destination file.<br>The "" button on the left can be used to change the backup<br>folder and enter the file name manually. |
| Time-generated file names | Check     | If the box is checked, the name of the backup file will end with the backup date in typical SQL format (YYYYMMDDHHMMSS).               |
| Schedule                  | Supplied  | Schedule the automatic backup task. See <u>Figure 162</u> on page 224.   |

| List                | Operation | Description  |
|---------------------|-----------|--|
| Enable schedule     | Check     | The schedule is applied only if this box is checked.   |
| Database - complete | Supplied  | Only complete backup is supported in current version.  |
| Apply               | Click     | Apply automatic backup settings.   |
| Remove              | Click     | Remove automatic backup job settings.<br>After remove, all backup settings are lost and the backup must<br>be configured again.        |
| Manual backup       |           | The manual backup settings.  |
| Destination         | Supplied  | The backup destination file.<br>The "" button on the left can be used to change the backup<br>folder and enter the file name manually. |
| Execute             | Click     | Execute the backup to a file.  |
| Exit                | Click     | Exit the dialog without applying any changes.  |

#### Figure 162 Backup Schedule Dialog

| )ccurs          | _ Weekly                                  |
|-----------------|---|
| 🔿 Daily         | Every 1 week(s) on                        |
| Weekly          | 🗖 Mon 🔽 Tue 🗖 Wed 🗖 Thur 🔲 Fri            |
| C Monthly       | 🗖 Sat 🔲 Sun                               |
| aily frequency— |   |
| Occurs once     | at 12:00 AM -                             |
| O Occurs every  | Hour(s) V Starting at: 12:00 AM           |
|                 | Ending at: 11:59 PM                       |
| )uration        |   |
| Start date: Thu | 23/10/2003 - C End date: Wed 29/10/2003 - |
|                 |   |



| List                                | Operation  | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| Daily/ Select<br>Weekly/<br>Monthly | Select   | Daily specifies the job execution days.                                       |
|                                     | Weekly specifies how often (in weeks) and the day for job execution. |   |
|                                     |  | <i>Monthly</i> specifies how often each month or the exact day of each month. |
| Daily<br>Frequency                  | Click  | The single time or period of occurrence.                                      |
| Duration                            | Click  | The start and end date. The end date can be left unspecified.                 |
| ОК                                  | Click  | Accept the input and exit.  |
| Cancel                              | Click  | Clear the dialog and exit.  |
|                                     |  |   |

Note Always schedule different jobs at different times so that they do not overlap and will not conflict with each other.

## **Extended Mode**

The Extended mode page is created to set up the database recovery mode and the log backup schedule.

Figure 163 Database Extended Mode Dialog

| 🗊 ScalarDLC Database Service Tool                                 | _ 🗆 X        |
|---|--------------|
| Backup Extended mode Compact Restore Save                         |              |
| Database: SDLC  | ]            |
| Full recovery mode  |              |
| Destination   |              |
| C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Backup\SDLC_backuplog |              |
| Occurs every 1 day(s), at 01:00 AM                                |              |
| Enable schedule   |              |
|   | Cancel       |
|   |              |
|   |              |
|   |              |
|   |              |
|   | <u>E</u> xit |

| List                             | Operation    | Description   |
|----------------------------------|--------------|---|
| Database                         | Supplied     | The original database name.   |
| Full recovery mode               | Do not check | In full recovery mode the database is back up with all its logs<br>which dramatically increase the size of backup file. Use this<br>mode with caution only. |
| Automatic transaction log backup |              | The database log backup settings.   |
| Destination                      | Supplied     | The log backup destination file.<br>The "" button on the left can be used to change the log<br>backup folder and enter the file name manually.              |
| Schedule                         | Supplied     | Schedule the automatic log backup task. See Figure 164 on page 226.   |
| Enable schedule                  | Check        | The schedule is applied only if this box is checked.  |
| Apply                            | Click        | Accept the input.   |
| Cancel                           | Click        | Clear the dialog.   |
| Exit                             | Click        | Close the dialog without saving the input.  |

#### Figure 164 Backup Log Schedule Dialog

| dit Recurring Job So                       | hedule  |
|--|---|
| Job Name: SDLCB                            | ackUpDBLogJob   |
| Occurs<br>O Daily<br>O Weekly<br>O Monthly | Weekly<br>Every 1 week(s) on<br>Mon I Tue Wed Thur Fri<br>Sat Sun |
| Daily frequency                            | at 12:00 AM   |
| Duration                                   | Ending at: 11:59 PM 😴   |
| Start date: Thu                            | 23/10/2003 • C End date: Wed 29/10/2003 •                         |
|  | OK Cancel   |

| List               | Operation  | Description   |
|--------------------|--|---|
| Job Name           | Supplied   | The original Job name for Backup Logs.  |
| Occurs             | Select   | A daily backup.   |
|                    |  | A weekly backup.  |
|                    |  | A monthly backup.   |
| Daily/             | Select   | Daily specifies the job execution days.   |
| Weekly/<br>Monthly |  | Weekly specifies how often (in weeks) and the day for job execution.  |
|                    |  | <i>Monthly</i> specifies how often each month or the exact day of each month.   |
| Daily<br>Frequency | Click  | The single time or period of occurrence.  |
| Duration           | Click  | The start and end date. The end date can be left unspecified.   |
| ОК                 | Click  | Accept the input and exit.  |
| Cancel             | Click  | Clear the dialog and exit.  |
| 😻 Note             | It is recommen<br>example, if the<br>transaction log | ded to set the log backup rate higher as the database backup rate. For<br>database backup is scheduled once a day, then schedule the database<br>s backup to one an hour or so. |

Note Always schedule different jobs at different times so that they do not overlap and will not conflict with each other.

## **Database Compact**

This feature reduces the Scalar DLC database file size to save the disk space and increase the database usability. The Compact Database operation can be executed only when the Scalar DLC software is *stopped*. Any attempt to execute the operation when the Scalar DLC software is working shall cause an error message.

| Figure 165 | Database | Compact | Dialog |
|------------|----------|---------|--------|
|------------|----------|---------|--------|

| ∭ ScalarDLC Database Service Tool                 |              |
|---|--------------|
| Backup   Extended mode   Compact   Restore   Save |              |
| Database: SDLC                                    | ]            |
| Command   | =            |
| Exe   | ecute        |
| Schedule  |              |
| ✓ Schedule  |              |
| Apply Ca  | ncel         |
|   | <u>E</u> xit |

| List     | Operation | Description  |
|----------|-----------|--|
| Database | Supplied  | The original database name.                            |
| Command  | Supplied  | The command associated with the compact.               |
| Execute  | Click     | Immediate execution of the command.                    |
| Schedule | Check     | Schedule the compact task. See Figure 166 on page 229. |
| Apply    | Click     | Accept the input.                                      |
| Cancel   | Click     | Clear the dialog.                                      |
| Exit     | Click     | Close the dialog without saving the input.             |

Figure 166 Compact Schedule Dialog

| Edit Recurring Job Schedule   | × |
|---|---|
| Job Name: SDLCCompactDBJob  |   |
| Occurs     Daily       © Daily     Every       © Weekly     Monthly   |   |
| Daily frequency         Image: Occurs once at       02:00 AM Image: Occurs once at         Image: Occurs once at       02:00 AM Image: Occurs once at         Image: Occurs once at       Image: Occurs once at |   |
| Duration<br>Start date: Fri 17/10/2003  C End date: Wed 29/10/2003  |   |
| OK  |   |

| Operation | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Supplied  | The original Job name for Compact.  |
| Select    | A daily compact.  |
|           | A weekly compact.   |
|           | A monthly compact.  |
| Select    | Daily specifies the job execution days.                                       |
|           | Weekly specifies how often (in weeks) and the day for job execution.          |
|           | <i>Monthly</i> specifies how often each month or the exact day of each month. |
| Click     | Establish either the single time or period of occurrence.                     |
| Click     | Set the start and end date. The end date can be left unspecified.             |
| Click     | Accept the input and exit.  |
| Click     | Clear the dialog and exit.  |
|           | Operation<br>Supplied<br>Select<br>Select<br>Click<br>Click<br>Click<br>Click |

😻 Note

Always schedule different jobs at different times so that they do not overlap and will not conflict with each other.

## **Database Restore**

This feature imports the Scalar DLC database contents either from the regular backup (databases, see <u>Figure 167</u>) or external file (disk, see <u>Figure 168</u> on page 231). The Restore Database command can be executed only when the Scalar DLC software is stopped. Any attempt to execute the operation when the Scalar DLC software is working shall cause an error message.

Restoring database from backup can also include restoring all transaction logs so not only the configuration but the latest command list will be restored, too.

| 🇊 ScalarDLC Database Service Too   | I                     |                          |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Backup Extended mode Compact       | Restore Save          |                          |
|                                    | 11                    |                          |
| Database:                          | SDLC                  |                          |
|                                    | )                     |                          |
| Restore 💿 Database                 | C From device         |                          |
| Database backups                   |                       |                          |
| Id Backup date                     | Size Back             | up name                  |
| 2 13 Dec 2005 01:00:06:000         | 11362816 SDL0         | BackUpDBJob              |
| 1 12 Dec 2005 13:00:25:000         | 5131776 SDLC          | C_InstalledBackup        |
|                                    |                       |                          |
| Transaction log backups            |                       | Restore with logs        |
|                                    |                       |                          |
|                                    |                       |                          |
| 1                                  |                       |                          |
| Device Name                        |                       |                          |
| C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Ser | ver\MSSQL\Backup\SD   | )LC_backup               |
|                                    |                       |                          |
| Logical file name                  | Move to physical file | e name                   |
| SDLC                               | C:\Program Files\M    | icrosoft SQL Server\MSSG |
| SDLC_log                           | C:\Program Files\M    | icrosoft SQL Server\MSSG |
|                                    |                       |                          |
|                                    |                       | Bestore                  |
|                                    |                       |                          |
|                                    |                       |                          |
|                                    |                       | <u>E</u> xit             |
|                                    |                       |                          |

| Figure 167   | Database | Restore | Dialog | (b۱ | / backup | ) |
|--------------|----------|---------|--------|-----|----------|---|
| i iguio i oi | Datababb | 1000010 | Dialog | (~) | buonup   | 1 |

| List            | Operation |  | Description  |  |
|-----------------|-----------|--|--|--|
| Database        | Supplied  | The original database name.  |  |  |
| Restore         | Select    | <i>Database</i> is for restoring database by previous backup. See <u>Figure</u> <u>167</u> . |  |  |
|                 |           | <i>From Device</i> is for restor page 231.   | oring database from file. See <u>Figure 168</u> on |  |
| Database Select |           | ID   | The backup ID.                                     |  |
| backups         |           | Backup date  | The date and time of the database backup.          |  |
|                 |           | Size   | Database size.                                     |  |
|                 |           | Backup name  | The backup set name.                               |  |

| List                 | Operation |  | Description  |  |
|----------------------|-----------|--|--|--|
| Restore with<br>logs | Check     | Restore the database with transaction logs if checked. |  |  |
| Transaction          | Select    | ID   | The backup ID.   |  |
| log backups          |           | Backup date  | The date and time of the transaction log backup.   |  |
|                      |           | Size   | Transaction log size.  |  |
|                      |           | Backup name  | The transaction log set name.  |  |
| Restore from<br>file | Select    | Device Name  | The name of device (file) to restore the database.                                       |  |
|                      |           |  | The device (file) to restore database from.  |  |
|                      |           | Logical file name                                      | The path to the existing database files.   |  |
|                      |           | Move to physical file<br>name                          | The file names to restore the database (DB and transaction log) can be entered manually. |  |
| Restore              | Click     | Accept the input and restore the database.             |  |  |
| Exit                 | Click     | Close the dialog.                                      |  |  |

## Figure 168 Database Restore Dialog (restore from device)

| 🍏 ScalarDLC    | Database Service Too                           | bl                  |   | _ 🗆 🗵        |
|----------------|--|---------------------|---|--------------|
| Backup E       | tended mode Compact                            | Restore Save        | 1                                       |              |
|                | Database:                                      | SDLC                |   |              |
| Restore        | 🔿 Database                                     | 📀 From de           | vice                                    |              |
| Database       | backups  |                     |   |              |
| Id Bac         | kup date                                       | Size                | Backup name                             |              |
| 2 130<br>1 120 | Dec 2005 01:00:06:000<br>Dec 2005 13:00:25:000 | 11362816<br>5131776 | SDLCBackUpDBJob<br>SDLC_InstalledBackup |              |
| Transactio     | n log backups                                  |                     | 🗖 Resto                                 | re with logs |
|                |  |                     |   |              |
|                |  |                     |   |              |
| ,<br>⊢Device N | ame  |                     |   |              |
| C:\Progra      | m Files\Microsoft SQL Ser                      | ver\MSSQL\Bac       | kup\SDLC_backup                         |              |
| ,              |  |                     |   |              |
| Logical file   | e name   | Move to phy:        | sical file name                         |              |
| SDLC           |  | C:\Program          | Files\Microsoft SQL Serv                | er\MSSG      |
| SDLC_log       | ]  | C:\Program          | Files\Microsoft SQL Serv                | er\MSSG      |
|                |  |                     |   |              |
|                |  |                     | F                                       | Restore      |
|                |  |                     |   |              |
|                |  |                     |   | <u>E</u> xit |

## **Database Save**

This feature creates the archive with the Scalar DLC database backup contents and saves the archive to the destination specified. The database backup however holds only sufficient information, without temporary data (notifications, moves executed, etc.). See <u>Table 26</u>.

| Table 26 | Database Archive |
|----------|------------------|
|----------|------------------|

| Data description   | Saved |
|--|-------|
| Physical libraries data, statistics, media rules, partitions, logical libraries        | Yes   |
| Logical library statistics, pools, mailboxes, drives, cartridges                       | Yes   |
| Clients, client interface settings, reserve and define ranges, aliasing                | Yes   |
| Move commands history, list of notifications sent                                      | No    |
| Users and user settings, registration info; Notification rules, tickets, SNMP settings | Yes   |

#### Figure 169 Database Save Dialog

| 🍏 ScalarDLC D                             | Database Service Tool | _ 🗆 X        |
|---|-----------------------|--------------|
| Backup Extended mode Compact Restore Save |                       |              |
| <u>D</u> atabase:                         | SDLC                  |              |
| <br>Des <u>t</u> ination:                 |                       | Save         |
|   |                       | <u>E</u> xit |

| List        | Operation | Description                   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Database    | Supplied  | The original database name.   |
| Destination | Enter     | The archive file destination. |
| Save        | Click     | Save database to archive.     |
| Exit        | Click     | Close the dialog.             |

## SCSI Target Port Tool

To launch the tool, right-click on Scalar DLC status icon and select **Tools > SCSI Target Port Tool**.

The Scalar DLC SCSI Target Port Tool is designed for operating the system SCSI Target ports. If the SCSI port is currently in Target mode and the customer wants to change it to Initiator, the port must be disabled as Target before enabling it as Initiator. This operation is executed via the SCSI Target Port Tool.

Immediately after the Scalar DLC software and the Target drivers are installed, the SCSI Target ports can be disabled. To make them operational, enable the ports via the SCSI Target Port tool.



Enable <u>only</u> the ports that should operate in Target mode. An attempt to use the Initiator port as a Target may cause a system crash (for example, if the hard disk is connected to the adapter, its port must work in Initiator mode.

Note Do not use two adapters of the same model in different operation modes (Initiator and Target). Otherwise, it is possible to make a mistake and enable an Initiator as a Target.

After disabling the SCSI Target Port, launch the **Device Manager** and enable the SCSI port as an *Initiator*. Restart the system afterwards. Enabling a SCSI port as a *Target* can be done via the SCSI Target Port tool (a reboot may be required).

Figure 170 SCSI Target Port Tool

| ¢ | SCSI Target Port Tool   |                 | ×               |
|---|---|-----------------|-----------------|
| , | Port list:  |                 |                 |
|   | Port  | Туре            | <u>R</u> efresh |
|   | QLogic QLA2200 PCI Fibre Channel A  | Fibre           |                 |
|   | QLogic QLA23xx PCI Fibre Channel Ad<br>Symbios Logic 875XS[D, 2280X PCI S | Fibre<br>Parall | <u>E</u> nable  |
|   |   |                 | <u>D</u> isable |
|   |   |                 | Advanced        |
|   |   |                 |                 |
|   |   |                 |                 |
|   |   |                 |                 |
|   |   |                 | Exit            |
| ľ |   |                 |                 |

| List      | Operation | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|--|
| Port list | Select    | Port is the port full name.  |
|           |           | <i>Type</i> is a port type.  |
|           |           | Status is a port status (enabled/disabled).                            |
| Refresh   | Click     | Refresh the port list.   |
| Enable    | Click     | Enable the disabled SCSI Target port.                                  |
| Disable   | Click     | Disable the enabled SCSI Target port.                                  |
| Advanced  | Click     | Advanced port settings (only for Fibre Channel ports). See Figure 171. |
| Exit      | Click     | Close the SCSI Target Port Tool.                                       |

Figure 171 Advanced Port Settings

| 0                  |           |             |       |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|-------|
| Advanced FC port   | parametei | ' <b>5</b>  | ×     |
| Fail-over mode     |           |             |       |
| ⊻irtual WWN (hex): | 20 12     | 34 56 78 94 | BC DF |
| OK                 |           | Cancel      |       |

| Parameter        | Operation | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|---|
| Failover<br>mode | Check     | Must be checked if the Scalar DLC failover (cluster) solution has been installed. |
| Virtual WWN      | Enter     | Virtual world-wide name that identifies the port from outside.                    |
| ОК               | Click     | Update and exit.  |
| Cancel           | Click     | Exit without update.  |
## **Cluster Configurator Tool**

This tool should be used only for the Scalar DLC installed as a failover (cluster) solution.

Immediately after the Scalar DLC software is installed on both cluster nodes launch the cluster configurator tool. It can be found on the Scalar DLC Installation CD with the following path: Scalar\_DLC\Cluster\SDLC\_ClusterConfig.exe.





Click **Make SDLC Cluster Configuration** to configure Scalar DLC software for a failover mode. When the configuration is completed, the pop-up "Configuration created successfully" window opens. Click **OK** to return to the SDLC Cluster Configurator.

Figure 173 Cluster Configuration Utility: configuration complete

| 🚳 SDLC Cluster Configurator   | × |
|---|---|
| Cluster Information:  |   |
| Cluster Name: SDLC-CLUSTER  |   |
| Windows Version: 5.0  |   |
| Windows build number: 2195  |   |
| Vendor identifier for the Cluster Service: Microsoft(R) Cluster service |   |
| Version of Service Pack: Service Pack 3                                 |   |
| Cluster Node 1: STUDY STATE: The node is Up                             |   |
| Cluster Node 2: LIBRARY STATE: The node is Up                           |   |
| SDLC Cluster Resources configured                                       |   |
| Active NODE: STUDY  |   |
| STATE: The resource is operational and functioning normally             |   |
| Remove SDLC Cluster Configuration                                       |   |

The **Remove SDLC Cluster Configuration** button should be used <u>only</u> to re-configure Scalar DLC software from failover (cluster) to basic (non-cluster) mode. If this is executed on a cluster, the Scalar DLC failover solution will not function. However, the Scalar DLC itself will work in a basic mode (as if it has been installed on standalone PC).

## Problem Report Tool

To start the Report Tool launch a shortcut: **Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC Problem Report Tool.** 

| Figure 174 | Problem | Report | Tool |
|------------|---------|--------|------|
|------------|---------|--------|------|

| 🗧 Scalar DLC problem Report Tool                                   |               | ×    |
|--|---------------|------|
| To report a problem, provide the following<br>Problem description: |               |      |
|  |               |      |
| Expected   |               |      |
|  |               |      |
| Steps to reproduce the   |               |      |
|  |               |      |
|  | Create Report | Exit |
|  |               |      |

Describe the problem step-by-step. Clarify what has been expected and what should be done to reproduce the problem. Then press **Create Report** to save the report file on disk; the report file will include the entered description, the system register, and so forth.

After the report file is saved, it can be sent to the GCC customer support via email.

## Log Viewer Utility

To launch the tool, right-click on the Scalar DLC status icon and select **Tools > Log Viewer**.

| FIGURE 175 LOG VIEWER IVIAIN VVINGOV | Figure 175 | Log | Viewer | Main | Window |
|--------------------------------------|------------|-----|--------|------|--------|
|--------------------------------------|------------|-----|--------|------|--------|

| <b></b>              | 1.log - Log¥iev       | ver       |            |        |             |            |  |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------|------------|--------|-------------|------------|--|
| <u>File View S</u> e | rvice <u>O</u> ptions | Help      |            |        |             |            |  |
| 🗅 🗃 🤋                |                       |           |            |        |             |            |  |
| Date                 | Time                  | Command t | Command ID | Client | Class       | Object     | Description                                |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:54.382          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element status, physical start address |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:54.392          | System    | N/A        | System | NSSnmpCo    | NSSnmpCo   | SNMP agent is not registered               |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:54.533          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:54.693          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element status, physical start address |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:54.903          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:55.374          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:55.734          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:56.045          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:56.295          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element status, physical start address |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:56.455          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:56.806          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 1, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:35:57.146          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get drive information, robot ID 1          |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.117          | System    | N/A        | System | PhysLib     | LibADICSca | Update element status, robot ID 2, update  |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.127          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element address assignment, robot ID   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.237          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element status, physical start address |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.388          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 2, changer   |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.548          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Get element status, physical start address |
| 12/18/2003           | 11:36:58.708          | System    | N/A        | System | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSc  | Read element status, robot ID 2, changer   |
| •                    |                       |           |            |        |             |            | Þ  |
| Ready                |                       |           |            |        |             | Event 141  | 142 event(s)                               |

| lcon | Name             | Description   |
|------|------------------|---|
| 0    | Normal           | Information messages. They usually contain the description of successfully executed operation.  |
| •    | Warning          | Warning messages. Something is not working as it should; however, there is no danger. The Scalar DLC functions are enabled and the operation has finished successfully.               |
| Err  | Error            | Error messages. They typically contain the description of the operation that has been canceled because of error. The error code and description are also contained if they are known. |
| 8    | Critical failure | Critical error messages associated with an error condition that could cause a software or system failure. An immediate action may be required.  |

The Log Viewer tool is designed to view the logs of Scalar DLC software operations if an error situation has appeared and the error content is needed.

When an error occurs, find it in the log (for example, filter to show only errors), look by the command ID in what object the first error has appeared and see the error description and error content by the code. Find where and when the error appears and check the states of appropriate logical and physical libraries, robots, and so forth, in the appropriate period of time. Analyze command type, object, and client fields.

In some cases however the log itself does not contain sufficient information to reproduce the problem. The client database may be required. Open **Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC DB Tool**, select *Backup* tab, save it to a specified location (see <u>Figure 161</u> on page 223) and send the file via email.

The command tracking feature eases the search for an error. See <u>Figure 176</u> for the illustration and <u>Table</u> <u>27</u> on page 239 for the feature description.

| 20051127-1           | Llog - Scalar I      | DLC log viewer |            |         |             |             |                                   | ×        |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|------------|---------|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| <u>File View Ser</u> | vice <u>O</u> ptions | Help           |            |         |             |             |                                   |          |
| 🗋 🗃 Ta               | TP Ts 🔭              | ?              |            |         |             |             |                                   |          |
| Date                 | Time                 | Command type   | Command ID | Client  | Class       | Object      | Description                       |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:12.730         | DRIVESTATU     | 43782      | Void    | DasClient   | Void        | Started: client='Void' drive="    |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:13.386         | DRIVESTATU     | 43782      | Void    | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:21.682         | DRIVESTATU     | 43783      | Turmoil | DasClient   | Turmoil     | Started: client=" drive="         |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:22.464         | DRIVESTATU     | 43783      | Turmoil | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:23.495         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | DasClient   | Void        | Started: drive='DR8205' drive st  | e        |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:24.448         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | PhysLib     | LibADICScal | Move cartridge to element, cartr  | ic 👘     |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:24.495         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Move medium, physical source ad   | ł        |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:24.510         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Single changer move, changer nu   | <b>1</b> |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:24.510         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Move changer medium, robot ID     | 2        |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:30.979         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | VirSingle   | Unitree     | VirSingle::Success                |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:31.042         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43784      | Void    | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:31.120         | VIEW (DAS)     | 43785      | Turmoil | DasClient   | Turmoil     | Started: volser='AA0307' media    | t        |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:31.917         | VIEW (DAS)     | 43785      | Turmoil | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:31.932         | DRIVESTATU     | 43786      | Turmoil | DasClient   | Turmoil     | Started: client='Turmoil' drive=" |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:32.651         | DRIVESTATU     | 43786      | Turmoil | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:42.760         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | DasClient   | Turmoil     | Started: drive='DR4128' drive st  |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:43.698         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | PhysLib     | LibADICScal | Move cartridge to element, cartr  | ic       |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:43.729         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Move medium, physical source as   | <u>.</u> |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:43.760         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Single changer move, changer nu   |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:43.760         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | Scalar10KDA | DevADICSca  | Move changer medium, robot ID     | 1        |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:50.791         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | VirSingle   | Unitree     | VirSingle::Success                |          |
| 127.11.2005          | 19:37:50.885         | FORCE2 (DAS)   | 43787      | Turmoil | DasRpc      | DASRpc      | Finished: code=0 message="        |          |
| 11 200€              | 10.90.00 000         | UTEW /NAC)     | 10700      | Turmoil | Declient    | Turnoil     | Started: volcor='0.00226' modia   | ۲.       |
| Ready                |                      |                |            |         | Event       | 36743 413   | 38 event(s)                       | 1.       |

Double-click on the log message to display the event context (see Figure 177).

### Figure 177 View Event



The menu operations available in Log Viewer Utility are shown in <u>Table 27</u> on page 239. Note that some operations are also available via the tool bar buttons and/or keyboard shortcuts.

| Menu    | Description  | Button | Shortcut            |
|---------|--|--------|---------------------|
| File    | • <i>Current</i> - open the current (latest) Scalar DLC log file in its default location.  | Ľ      | <ctrl+c></ctrl+c>   |
|         | Open - browse for the log.   | Ē      | <ctrl+o></ctrl+o>   |
|         | Exit - close the Log viewer tool.  |        |                     |
| View    | • <i>Current event context</i> - open the details for the selected event (see Figure 177 on page 238).   |        | <enter></enter>     |
|         | • Show/hide tool bar - show or hide the toolbar.   |        |                     |
|         | • Show/hide status bar - show or hide the status bar.  |        |                     |
|         | Refresh - refresh the current log.   |        | <f5></f5>           |
| Service | Result description, as indicated by Figure 178 on page 240 - lookup for the error code description.  |        |                     |
|         | Search, as shown in <u>Figure 179</u> on page 240 - search engine.   |        | <ctrl+f3></ctrl+f3> |
|         | • Search next - search for the same item again.  |        | <f3></f3>           |
|         | Goto event, as shown in Figure 180 on page 240 - go to certain event.  |        | <f4></f4>           |
|         | <ul> <li>Track active item / stop tracking - track the command<br/>of the selected event. All events for the command will<br/>be shown in light-green color.<br/>Selecting another event in the log results the tracking<br/>of another command.<br/>Click the button again to stop tracking.</li> </ul>   | Ta     |                     |
|         | <ul> <li>Track item / stop tracking - select the event to track.<br/>All events for the command will be shown in light-<br/>green color.<br/>Selecting another event will NOT move the tracking.<br/>Click the button again to stop tracking.</li> </ul>   | TP     | <ctrl+a></ctrl+a>   |
|         | <ul> <li>Track secondary item / stop tracking - select the secondary event to track (when it is required to track more that one command). All events for the secondary command will be shown in dark-yellow color, then in blue, then in pink (see Figure 176 on page 238). Tracing only up to three secondary commands is allowed (tracking the fourth command results removing the tracking of the first one). Selecting another event will NOT move the tracking. Click the button again to stop tracking.</li> </ul> | Ts     | <ctrl+d></ctrl+d>   |
|         | Cancel tracking - stop all tracking.   | ж      |                     |
| Options | Logging, as shown in Figure 181 on page 240  |        |                     |
|         | Filtering, as shown in Figure 182 on page 241.   |        |                     |
|         | Viewing, as shown in Figure 183 on page 241.   |        |                     |
| Help    | About - Log Viewer current version.  | 8      |                     |

### **Table 27**Log Viewer Operations

Figure 178 Result Description

| Query re | sult | ×              |
|----------|------|----------------|
| Enter    |      | Lookup         |
|          |      | <u>C</u> ancel |

Enter the error number (for example, 0x0000005) and click **Lookup** to see the error content (in the example code, *Access is denied*).

### Figure 179 Search

| Search             |                         | ×              |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| S <u>t</u> ring:   |                         | <u>S</u> earch |
| <u>D</u> irection: | Down 🔽 🗖 Case sensitive | Cancel         |

Typical search engine. Enter the string to find, specify options and click **Search**.

Figure 180 Goto Event

| Goto event        | ×              |
|-------------------|----------------|
| Event number: 🚺 🛨 | <u>G</u> o     |
|                   | <u>C</u> ancel |
|                   |                |

The Goto event pane allows user to jump on event with the specified number.

Figure 181 Logging Options

| Logging options                | ×              |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| Log path: C:\Program Files\ADI | C\SDLC\WWW\Log |
| Age limit, days: 🛐 📑           |                |
| Size limit, KB: 5120           | <u>0</u> K     |
| Extended SCSI Log              | Cancel         |

| List                 | Operation    | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------|--|
| Log path             | Supplied     | The log file path.   |
| Age limit,<br>days   | Enter        | The age limit in days. Only natural numbers are allowed. All the log files older than the age limit will be removed automatically at midnight. "0" means "no age limit."   |
| Size limit, KB       | Enter        | The size limit in KB. Only natural numbers are allowed. If the log file size exceeds the size limit, the new log file is created for current session. "0" means "no size limit."   |
| Extended<br>SCSI log | Do not check | When the box is <u>checked</u> , in no more than 180 sec all Scalar DLC objects will log the extended SCSI data concerning executed operation (CDB, command ID, etc.). The size of log file greatly increases, so use this feature only when the SCSI communications work unstable and there is needed to locate the weak phase. |
| OK                   | Click        | Save the options and exit this pane.   |
| Cancel               | Click        | Close the pane without saving the changed options.   |

### Figure 182 Filtering Options

| Filtering options            | ×              |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| Show information messages    | <u>0</u> K     |
| ✓ Show warning messages      | <u>C</u> ancel |
| Show error messages          |                |
| Show critical error messages |                |

| List                         | Operation | Description                                       |
|------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Show information messages    | Check     | Normal messages are shown.                        |
| Show warning messages        | Check     | Warning messages are shown.                       |
| Show error messages          | Check     | Error messages are shown.                         |
| Show critical error messages | Check     | Critical error messages are shown.                |
| ОК                           | Click     | Save the options and exit this pane.              |
| Cancel                       | Click     | Close the pane without saving the changed options |
|                              |           |   |

Figure 183 Viewing Options

| Viewing options                   | 2              | × |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Automatic refresh for current log | <u>0</u> K     |   |
|                                   | <u>C</u> ancel |   |

Check the box to auto-refresh the current log.

## **Trace Manager Utility**

To launch the tool, right-click on Scalar DLC status icon and select **Tools > Trace Manager**.

Trace Manager tool is designed for tracing the execution of Scalar DLC software objects.

**CAUTION** Tracing the Scalar DLC slows its work as well as the work of client backup applications that use the Scalar DLC as server software. The higher is the configured trace level the slower is the work of the Scalar DLC itself, so use the tracing feature <u>only</u> when needed.

Figure 184 Trace Manager Main Window

| Trace manager                    |                     |             |                               |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Scalar DLC started: Yes Tra      | acing active: No St | art time:   |                               |
| Description:                     |                     |             |                               |
| Groups                           | Classes             | Objects     |                               |
| ✓ Client                         | A1Client            |             |                               |
| Connection                       | Aml                 |             |                               |
|                                  | AmlS                |             |                               |
|                                  | CleanManager        |             |                               |
| Notification server              | DasClient           |             |                               |
| Physical library                 |                     |             |                               |
|                                  |                     |             |                               |
|                                  |                     |             |                               |
| Virtual libraru                  |                     |             |                               |
|                                  |                     | <u> </u>    |                               |
| Level                            | L <u>e</u> vel      | <u>A</u> dd | <u>R</u> emove Le <u>v</u> el |
| <u>S</u> tart Stop <u>U</u> pdat | e <u>O</u> ptions   |             | E <u>x</u> it                 |

| Field/Button       | Operation | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|--|
| Scalar DLC started | Supplied  | Shows Yes if the Scalar DLC is started, No if it is stopped.                                       |
| Tracing Active     | Supplied  | Shows Yes if the Tracing process is started, No if it is not.                                      |
| Start time         | Supplied  | Shows the start time and current time for the Tracing process.                                     |
| Description        | Supplied  | Shows the description of current tracing process.  |
| Groups             | Check     | The object groups list. If the selected group is checked, the button <b>Level</b> becomes active.  |
| Level              | Click     | Choose the sensitivity level for the tracing current group. See Figure 185 on page 243.            |
| Classes            | Check     | The object classes list. If the selected class is checked, the <b>Level</b> button becomes active. |
| Level              | Click     | Choose the sensitivity level for the tracing current class. See Figure 186 on page 243.            |
| Objects            | Check     | The objects list. If the selected object is checked, the <b>Level</b> button becomes active.       |
| Add                | Click     | Adds the objects for tracing. See Figure 187 on page 244.  |

| Field/Button | Operation | Description   |
|--------------|-----------|---|
| Remove       | Click     | Removes the objects from tracing list.  |
| Level        | Click     | Chooses the sensitivity level for the tracing current object. See Figure 189 on page 244. |
| Start        | Click     | Start the tracing. See Figure 190 on page 245.  |
| Stop         | Click     | Stop the tracing.   |
| Update       | Click     | Save the current trace manager options as default.  |
| Options      | Click     | Show the trace manager options pane. See Figure 191 on page 245.                          |
| Exit         | Click     | Close the pane without saving the changed options.  |

### Figure 185 Group Level

Figure 186 Class Level

| Group le       | vel     | ×              |
|----------------|---------|----------------|
| Group:         | Client  | <u>0</u> K     |
| <u>L</u> evel: | Level 1 | <u>C</u> ancel |

| List   | Operation | Description   |
|--------|-----------|---|
| Group  | Supplied  | Group name.   |
| Level  | Select    | The sensitivity level where one is minimum and five is maximum. |
| ОК     | Click     | Save the options and exit this pane.                            |
| Cancel | Click     | Close the pane without saving the changed options.              |
|        |           |   |

 Class level
 X

 Class:
 Database

 Level:
 Level 1

| List   | Operation | Description   |
|--------|-----------|---|
| Class  | Supplied  | Class name.   |
| Level  | Select    | The sensitivity level where one is minimum and five is maximum. |
| ОК     | Click     | Saves the options and exit this pane.                           |
| Cancel | Click     | Closes the pane without saving the changed options.             |

### Figure 187 Add Object

| Add object           |         | X                |
|----------------------|---------|------------------|
| <u>O</u> bject       |         | ∆dd              |
| <u>T</u> race level: | Level 1 | <u>C</u> ancel   |
|                      |         | <u>E</u> xisting |

| List        | Operation | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|--|
| Object      | Enter     | Object name.   |
| Trace level | Select    | The sensitivity level where one is minimum and five is maximum.  |
| Add         | Click     | Add object and close the pane.                                   |
| Cancel      | Click     | Close the pane without adding object.                            |
| Existing    | Click     | Choose the existing object to trace. See Figure 188 on page 244. |

### Figure 188 Add Existing Object



| List         | Operation    | Description                               |
|--------------|--------------|---|
| Object list  | Select       | The objects to add.                       |
| ОК           | Click        | Add the selected object.                  |
| Cancel       | Click        | Close the pane without adding the object. |
| Figure 189 C | Dbject Level |   |

| Object trace level 🛛 |          |                |  |
|----------------------|----------|----------------|--|
| <u>O</u> bject       | Database | <u>S</u> et    |  |
| <u>T</u> race level: | Level 1  | <u>C</u> ancel |  |

| List   | Operation | Description   |
|--------|-----------|---|
| Object | Supplied  | Object name.  |
| Level  | Select    | The sensitivity level where one is minimum and five is maximum. |
| Set    | Click     | Save the options and exit this pane.                            |
| Cancel | Click     | Close the pane without saving the changed options.              |

### Figure 190 Start Tracing

| Start tracing | ×              |
|---------------|----------------|
| Desrciption:  |                |
| <u>Start</u>  | <u>C</u> ancel |

| List        | Operation | Description                                     |
|-------------|-----------|---|
| Description | Enter     | The tracing description should be entered here. |
| Start       | Click     | Start the tracing process.                      |
| Cancel      | Click     | Close the pane without starting the tracing.    |

### Figure 191 Tracing Options

| Tracing options                           | ×     |
|---|-------|
| Common                                    |       |
| Path to folder for trace                  |       |
| C:\Program Files\ADIC\SDLC\WWW\Trace      |       |
| Maximum size for single trace file, KB: 0 |       |
| Activate tracing at Scalar DLC start      |       |
|   |       |
|   |       |
|   |       |
|   |       |
|   |       |
|   |       |
| OK Cancel                                 | Apply |

| List                                    | Operation | Description   |
|---|-----------|---|
| Path to folder for trace                | Enter     | A trace path\ADIC\SDLC\WWW\Trace is the default path.   |
| Maximum size for single trace file, KB  | Enter     | The size limit in KB is shown here. Natural numbers are allowed only.<br>If the trace file size exceeds the size limit, the new trace file is created for current session. '0' means 'no size limit'. |
| Activate tracing at<br>Scalar DLC start | Check     | Check if the tracing should start automatically when Scalar DLC supervisor starts.  |
| ОК                                      | Click     | Save options and close the pane.  |
| Cancel                                  | Click     | Close the pane without saving options.  |
| Apply                                   | Click     | Set the current tracing options as default.   |

## **Trace Viewer Utility**

To launch the tool, right-click on Scalar DLC status icon and select Tools > Trace Viewer.

The Trace Viewer tool is designed for viewing the trace files generated by <u>Trace Manager Utility</u> on page 242 during execution of the Scalar DLC software.

| 01C2D780E             | 101C2D780BABCDB40 1 - TraceViewer |         |         |          |          |  |       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|--|-------|
| <u>File ⊻iew H</u> e  | lp                                |         |         |          |          |  |       |
| D 😅 🤶                 |                                   |         |         |          |          |  |       |
| Date                  | Time                              | Level   | Group   | Class    | Object   | Text                                   |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.045                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting CommitDBTransaction()          |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.045                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting PutContext()                   |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.045                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in GetTemplateForObjectWithText()      |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.055                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting GetTemplateForObjectWithText() |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.055                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in GetTemplateForObjectWithText()      |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.055                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting GetTemplateForObjectWithText() |       |
| 1 18.02.2003          | 19:06:23.065                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in ListContextEx()                     |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.085                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting ListContextEx()                |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.085                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in GetTemplateForObjectWithText()      |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.085                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting GetTemplateForObjectWithText() |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.095                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in GetTemplateForObject()              |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.095                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting GetTemplateForObject()         |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.095                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in TargetCartridgesList()              |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.105                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting TargetCartridgesList()         |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.776                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | in GetSystemInformation()              |       |
| 18.02.2003            | 19:06:23.846                      | 1       | Service | Database | Database | exiting GetSystemInformation()         |       |
| 18 02 2003            | 10-06-23-846                      | 1       | Sarvica | Natahaca | Databace | in Cell ihrerv()                       |       |
| Name                  | Data                              |         |         |          |          |  |       |
| 🛃 <text></text>       | in ListCont                       | extEx() |         |          |          |  |       |
| 闘 <raw data=""></raw> |                                   |         |         |          |          |  |       |
|                       |                                   |         |         |          |          |  |       |
|                       |                                   |         |         |          |          |  |       |
| Ready                 |                                   |         |         |          |          |  | _ //. |

| Figure 192 | Trace | Viewer  | Main | Window |
|------------|-------|---------|------|--------|
|            | 11000 | 1101101 |      |        |

### Menu

### Description

File Typical trace-file operations: current, open, exit.

View Viewer options: show current record context using <Enter> (see Figure 193 on page 247), show tool bar, show status bar, refresh using <F5>.

Help Trace Viewer current version.

Double-click on the trace record to display the trace in a more detailed form (Figure 193 on page 247).

| View tra  | ce record                                   |
|-----------|---|
| 1         | Level 1 Date: 18.02.2005 Time: 19:06:23.065 |
| Group:    | Service                                     |
| Class:    | Database                                    |
| Object:   | Database                                    |
| Raw da    | ta 0 Named data 0                           |
| Text:     |   |
| in ListCo | ontextEx()                                  |
|           | Close                                       |

| List       | Operation | Description   |
|------------|-----------|---|
| Level      | Supplied  | The sensibility level needed to trace the event. The level is also shown inside the color icon. |
| Date       | Supplied  | Record date.  |
| Time       | Supplied  | Record time.  |
| Group      | Supplied  | Group name.   |
| Class      | Supplied  | Class name.   |
| Object     | Supplied  | Object name.  |
| Raw data   | Supplied  | The binary record data.   |
| Named data | Supplied  | The text record data.   |
| Text       | Supplied  | Record text.  |
| Close      | Click     | Close the pane.   |

The Scalar DLC software will run for a "grace period" of 30 days after installation without a license. Thereafter, a license key is required to keep the software running. This key should be obtained by contacting GCC before the 30-days trial period expires.

To request a license, contact GCC by either email or fax.

- Send the license request by email from the license application module.
- Print the license request text file, license.lic, and provide the file to GCC.

The Licensing tool is used for both Scalar DLC Basic solution (<u>Standard License</u> on page 248 and Failover solution (<u>Cluster License</u> on page 253).

## **Standard License**

Refer to Obtaining License on page 248 to request a Scalar DLC license.

The license request can be sent either by email or fax. For a fax, the file is located at <%SystemDrive%>\Program Files\ADIC\SDLC\docs\license.lic.

Once the license request is received and is validated, a license string is sent back to the sender to be entered into Scalar DLC software.

Refer to Installing License on page 252 for registering the Scalar DLC license.

### **Obtaining License**

The Scalar DLC license request can be resolved in one of two ways. During the installation process, execute the ADIC Licensing application and click **Request**.

The Licensing dialog is also available through **Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > ADIC Licensing.** 

Figure 194 Licensing Dialog

| License operations |          |
|--------------------|----------|
| Request a license  | Request  |
|                    |          |
| Install a license  | Register |
|                    |          |
|                    |          |

| List     | Operation | Description  |
|----------|-----------|--|
| Request  | Click     | Request a license string. See Figure 196 on page 249.                          |
| Register | Click     | Install the license string. See Figure 200 on page 252.                        |
| Cancel   | Click     | Clear the dialog and exit.   |
| About    | Click     | Provide a brief description of the license wizard. See Figure 195 on page 249. |

### Figure 195 About License

| About ADIC 9 | 5oftware LicenseWizard  | × |
|--------------|---|---|
|              | ADIC Software License Wizard<br>Version 1.2<br>Copyright (C) 1997-2002 ADIC, Inc. |   |
|              | OK  |   |

At the first step of License request process the customer must choose the license request file.

### Figure 196 License Request File

| ADIC Software LicenseWizard - Step 2 of 4  | × |
|--|---|
| Enter the name of the license request file that you want to send to ADIC customer support. | ] |
| C:\Program Files\ADIC\SDLC\docs\license.lic Browse   |   |
| < Back Next >  | ] |

| List                    | Operation | Description  |
|-------------------------|-----------|--|
| License<br>Request File | Enter     | The license request file name and path. The default file is <%SystemDrive%>\Program Files\ADIC\SDLC\docs\license.lic |
| Browse                  | Click     | Browse for the license request file.   |
| Back                    | Click     | Return to the previous dialog  |
| Next                    | Click     | Open the next dialog pane.   |

The next step is the Licensing Review.

| Figure 197 | Licens | ing Reviev           | w                                      |                               |
|------------|--------|----------------------|--|-------------------------------|
|            |        | ADIC Softwa          | are LicenseWizard - Step 3 of 4        | ×                             |
|            |        | ⊢ Product Inf        | formation                              | 2/19/2003 1:59 PM             |
|            |        | Scalar DLC           | CVersion 2.4.0002                      | Product<br>Serial #: DLC12345 |
|            |        | Customer I           | nformation                             |                               |
|            |        | Company:             | organization                           | Contact: user                 |
|            |        | Address:             |  | Email:                        |
|            |        |                      |  | Phone:                        |
|            |        |                      | Please add me to the ADIC mailing list | Fax:                          |
|            |        | -Windows N           | NT Support Information                 |                               |
|            |        | Operating<br>System: | Windows 2000                           | Service Pack:                 |
|            |        | Libraries:           | ADIC Scalar 10K                        |                               |
|            |        |                      | < Back Clear                           | Save File Only Send Email >   |

| List                 | Operation | Description  |
|----------------------|-----------|--|
| Product Information  | Supplied  | Scalar DLC version is shown here.                                  |
| Product Serial #     | Enter     | Scalar DLC serial number.  |
| Customer Information | Supplied  | Customer information obtained from Scalar DLC Database.            |
| Company              | Supplied  | Company name.  |
| Address              | Supplied  | Company address.   |
| Contact              | Supplied  | Contact person.  |
| Email                | Supplied  | Contact email address.   |
| Phone                | Supplied  | Contact phone number.  |
| Fax                  | Supplied  | Contact fax number.  |
| GCC mailing list     | Supplied  | Add user to the GCC mailing list.                                  |
| Support Information  | Supplied  | Windows NT/2000/2003 Support Information.                          |
| Operating System     | Supplied  | Operating system version.  |
| Service Pack         | Supplied  | Service pack currently installed.                                  |
| Libraries            | Supplied  | Licensed libraries.  |
| Back                 | Click     | Return to the previous dialog.                                     |
| Clear                | Click     | Clear all editable fields.   |
| Save File Only       | Click     | Save license request to file and exit. See Figure 199 on page 251. |
| Send Email           | Click     | Send license request to GCC via email. See Figure 198.             |

### Tools and Utilities



### Figure 198 Send License via Email

| To:          | techsup@adic.com         |          |
|--------------|--------------------------|----------|
| From:        |                          |          |
| Subject:     | Customer license request |          |
| SMTP Server: |                          | Port: 25 |

| List           | Operation | Description   |
|----------------|-----------|---|
| Message header | Supplied  | Email parameters for sending email.                     |
| То             | Enter     | Email receiver.   |
| From           | Enter     | Sender email. Contact email is the default.             |
| Subject        | Enter     | Email subject. Customer license request is the default. |
| SMTP server    | Enter     | SMTP server name.                                       |
| Port           | Enter     | SMTP port.  |
| Back           | Click     | Return to the previous dialog                           |
| Send           | Click     | Send email and finish. See Figure 199.                  |

AUTION

Changing the editable fields is possible, but not recommended.

### Figure 199 Licensing Before Installation



### **Installing License**

After obtaining the License string from GCC support, perform the following:

- **Step 1** <u>Before</u> applying the license make sure the Scalar DLC service is *stopped*.
- Step 2 Launch ADIC Licensing through Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > ADIC Licensing. See Figure 194 on page 248.
- Step 3 Press Register. The Register wizard starts with the Authorization string dialog. See Figure 200.
- **Step 4** Follow the steps as they are described.
- **Step 5** Restart the Scalar DLC supervisor for the changes to take effect.

### Figure 200 Authorization String

| ADIC Software LicenseWizard - Step 2 of 4                                    |
|--|
| - Installation Information   |
| Enter the Authorization String that you received from ADIC customer support: |
|  |
| Enter the Serial Number that is on the product package:<br>DLC12345          |
| < Back Next >  |

| List                 | Operation | Description                                       |
|----------------------|-----------|---|
| Authorization string | Enter     | The authorization string must be entered here.    |
| Serial number        | Enter     | The Scalar DLC serial number must be entered here |
| Back                 | Click     | Return to the previous dialog.                    |
| Next                 | Click     | Open the next dialog pane. See Figure 201.        |

### Figure 201 Time-based License

| ADIC Software LicenseWizard - Time-based license            |   |
|---|---|
| Please verify that the information below is correct.        |   |
| If it is not correct, please contact ADIC Customer Support. |   |
| Temporary Time-based License                                |   |
| Duration: 6 Months  |   |
| ,   |   |
| < Back Next   | > |
| <u></u>   |   |

Note Although the typical license is permanent, it may be only time-based. This means that after the specified period of time, the Scalar DLC software will not function unless a new license is installed.

| List     | Operation | Description                                       |
|----------|-----------|---|
| Duration | Supplied  | The Scalar DLC software duration period (months). |
| Back     | Click     | Return to the previous dialog.                    |
| Next     | Click     | Open the next dialog pane. See Figure 202.        |

### Figure 202 Finishing License

| ADIC Software LicenseWizard - St | tep 4 of 4                  |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| That's all Click Finish to       | o register the new license. |
| Changes will be                  | e effective immediately.    |
| < Back                           | Abort Finish                |
|                                  | -                           |

When the license is installed, the tape device must be online. Otherwise, the license will not be applied.



# After the license string is installed, restart the Scalar DLC service for the changes to take effect.

### **Cluster License**

Although there is no special license wizard for Scalar DLC Failover solution, a special sequence must be performed in order to install the license for the cluster.

Step 1 Start Scalar DLC software on Node1. Request the license. Refer to Obtaining License on page 248. Step 2 Send the license request file to customer support. The authorization string (string1) will be returned. Step 3 Change the active node to Node2. Request the license here as well. Refer to Obtaining License on page 248. Step 4 Send the license request file to customer support. The authorization string (string2, different from string1) will be returned. Step 5 Register the license on Node1 with the string1. Refer to Installing License on page 252. Take the Scalar DLC supervisor offline, so the active node will be changed to Node2. Step 6 Register the license on Node2 with the string2. Refer to Installing License on page 252. Take

the Scalar DLC supervisor offline, so the active node will be changed back to Node1.

# А

# **Application Notes**

This topic contains the following important information.

- Glossary on page 255 provides the glossary of significant terms.
- <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260 describes the element addressing.
- Application Notes on page 263 shows the media and element types and enlists the error codes.

## Glossary

Table below contains all specific terms used throughout the document and their brief explanation.

### Table 28 Terms

| Term           | Explanation  |  |  |
|----------------|--|--|--|
| Adapter        | The hardware (card) for the SCSI or FC connection. Also required for the connection between the Scalar DLC host and the tape device. The adapter for the library connection operates in the <i>Initiator</i> mode. The client connection requires that the adapter(s) operating mode should be <i>Target</i> . |  |  |
| admin          | The default Scalar DLC user who has an Admin access level.   |  |  |
| Admin          | The Scalar DLC user level with the greatest access rights.<br>Also refer to <i>Administrator</i> .   |  |  |
| Administrator  | <i>Local Administrator</i> or <i>Domain Administrator</i> is the access right granted to the Windows 2000/2003 user. Contact the network administrator for details.  |  |  |
| aisle          | Same as <i>Robot</i> .   |  |  |
| atac           | The default Scalar DLC user with CE access level. Cannot be removed.   |  |  |
| Barcode        | The label on cartridge where its name (volser) is written. Also usually contains the cartridge media type (for example, 3590).   |  |  |
| Barcode reader | The built-in robotic device that scans the cartridge barcode.  |  |  |
| Cartridge      | Typically means Data cartridge.  |  |  |

| Term               | Explanation   |  |  |
|--------------------|---|--|--|
| CE                 | The Management GUI user level with the rights of ticket manipulation. Also refer to <i>Customer engineer</i> .  |  |  |
| Clean pool         | A logical set of cleaning cartridges (single media type only). It should be assigned to the appropriate drive to perform the <b>drive cleaning</b> operation, either manually or automatic.                           |  |  |
| Cleaning cartridge | The tool that has overall dimensions of a data cartridge that performs the drive cleaning operations.   |  |  |
| Cleaning medium    | Same as Cleaning cartridge.   |  |  |
| Client             | Either a person or backup application that is connected to the Scalar DLC via the client interface. Each client is assigned to a logical library, and from the client side this library appears as the actual device. |  |  |
| Client interface   | The method of the client-send and client-received commands interpretation.<br>Three client interfaces are available: <i>SCSI</i> , <i>DAS</i> , and <i>ROBAR</i> .  |  |  |
| Command log        | The list of commands executed by the Physical library.  |  |  |
| Customer engineer  | eer A person (usually from GCC) that is responsible for the service maintenance   |  |  |
| dasadmin           | The application provided represents the client part of the DAS interface, as was the Scalar DLC software that represents the server part.   |  |  |
| DAS                | Distributed Automatic media library Server. A widely used client interface.<br>Requires only valid TCP/IP connection between server (Scalar DLC host) and client PC.  |  |  |
| Data cartridge     | The data carrier. Depending on the media type, it provides a different amount of data (for example, LTO cartridge can hold up to 10 Gb).  |  |  |
| Dismount           | The operation of moving a single cartridge from drive to a home position. Some drive models require <i>Unload</i> to be executed before this operation.   |  |  |
| Drive              | The slot designed to temporary store a data cartridge and execute read/write operations from/to it.   |  |  |
| Drive slot         | Same as <i>Drive</i> .  |  |  |
| Dual-aisle         | The physical library with two robots. Contains at least one storage tower that can be accessed by both robots.  |  |  |
| EIF, E/I/F         | Export/Import Frame. Same as Mailbox.   |  |  |
| Eject              | The operation of move the cartridge(s) from storage or drive to <i>Mailbox</i> . Each cartridge will be either <i>ejected</i> or <i>unloaded</i> .  |  |  |
| Element            | Same as <i>Slot</i> .   |  |  |
| Error log          | The list of errors that the <i>Physical library</i> has encountered.  |  |  |
| Event              | Any action performed by the Scalar DLC, for example, "move medium" or "start the software service". Every event is shown in the <i>Scalar DLC log</i> .   |  |  |

### Table 28 Terms (Continued)

| Term  | Explanation  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| Event notification  | When the specific event has occurred, the Scalar DLC can sent an appropriate message to the customer via email or Management GUI. The message format depends on the appropriate <i>Event rule</i> .            |  |  |
| Event rule  | A pre-defined pattern that selects the specific event from all actions that have occurred. It can also send a notification to the specified destination. See also <i>Event</i> and <i>Event notification</i> . |  |  |
| Export  | Same as <i>Eject</i> .   |  |  |
| FC  | Same as Fibre Channel.   |  |  |
| Fibre Channel   | An optical connection operating with the SCSI protocol. Currently has the largest carrying capacity among all other interfaces and virtually no distance limitations. Also refer to SCSI.                      |  |  |
| GCC   | Global Call Center. The customers should contact GCC in case of any problems.  |  |  |
| GUI log   | The list of notification messages visible to all users who are currently logged or the Management GUI. No archive available.   |  |  |
| HCC/MVS   | <ul> <li>Also called HACC/MVS. Host (Automatic) Control Component / Multiple Virt</li> <li>Storage. Some installations use this software solution on MVS platforms in addition to the ROBAR client.</li> </ul> |  |  |
| Home position   | The slot (typically a storage slot) where the cartridge will be automatically returned after <i>Insert</i> and <i>Dismount</i> commands are executed.  |  |  |
| I/O unit  | t Input/Output unit. The device that contains a pack of insert/eject slots which can be accessed from outside the library only as a single unit. The physical library usually contain several I/O units.       |  |  |
| Import  | Same as Insert.  |  |  |
| Insert  | The operation that moves the cartridge(s) from the insert/eject area to the storage area. Each cartridge is placed into the home position.   |  |  |
| Insert/eject area   | All available insert/eject (mailbox) slots in the library.   |  |  |
| Insert/eject slot The slot that serves as a temporary storage for a cartridge that should placed into the library (insert operation) or removed from it (eject op |  |  |  |
| Interface adapter   | Same as Adapter.   |  |  |
| Library   | <ol> <li>Refer to Logical library.</li> <li>Refer to Physical library.</li> </ol>  |  |  |
| Library log   | Refer to Command log and Error log.  |  |  |
| Linear shelve   | Same as Linear storage.  |  |  |
| Linear storage  | A device that consists of storage slots. If the library is dual-aisle, each linear storage device can be accessed by one robot only.   |  |  |

### Table 28 Terms (Continued)

| Term               | Explanation  |  |  |
|--------------------|--|--|--|
| Logical library    | The logical representation of the <i>Physical library</i> (or its part) as it can be seen by the customer via the <i>Client interface</i> .  |  |  |
| LSCI coordinate    | The element (slot) physical coordinate in LSCI format (device-section-row-column-position).  |  |  |
| LUN                | Logical Unit Number. Each LUN can represent a device for the client. That means after the configuration is complete the SCSI client will see the assigned logical library as the SCSI device connected to a certain LUN.   |  |  |
| Mailbox            | The logical set of insert/eject slots. Should be created in the <i>Logical library</i> to represent its <i>I/O unit</i> .  |  |  |
| Mailbox area       | Same as Insert/eject area.   |  |  |
| Mailbox slot       | Same as Insert/eject slot.   |  |  |
| Media domain       | This characteristic indicates the cartridges that can be stored into the same<br>storage slot even if their media type is different (for example, both NCTP and<br>3590 cartridges are of the 'half-inch' domain). And vice versa: the media<br>domain characteristic indicates slots that could be the possible container for the<br>cartridge. |  |  |
| Media type         | The cartridge characteristic that indicates its dimensions, capacity, etc.   |  |  |
| Medium, media      | Same as <i>Cartridge</i> .   |  |  |
| Mount              | The operation of loading a single cartridge into a drive.  |  |  |
| Move               | The operation of getting the cartridge from a target slot and putting it to the destination slot. This operation can change the cartridge home position.   |  |  |
| Multi-port adapter | ter Some models of the SCSI adapters have more than one port that can be use<br>to accept commands. The Management GUI shows any two-port adapter as<br>two single-port adapters, although it is physically single hardware.   |  |  |
| Notification       | Same as Event notification.  |  |  |
| Offline cartridge  | The cartridge that has been removed from the library and remains currently only in the archive list.   |  |  |
| Partition          | The continuous range of slots that are of the same type (for example, Generic DLT). A set of partitions must be assigned to the <i>Logical library</i> .   |  |  |
| Physical library   | The automated robotic device that serves as a cartridge store. It contains a large number of slots where the cartridges can be inserted, and where the robotic accessory (manipulator) moves cartridges from one slot to another.  |  |  |
| Port               | Represents the SCSI <i>Adapter</i> in the Management GUI because every adapter has the port that is configured to accept commands. See also <i>Multi-port adapter</i> .  |  |  |
| ROBAR              | ROBotic ARchive. Requires valid TCP/IP connection between server (Scalar DLC host) and client PC.  |  |  |

| Term  | Explanation   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Robot   | The automatic system that consists of a manipulator that is moving back and forth as well as up and down on the rails to access all library slots and move the cartridges from/to them. Also contains a <i>Barcode reader</i> to identify the accessed cartridges.  |  |  |
| Robotic accessor  | Same as <i>Robot</i> .  |  |  |
| Rule  | Same as <i>Event rule</i> .   |  |  |
| Scalar DLC log  | The list of notification messages that describe the Scalar DLC working process.<br>Can be viewed from outside even when the Scalar DLC software itself is<br>stopped.   |  |  |
| Scanner   | Same as Barcode reader.   |  |  |
| Scratch cartridge   | The data cartridge that is considered as empty and ready-to-write.  |  |  |
| Scratch medium  | Same as Scratch cartridge.  |  |  |
| Scratch pool  | A logical set of scratch cartridges (single media type only). Each data cartridge assigned to the scratch pool will be considered as <i>scratch</i> .   |  |  |
| SCSISmall Computer System Interface. A widely used interface with the<br>carrying capacity. Requires additional hardware (SCSI adapter(s), e<br>and software (SCSI Target Mode driver). |   |  |  |
| SCSI coordinate   | Element (slot) physical coordinate in SCSI format (0 - 65535).  |  |  |
| Single-aisle  | The <i>Physical library</i> with a single robot.  |  |  |
| <b>Single-port adapter</b> The <i>Adapter</i> that contains a single port to send/receive commands.   |   |  |  |
| Slot  | The part of the physical library that receives a cartridge. There are three groups: <i>Storage slot</i> , <i>Insert/eject slot</i> (mailbox), and <i>Drive</i> .  |  |  |
| Storage area  | All available storage slots in the library.   |  |  |
| Storage slot  | The slot is designed to keep a cartridge as long as it is required.   |  |  |
| Storage tower   | A device that consists of storage slots. Its capacity is larger than of the linear<br>storage (for example, DLT-tower contains up to 18 rows of slots, and DLT-<br>shelve only 6).<br>If the library is dual-aisle, there always is at least one storage tower that can be<br>accessed by both robots and therefore called shared. However the tower can<br>be non-shared, too. |  |  |
| Таре  | A synonym for <i>Cartridge</i> . All tapes are cartridges, however some cartridges are not tapes.   |  |  |
| Tape device   | Same as Physical library.   |  |  |
| Target  | Depending on the adapter properties, each Target has a number of LUNs. That means each Target can be connected to this number of the devices, or represent such a number of connected devices to the client as well.  |  |  |

### Table 28Terms (Continued)

| Term   | Explanation  |  |  |
|--------|--|--|--|
| Ticket | Mostly a report issue. It is usually created by a customer who encounters a problem and calls for GCC help.  |  |  |
| Unload | The operation of ejecting the cartridge from drive to prepare it for a move. Most Scalar drives execute this command automatically.  |  |  |
| User   | A person that can log on the Scalar DLC Management GUI and monitor the commands to execute or perform certain operations manually. Different users may have different access levels and/or different rights. Also refer to <i>Admin</i> and <i>Customer engineer</i> . |  |  |
| Volser | The cartridge name (from "volume serial number") as shown to the customer.<br>Can also indicate the cartridge type (data/cleaning).<br>The optical disks acting as two-side cartridges are represented with two<br>volsers.  |  |  |

## Element Addressing

The slots in the tape libraries are mapped to the SCSI elements of physical library by the Scalar DLC physical library object. In the single-aisle libraries, the mapping is identical to the original picture.

| Table 29 | Element Mapping | (Single-aisle libraries) |
|----------|-----------------|--------------------------|
|          |                 | (Onlyie-able initialies) |

| Section | Robot1 Start<br>Coordinate | Robot2 Start<br>Coordinate | Scalar DLC Start Physical<br>Coordinate |
|---------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| I/E     | 16                         | None                       | 16                                      |
| Drive   | 256                        | None                       | 256                                     |
| Storage | 4096                       | None                       | 4096                                    |

Figure 203 Element Addressing (single-aisle library)



In the dual-aisle libraries the picture is much more complicated.

| Section | Robot1 Start<br>Coordinate | Robot2 Start<br>Coordinate | Scalar DLC Start Physical<br>Coordinate |
|---------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| I/E     | 16                         | None                       | 1024 (Robot1 I/E)                       |
| VE      | None                       | 16                         | 2048 (Robot2 I/E)                       |
| Drive   | 256                        | None                       | 4096 (Robot1 drives)                    |
|         | None                       | 256                        | 8192 (Robot2 drives)                    |
| Storage | 4096                       | None                       | 32768 (Robot1 storage)                  |
|         |                            | 4006                       | 16384 (shared storage)                  |
|         | None                       | 4090                       | 49152 (Robot2 storage)                  |



Figure 204 Element Addressing (dual-aisle library)



The Management GUI also indicates the LSCI coordinates used by ROBAR and (sometimes) DAS software.

The LSCI coordinates consists of 5 character pairs. The first four characters signify the 'name' or the number of the device. The third pair of characters signifies the column in which the position is located. The fourth pair of characters signifies the row of the position and the last two characters show the position in this row.

These coordinates are mapped from the coordinates of the physical library by the following way:

- Device type and number (four symbols): for example, LW01 means 'storage shelve number 1', D006 means 'drive number 6', etc.
- Column-row-position (six digits): for drives always 000000, for other types of slots something like 011006 or 120804.

Example: the LSCI coordinate "LW02060210" means "a slot that can be fount at storage shelve 2, rack 6, column 2, position 10".

## Translating HCC Coordinates for ROBAR HACC

For the ROBAR HACC, the LCSI coordinates are unable to completely handle the number of slots in larger library systems. To compensate for this issue, the LCSI coordinates can be re-mapped to the HCC form. When configuring the ROBAR client, check Translate HCC coordinates checkbox. For more information, refer to <u>ROBAR Client</u> on page 174.

**Table 31**ROBAR Client - Re-mapping

|         | Storage | IE/Mailboxes |
|---------|---------|--------------|
| Rack    | 01-99   | 00           |
| Section | 01-99   | 01/02        |
| Rows    | 01-05   | 01-99        |
| Slots   | 01-45   | 01-10        |

### Example:

The library contains two racks (devices) x 10 sections (columns) x 4 rows x 180 slots.

- 1 Re-mapping the slots (45 limit) results in 16 rows per 45 slots, instead of 4 rows per 180 slots.
- 2 Re-mapping the rows (5 limit) results in 32 sections per 5 rows instead 10 sections per 16 rows. Remapping the sections and devices gets the same results, thus it is in range.

The result of the re-mapping is that instead of configured library that is configured as  $2 \times 10 \times 4 \times 180$ , the ROBAR HACC client gets an image of the library configured as  $2 \times 32 \times 5 \times 45$  and then can access it completely. This also is true with mailbox (IE) area.

## **Application Notes**

This section holds various supplemental information concerning different parts of the Scalar DLC software and clients as well.

- <u>Media Types</u> on page 263.
- <u>Storage Types</u> on page 264.
- <u>Mailbox Types</u> on page 265.
- Drive Types on page 266.
- Error Codes on page 267.

## Media Types

The Scalar DLC software and the client applications recognizes used media in different ways. Refer to <u>Table</u> <u>32</u>.

| Madia                        | Manufacturer | Description  | Media     | Media Type |        |     |  |
|------------------------------|--------------|--|-----------|------------|--------|-----|--|
| wedia                        |              |  | Domain    | Scalar DLC | DAS    | AMU |  |
| 3480                         | 3M           | 0.5" tape  | Half-inch | 3480       | 3480   | C0  |  |
| 3490                         | 3M           | 0.5" tape  | Half-inch | 3480       | 3480   | C0  |  |
| 3490E                        | 3M           | 0.5" tape  | Half-inch | 3490E      | 3480   | C0  |  |
| NCTP                         | Philips      | 0.5" tape<br>(Philip new<br>compatible<br>product) | Half-inch | NCTP       | 3480   | C0  |  |
| DLT<br>Compac<br>Tape III    | Digital      | Digital Linear<br>Tape                             | DLT       | DLT III    | DECDLT | C1  |  |
| DLT<br>Compac<br>Tape IV     | Quantum      | Digital Linear<br>Tape                             | DLT       | DLT IV     | DECDLT | C1  |  |
| DLT<br>Compac<br>Tape III XT | Maxell       | Digital Linear<br>Tape                             | DLT       | DLT IIIXT  | DECDLT | C1  |  |
| Super DLT                    | Quantum      | Digital Linear<br>Tape                             | DLT       | SDLT       | DECDLT | C1  |  |
| 3590                         | 3M           | 0.5" tape (NTP<br>- New tape<br>product)           | Half-inch | 3590       | 3590   | C2  |  |
| 3590E                        | 3M           | 0.5" tape<br>(Condor 3590,<br>double<br>capacity)  | Half-inch | 3590E      | 3590   | C2  |  |

Table 32Media Types

| Madia                 | Manufactura | Decemination                                  | Media      | Media Type         |              |    |  |
|-----------------------|-------------|---|------------|--------------------|--------------|----|--|
| wedia                 | Domain      |   | Scalar DLC | DAS                | AMU          |    |  |
| LTO 1                 | Ultrium     | LTO L1  | LTO        | LTO                | LTO          | C3 |  |
| LTO 2                 | Ultrium     | LTO L2  | LTO        | LTO 2              | LTO          | C3 |  |
| LTO 3                 | Ultrium     | LTO L3  | LTO        | LTO 3              | LTO          | C3 |  |
| LTO 4                 | IBM         | LTO L4  | LTO        | LTO 4              | LTO          | C3 |  |
| Super DLT<br>II       | Quantum     | Digital Linear<br>Tape                        | DLT        | SDLT II            | DECDLT       | C5 |  |
| 3592 RW               | IBM         | 0.5" tape read/<br>write                      | Half-inch  | 3592 R/W           | 3592 R/W     | C7 |  |
| 3592 RW<br>short      | IBM         | 0.5" tape read/<br>write, short               | Half-inch  | 3592 short R/<br>W | 3592 R/W     | C7 |  |
| 3592<br>WORM          | IBM         | 0.5" tape write<br>once / read<br>many        | Half-inch  | 3592 WORM          | 3592<br>WORM | C8 |  |
| 3592<br>WORM<br>short | IBM         | 0.5" tape write<br>once / read<br>many, short | Half-inch  | 3592 short<br>WORM | 3592<br>WORM | C8 |  |
| SONY AIT              | Sony        | 8mm tape                                      | 8mm        | AIT                | 8MM          | V1 |  |
| SONY AIT2             | Sony        | 8mm tape                                      | 8mm        | AIT                | 8MM          | V1 |  |
| SONY AIT3             | Sony        | 8mm tape                                      | 8mm        | AIT                | 8MM          | V1 |  |

### Table 32 Media Types (Continued)

## Storage Types

The different storage elements holds different media. Refer to <u>Table 33</u> on page 264.

| Table 33 | Storage Types |
|----------|---------------|
|----------|---------------|

| Storage Name | Manufacturer | Loaded Media (Scalar DLC type)  |
|--------------|--------------|---|
| Generic DLT  | Quantum      | <ul> <li>DLT III</li> <li>DLT IV</li> <li>DLT IIIXT</li> <li>SDLT</li> <li>SDLT II</li> </ul> |
| Generic 8mm  | Sony         | • AIT   |
| LTO          | IBM          | <ul> <li>LTO</li> <li>LTO 2</li> <li>LTO 3</li> <li>LTO 4</li> </ul>                          |

### Table 33 Storage Types (Continued)

| Storage Name      | Manufacturer | Loaded Media (Scalar DLC type)   |
|-------------------|--------------|--|
| Generic half-inch | Quantum      | <ul> <li>3480</li> <li>3490E</li> <li>3590</li> </ul>  |
|                   |              | <ul> <li>3590E</li> <li>NCTP</li> <li>3592 RW</li> <li>3592 WORM</li> </ul>                                  |
|                   |              | <ul> <li>3592 short R/W</li> <li>3592 short WORM</li> <li>3592 700Gb R/W</li> <li>3592 700Gb WORM</li> </ul> |

# Mailbox Types

The different insert/eject elements holds different media Refer to Table 34.

| Mailbox Name          | Manufacturer | Loaded Media   |
|-----------------------|--------------|--|
| Generic DLT I/E       | Quantum      | <ul> <li>DLT III</li> <li>DLT IV</li> <li>DLT IIIXT</li> <li>SDLT</li> <li>SDLT II</li> </ul>  |
| Generic 8mm I/E       | Sony         | • AIT  |
| LTO I/E               | IBM          | <ul> <li>LTO</li> <li>LTO 2</li> <li>LTO 3</li> <li>LTO 4</li> </ul>   |
| Generic half-inch I/E | Quantum      | <ul> <li>3480</li> <li>3490E</li> <li>3590</li> <li>3590E</li> <li>NCTP</li> <li>3592 RW</li> <li>3592 WORM</li> <li>3592 short R/W</li> <li>3592 short WORM</li> <li>3592 700Gb R/W</li> <li>3592 700Gb WORM</li> </ul> |

# Drive Types

The different drives are recognized by the client applications in different ways. The different drives also accepts different media. Refer to <u>Table 35</u>.

|                              | Manufacturar | Drive Type          |                      |     |  |  |
|------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----|--|--|
| Drive Name                   | Wanuracturer | Scalar DLC          | DAS                  | AMU |  |  |
| HP LTO                       | HP           | HP LTO              | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO  |  |
| IBM LTO1                     | IBM          | IBM LTO             | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO  |  |
| IBM LTO1 Fibre<br>Channel    | IBM          | IBM LTO FC          | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO  |  |
| IBM LTO2 SCSI                | IBM          | IBM LTO-2<br>SCSI   | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO<br>• LTO 2   |  |
| IBM LTO2 Fibre<br>Channel    | IBM          | IBM LTO-2 FC        | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO<br>• LTO 2   |  |
| IBM LTO3 SCSI                | IBM          | IBM LTO-3<br>SCSI   | LTO Drive            | D1  | <ul> <li>LTO</li> <li>LTO 2</li> <li>LTO 3</li> </ul>  |  |
| IBM LTO3 Fibre<br>Channel    | IBM          | IBM LTO-3 FC        | LTO Drive            | D1  | <ul> <li>LTO</li> <li>LTO 2</li> <li>LTO 3</li> </ul>  |  |
| IBM LTO4 Fibre<br>Channel    | IBM          | IBM LTO-4 FC        | LTO Drive            | D1  | • LTO 3<br>• LTO 4   |  |
| IBM 3592                     | IBM          | IBM 3592            | IBM 3592             | D6  | <ul> <li>3592 RW</li> <li>3592 WORM</li> <li>3592 short R/W</li> <li>3592 short WORM</li> </ul>  |  |
| IBM TS1120                   | IBM          | TS1120              | IBM 3592             | D6  | <ul> <li>3592 RW</li> <li>3592 WORM</li> <li>3592 short R/W</li> <li>3592 short WORM</li> <li>3592 700Gb R/W</li> <li>3592 700Gb WORM</li> </ul> |  |
| Quantum DLT<br>4000 with DCI | Quantum      | Quantum DLT<br>4000 | DLT (Low<br>Profile) | DG  | <ul><li>DLT IV</li><li>DLT III</li><li>DLT IIIXT</li></ul>   |  |
| Quantum DLT<br>7000 with DCI | Quantum      | Quantum DLT<br>7000 | DLT (Low<br>Profile) | DG  | DLT IV     DLT III     DLT IIIXT   |  |

### Table 35Drive Types

### Table 35Drive Types (Continued)

| Drivo Namo                     | Manufacturor | Drive Type                 |                       |     | Loaded Media   |  |
|--------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----|--|--|
| Drive Name                     | Manufacturer | Scalar DLC                 | DAS                   | AMU |  |  |
| Quantum DLT<br>8000 with DCI   | Quantum      | Quantum DLT<br>7000        | DLT (Low<br>Profile)  | DG  | <ul><li>DLT IV</li><li>DLT III</li><li>DLT IIIXT</li></ul> |  |
| SONY AIT Drive<br>(SDX 310)    | Sony         | Sony SDX 310/<br>500       | AIT drive             | DM  | • AIT  |  |
| SONY AIT2 Drive<br>(SDX 500)   | Sony         | Sony SDX 310/<br>500       | AIT2 drive            | DM  | • AIT  |  |
| SONY AIT3 Drive<br>(SDX 700-C) | Sony         | Sony SDX 700-<br>C         | AIT3 Drive            | DM  | • AIT  |  |
| 3590 Magstar                   | IBM          | IBM 3590                   | IBM 3590<br>(Magstar) | DN  | <ul><li>3590</li><li>3590E</li></ul>                       |  |
| NCTP Drive                     | Philips      | NCTP                       | Philips LMS<br>(3490) | DQ  | • NCTP   |  |
| 3480 Drive                     | ADIC         | Philips 3610/<br>ADIC 8490 | Philips LMS<br>(3490) | DQ  | <ul><li> 3480</li><li> 3490E</li></ul>                     |  |
| 8490 Drive                     | ADIC         | Philips 3610/<br>ADIC 8490 | Philips LMS<br>(3490) | DQ  | <ul><li> 3480</li><li> 3490E</li></ul>                     |  |
| SDLT 220                       | Quantum      | Quantum SDLT<br>220        | DLT (Low<br>Profile)  | DR  | <ul><li>DLT IV</li><li>SDLT</li></ul>                      |  |
| SDLT 320                       | Quantum      | Quantum SDLT<br>320        | DLT (Low<br>Profile)  | DR  | DLT IV     SDLT  |  |
| SDLT 600                       | Quantum      | Quantum SDLT<br>600        | Quantum<br>DLT        | DY  | <ul><li>DLT IV</li><li>SDLT</li><li>SDLT II</li></ul>      |  |

## **Error Codes**

The Error Codes described in the <u>Table 36</u> are used with the <u>Rules Tab</u> on page 195 and <u>Tickets Tab</u> on page 205.

### Table 36Error Codes

| Error Code | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| 0          | No error    |
| 200        | NULL        |
| 201        | NULL        |
| 202        | RPC problem |
| 203        | NULL        |

### Table 36 Error Codes (Continued)

| Error Code | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 204        | Unable to Recover   |
| 205        | The robot is not ready (or switched off logically)  |
| 206        | Request link failure  |
| 207        | Invalid robot number  |
| 208        | Invalid arguments   |
| 209        | Invalid client name   |
| 210        | Invalid request id  |
| 211        | The request was canceled  |
| 212        | General software failure  |
| 213        | Invalid pool name in scr_info (use with scr_info only!)   |
| 214        | The cartridge is in use   |
| 215        | The accessor couldn't put a cartridge - inventory dst cell  |
| 216        | The accessor couldn't get a cartridge - inventory src cell  |
| 217        | General hardware problem  |
| 218        | Physical problem with cartridge   |
| 219        | Physical problem with drive   |
| 220        | Unrecoverable hardware problem  |
| 221        | The accessor couldn't put a cartridge and rejected it to IE station - inventory dst cell, update IE station cells |
| 222        | The source cell is empty - update src cell, retry?  |
| 223        | The destination cell if full - update dst cell, retry?  |
| 224        | The door was opened and closed - do a complete inventory, retry   |
| 225        | The insert/eject station was opened and closed - update IE station cells, retry                                   |
| 226        | Unexpected hardware failure - retry   |
| 227        | Invalid volser  |
| 228        | Invalid drive name  |
| 229        | The drive is in use   |
| 230        | Prowler is not active   |
| 231        | Invalid area name   |
| 232        | The dynamic area became full, insertion stopped   |
| 233        | The drive is allocated for another client   |
| 234        | The cartridge is not mounted  |

### Table 36 Error Codes (Continued)

| Error Code | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 235        | The cartridge belongs to another pool                 |
| 236        | The drive is in cleaning                              |
| 237        | Invalid pool name                                     |
| 238        | The area is full (occurs during ejecting)             |
| 239        | The drive is allocated exclusively for another client |
| 240        | One or more coordinates are wrong                     |
| 241        | The area is empty?                                    |
| 242        | Barcode read error                                    |
| 243        | The client is not authorized to make this request     |
| 244        | No drive available to do generic mount                |
| 245        | No available cleaning cartridge to clean the drive    |
| 246        | Media type doesn't match the volser                   |
| 247        | Library needs teaching - need to specify actions!     |
| 248        | Library is becoming ready                             |
| 249        | Nothing to eject                                      |
| 250        | Open configuration failed                             |
| 251        | Close configuration failed                            |
| 252        | Create configuration key failed                       |
| 253        | Delete configuration failed                           |
| 254        | Query configuration value failed                      |
| 255        | Update configuration value failed                     |
| 256        | Out of memory   |
| 257        | Invalid user name or password                         |
| 258        | Invalid user  |
| 259        | Invalid client type                                   |
| 260        | User can't rename himself                             |
| 261        | Supervisor can't create object                        |
| 262        | Supervisor can't update object                        |
| 263        | Supervisor can't remove object                        |
| 264        | Supervisor can't start object                         |
| 265        | Supervisor can't stop object                          |
| 266        | Search for client in database failed                  |

### Table 36 Error Codes (Continued)

| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 267        | List clients in database failed                            |
| 268        | Create client failed in database                           |
| 269        | Get client failed in database                              |
| 270        | Update client failed in database                           |
| 271        | Remove client failed in database                           |
| 272        | Listing of mailboxes has failed in database                |
| 273        | Creating of mailbox failed in database                     |
| 274        | Assigning volser to mailbox failed                         |
| 275        | List cartridges failed in database                         |
| 276        | Get cartridge failed in database                           |
| 277        | Get property of cartridge failed in database               |
| 278        | Create destination failed in NS                            |
| 279        | List destinations failed in NS                             |
| 280        | Remove destination failed in NS                            |
| 281        | Requested virtual library not found                        |
| 282        | List elements failed in database                           |
| 283        | Get element failed in database                             |
| 284        | Get element properties failed in database                  |
| 285        | Assign cartridge to element failed in database             |
| 286        | Internal error   |
| 287        | Object is not ready  |
| 288        | Initialization of request failed                           |
| 289        | Can't query object interface.                              |
| 290        | Getting of mailbox failed in database                      |
| 291        | List physical libraries failed in database                 |
| 292        | Get physical library property failed in database           |
| 293        | List partitions failed in database                         |
| 294        | Get partitions failed in database                          |
| 295        | Create partition failed in database                        |
| 296        | Mapping of virtual elements to physical failed in database |
| 297        | List media pools failed in database                        |
| 298        | Get media pool failed in database                          |
| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 299        | Create media pool failed in database                           |
| 300        | Remove cartridge from media pool failed in database            |
| 301        | Add cartridge to media pool failed in database                 |
| 302        | List service actions failed in database                        |
| 303        | List of virtual libraries failed in database                   |
| 304        | Create virtual library failed in database                      |
| 305        | Create library failed in database                              |
| 306        | Get property of virtual library failed in database             |
| 307        | Search of notification failed in NS                            |
| 308        | Load history failed in NS                                      |
| 309        | Unknown type of notification                                   |
| 310        | Acknowledging of notification failed in NS                     |
| 311        | Invalid action type  |
| 312        | Get template failed in NS                                      |
| 313        | Create template failed in NS                                   |
| 314        | List templates failed in NS                                    |
| 315        | Remove template failed in NS                                   |
| 316        | Get list of rules failed in NS                                 |
| 317        | Get rule's properties failed in NS                             |
| 318        | Create new rule failed in database                             |
| 319        | Remove rule failed in database                                 |
| 320        | List tickets failed in SCM                                     |
| 321        | List ticket states failed in SCM                               |
| 322        | List ticket states entries failed in SCM                       |
| 323        | Get ticket context value failed in SCM                         |
| 324        | Add ticket state failed in SCM                                 |
| 325        | Add ticket state value failed in SCM                           |
| 326        | Mark the ticket state as deleted failed in SCM                 |
| 327        | Context value not found in SCM                                 |
| 328        | Find all libraries failed in configuration module              |
| 329        | The volser requested is not in the client assigned volserrange |
| 330        | Deletion of mailbox has failed                                 |

| Error Code | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 331        | Deletion of virtual library has failed                  |
| 332        | Deletion of physical library has failed                 |
| 333        | Deletion of partition has failed                        |
| 334        | Deletion of media pool in library has failed            |
| 335        | Impossible to remove or change user level of last admin |
| 336        | This item already exists                                |
| 337        | Impossible to create ticket                             |
| 338        | The volser is allocated for another client              |
| 339        | The library contains mailboxes                          |
| 340        | The library contains pools                              |
| 341        | The library contains partitions                         |
| 342        | Updating of mailbox has failed                          |
| 343        | Getting pool's properties has failed                    |
| 344        | Updating pool has failed                                |
| 345        | Updating partition has failed                           |
| 346        | Operation has failed                                    |
| 347        | One or more clients use this library                    |
| 348        | Impossible to get dump                                  |
| 349        | Impossible to get data                                  |
| 350        | Insertion of cartridge has failed                       |
| 351        | Exporting to alias has failed                           |
| 352        | Initialization of element status has failed             |
| 353        | Mount has failed  |
| 354        | Dismount of cartridge has failed                        |
| 355        | Dismount of drive has failed                            |
| 356        | Control of library has failed                           |
| 357        | Query of library status has failed                      |
| 358        | Invalid destination for move operation.                 |
| 359        | Element is not inventoried                              |
| 360        | Robot could not move                                    |
| 361        | General bus problem                                     |
| 362        | Resource pended   |

| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 363        | Invalid field in CDB                                 |
| 364        | Coordinate not found                                 |
| 365        | No clean cartridges are available for drive          |
| 366        | Move cartridge to problem box                        |
| 367        | Volser is ejected                                    |
| 368        | Insert/Eject station door is open                    |
| 369        | Volser is unchanged                                  |
| 370        | Volser is duplicated                                 |
| 371        | Volser contains invalid characters                   |
| 372        | Move cartridge to problem box                        |
| 373        | Volser is allocated to another coordinate            |
| 374        | The cartridge already in place                       |
| 375        | The cartridge is not accessible                      |
| 376        | Command was aborted                                  |
| 377        | Invalid home position                                |
| 378        | Mismatch to use the clean media within scratch pool  |
| 379        | Element is unavailable                               |
| 380        | The drive did not unload the cartridge               |
| 381        | Cannot lock I/E station                              |
| 382        | Command not supported                                |
| 383        | The volser is already allocated                      |
| 384        | The drive is already allocated                       |
| 385        | The drive requested is not available for this client |
| 386        | A mechanical positioning error occurred              |
| 387        | The accessor dropped a cartridge                     |
| 388        | Could not erase EEPROM                               |
| 389        | Could not program EEPROM                             |
| 390        | Cartridge in gripper at power-on                     |
| 391        | Component failure                                    |
| 392        | Gripper error  |
| 393        | The accessor could not move on the vertical (Y) axis |
| 394        | Could not home the vertical (Y) axis                 |

| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 395        | The accessor could not move on the horizontal (X) axis   |
| 396        | Could not home the horizontal (X) axis   |
| 397        | The accessor lost power  |
| 398        | Internal target failure  |
| 399        | A drive did not load or unload a tape  |
| 400        | Cannot lock the I/E station  |
| 401        | Cannot unlock the I/E station  |
| 402        | Label too short, too long or duplicate   |
| 403        | Cannot read a barcode label due to scanner problem   |
| 404        | Firmware error   |
| 405        | Parameter list length error (Illegal Request).   |
| 406        | Illegal operation code in CDB (Illegal Request).   |
| 407        | Invalid element address in CDB (Illegal Request).  |
| 408        | Attempt to write a read only buffer (Illegal Request).   |
| 409        | Illegal LUN (Illegal Request).   |
| 410        | Invalid field in Parameter List (Illegal Request).   |
| 411        | Invalid parameter in Parameter List (Illegal Request).   |
| 412        | Parameter data checksum failure (Illegal Request).   |
| 413        | Incompatible media installed (Illegal Request).  |
| 414        | Source of MOVE MEDIUM command cannot be accessor (Illegal Request).                                  |
| 415        | Cartridge stuck in tape drive (Illegal Request).   |
| 416        | Source cartridge loaded into tape drive and not accessible (Illegal Request).                        |
| 417        | Media type does not match destination media type (Illegal Request).                                  |
| 418        | Invalid bit in "Identify" message (Illegal Request).   |
| 419        | Incorrect LUN configuration (Illegal Request).   |
| 420        | Firmware detected an internal logic failure (Illegal Request).                                       |
| 421        | Cartridge rejected in the Insert/Eject station because it was not properly loaded (Illegal Request). |
| 422        | Cell status and barcode questionable (Illegal Request).  |
| 423        | Medium removal prevented because storage element is unavailable (Illegal Request).                   |
| 424        | Cartridge magazine is not installed (Illegal Request).   |
| 425        | Data transport device is not installed (Illegal Request).  |

| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 426        | Data transfer element is varied offline (Illegal Request).   |
| 427        | Message received at inappropriate time (Abort error).  |
| 428        | Host rejected "Identify" message sent for re-selection (Abort error).                              |
| 429        | Message system was disabled during parity error detection on SCSI bus (Abort error).               |
| 430        | Received an "Initiator Detected Error" or initiator rejected "Restore Data Pointer" (Abort error). |
| 431        | Disconnect during command processing (Abort error).  |
| 432        | The command was cancelled due to a state change (Abort error).                                     |
| 433        | Destination element full for MOVE MEDIUM command (Illegal Request).                                |
| 434        | Source element empty for MOVE MEDIUM command (Illegal Request).                                    |

# B



This topic provides an overview of the DAS Client software that is a part of Scalar DLC software product. The sections are:

- <u>System Description</u> on page 277.
- Commands Overview on page 278.
- DAS Commands on page 281.

# System Description

DAS Client software runs as an application under Windows 2000/2003, Windows NT, Unix, Windows 9x, and so forth. This is a client software product designed to provide shared access to a member of the library family by up to 50 separate clients who run from entirely separate platforms while using various media in the library system. The DAS software makes it possible for backup, document management or HSM applications to have direct access to the media in the library systems.

The library system is controlled by the Scalar DLC software. The data from the applications is sent directly to the drives. The DAS software supports a wide variety of UNIX systems, Windows NT, and Windows 2000/2003. Connection to other operating systems such as MVS, VM or Tandem has been made across another interface of the Scalar DLC.

The client software consists of a library of functions and an administration program (*dasadmi*n). The software is available for various platforms. A new client requires the standard TCP/IP functions with ONC Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) support and an ANSI C compiler. The applications access the open interface (ACI).

Each client can be assigned specific access privileges to the library:

- Basic, extended, or all functions
- Drives
- Volume Serial Number (Volsers)
- Ranges of the I/O units
- Scratch pools

The installation instructions for the DAS Client software can be found in the Scalar DLC Installation Guide, Installing DAS Client section.

# Starting DAS Client Software

From WinNT / Win2000 / Win2003, launch Start > Programs > ADIC Distributed Library Controller > Scalar DLC DAS-Client. The *dasadmin* starts immediately.

However, the dasadmin.exe program can be launched manually as well.

If the DAS Administration Utility has been installed under the firewall connection, the main executable file is *dasadmin\_fw.exe*, not *dasadmin.exe*.

# **Commands Overview**

DAS administrator commands can be divided into four areas: Media management, DAS management, Client management, and Scratch pool management

### Media Management

- Mount and dismount
- Change sides on the optical disk in the drive
- Insert and eject
- Move medium
- Inventory
- View the available media
- View the media status
- View the logical ranges for insert/eject
- Catalog or remove foreign media
- Clean the drive
- Insert and eject the cleaning cartridge
- View the element status

Refer to Table 38 on page 281 for the details.

# **DAS Management**

- Delete command
- View outstanding commands
- Send message
- Activate and deactivate barcode reading for mount, move and eject from DAS
- Shutdown Scalar DLC supervisor
- Shutdown Scalar DLC and operating system

Refer to Table 39 on page 282 for the details.

<sup>😻</sup> Note

# **Client Management**

- Reserve/release a drive for a client
- Reserve/release a volser for a client
- Modify access privileges for a client
- Modify execution parameters

Refer to <u>Table 40</u> on page 283 for the details.

# Scratch Pool Management

- Add volser(s) to the scratch pool
- Remove volser from the scratch pool
- Get volser from the scratch pool
- View scratch pool information

Refer to Table 41 on page 283 for the details.

# Define and Reserve

Although the DAS Client may typically access all resources of the library which is configured to it, there are situations when the access rights need to be temporarily modified.

*Define* means the client may access <u>only</u> the defined drives and/or cartridges. The defined resource could be used by several clients. *No definition* means the client can use all available resources (whole logical library).

*Reserve (allocate)* means only the <u>specified</u> client may use the reserved drives and/or cartridges. The reserved resource cannot be used by other client until the reservation is removed. *No allocation* means the client uses common resources that can be also accessed by other clients.

Table 37 lists all DAS/ACI commands that use either define or reserve features (or both).

| Command  | Used Define   | Used Reserve  |
|----------|---------------|---------------|
| allocd   | drives        | drive         |
| allocv   | -             | volser        |
| carry    | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| cellinfo | volser        | -             |
| clean    | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| dismount | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| eject    | volser        | volser        |
| eject2   | volser        | volser        |
| eject3   | volser        | volser        |
| ejectcl  | volser        | volser        |

 Table 37
 Usage of Define and Reserve

| Command          | Used Define   | Used Reserve  |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| ejectcom         | volser        | volser        |
| flip             | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| getvolsertodrive | drive         | -             |
| getvoltoside     | volser        | -             |
| insert           | volser        | volser        |
| insert2          | volser        | volser        |
| listd            | drive         | -             |
| listd2           | drive         | -             |
| listd3           | drive         | -             |
| listd4           | drive         | -             |
| listd5           | drive         | -             |
| listv            | -             | volser        |
| listv2           | -             | volser        |
| mount            | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| pausedrive       | drive         | drive         |
| qvolsrange       | volser        | volser        |
| scap             | drive, volser | -             |
| scr_get          | volser        | volser        |
| scr_info         | volser        | volser        |
| scr_insert       | volser        | volser        |
| scr_mount        | drive, volser | drive, volser |
| scr_set          | volser        | volser        |
| scr_unset        | volser        | volser        |
| show             | drive, volser | -             |
| show2            | drive, volser | -             |
| typelist         | drive         | -             |
| typelist2        | drive         | -             |
| unload           | drive         | -             |
| view             | volser        | -             |
| view2            | volser        | -             |
| viewc            | drive         | -             |

#### Table 37 Usage of Define and Reserve (Continued)

# **DAS** Commands

DAS commands are divided into:

- Media management
- DAS management
- Client management
- Scratch management

All these commands are called from *dasadmin*.

We Note The *dasadmin* application provides a brief help by entering the *-h* option.

| Command          | Explanation   |
|------------------|---|
| carry            | moves volser from one slot to another.  |
| catf             | catalogs foreign media.   |
| cellinfo         | displays information about devices and cartridges in the system.              |
| clean            | cleans drive.   |
| dismount         | removes a medium from a drive and returns it to its home position.            |
| eif_conf         | returns an information of logical ranges configured in the insert/eject area. |
| eif_info         | returns an information of logical ranges configured in the insert/eject area. |
| eject            | ejects a limited number of media from the library.                            |
| eject2           | ejects media from the library.  |
| eject3           | ejects media from the library.  |
| ejectcl          | ejects used cleaning media from the library.                                  |
| ejectcom         | ejects media from the library completely.                                     |
| flip             | flips the optical disk in the drive.  |
| getvolsertodrive | displays the configured assignment of volsers to drives.                      |
| getvoltoside     | displays information on the association of volsers to an optical disk.        |
| insert           | inserts a few cartridges in the library.                                      |
| insert2          | inserts many cartridges, including cleaning cartridges, in the library.       |
| inventory        | checks and corrects the whole library system database.                        |
| mount            | loads medium into a drive.  |
| partinventory    | checks and corrects part of the library system database.                      |
| pool_list        | provides information about clean/scratch pools in the system.                 |

#### Table 38Media Management

#### Table 38 Media Management (Continued)

| Command         | Explanation  |
|-----------------|--|
| pool_data       | provides information about volsers assigned to the given pool.                         |
| qvolsrange      | displays the volser from the Scalar DLC database for a specified range.                |
| rmf             | removes foreign media from the catalog.  |
| unload          | operates the buttons on the drive (for example, <b>unload</b> button) by the robotics. |
| view            | displays information from the database relating to a volser.                           |
| view2           | displays information from the database relating to a volserrange.                      |
| viewc           | displays information from the Scalar DLC database relating to a coordinate             |
| volserinventory | checks and corrects part of the library system database.                               |

#### Table 39 DAS Management

| Command    | Explanation  |
|------------|--|
| barcode    | activates/deactivates the library barcode reader for the mount, carry, and eject commands. |
| cancel     | deletes a command from the command queue.  |
| email      | sends the message via email.   |
| hosttype   | provides information about the type of the connected host                                  |
| killamu    | terminates Scalar DLC software and OS.   |
| list       | displays the DAS command queue.  |
| list2      | displays the advanced DAS command queue.   |
| list3      | provides enhanced information on executing requests  |
| pausedas   | turns dasadmin to a passive state.   |
| pausedrive | logically turns a tape drive disable/enable.   |
| qversion   | displays the DAS and ACI version.  |
| robhome    | makes the library system inactive.   |
| robstat    | makes the library system active or queries status.   |
| rpctest    | perform quick portmapper test  |
| shutdown   | shuts down Scalar DLC  |
| snmp       | sends the message via SNMP.  |
| switch     | switches between active and passive cluster nodes.   |

#### Table 40Client Management

| Command   | Explanation  |
|-----------|--|
| allocd    | drive reservation for a client.                              |
| allocv    | volser reservation for a client.                             |
| listd     | displays drive assignment for up to 16 drives.               |
| listd2    | displays drive assignment for up to 250 drives.              |
| listd3    | displays drive assignment for up to 250 drives.              |
| listd4    | displays drive assignment for up to 380 drives.              |
| listd5    | displays drive assignment                                    |
| listf     | displays foreign volsers.                                    |
| listv     | displays volser reservations.                                |
| listv2    | displays volser reservations                                 |
| scap      | temporarily modifies access privileges.                      |
| scop      | temporarily modifies the working parameters.                 |
| scop2     | temporarily modifies the working parameters.                 |
| show      | displays current access privileges and operating parameters. |
| show2     | displays current access privileges and operating parameters. |
| typelist  | shows all drives or specific drives with matching media type |
| typelist2 | shows all drives or specific drives with matching media type |

#### Table 41Scratch Management

| Command       | Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| scr_get       | displays the next available scratch volser from the scratch pool. |
| scr_info      | displays information relating to the scratch pool.                |
| scr_insert    | inserts a cartridge and adds it to the scratch pool.              |
| scr_mount     | places the next available scratch cartridge in the drive.         |
| scr_set       | adds cartridge in the library system to the scratch pool.         |
| scr_set_range | adds cartridges in the library system to the scratch pool.        |
| scr_unset     | changes cartridge status from scratch to unscratch.               |

Whote The configuration of scratch pools, clean pools, and insert/eject areas should be executed via the Scalar DLC Management GUI. The configuration of Define Range and Reserve Range can be done from both Management GUI and client side as well.

# SCSI Guide

This section provides a brief overview for the Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K Medium Changer Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) protocol, including supported commands and messages.

The topics are:

- Installation and Configuration on page 285 describes the installation and configuration order for SCSI Client.
- General Characteristics on page 286 outlines SCSI general information. It also includes:
  - <u>SCSI Bus</u> on page 287.
  - SCSI Communications on page 288.
  - SCSI Message System on page 289.
  - <u>SCSI Commands</u> on page 290.
  - <u>SCSI Operations</u> on page 292.

# Installation and Configuration

- **Step 1** Install the Scalar DLC software with the SCSI support on the server PC. Install the required drivers for the target mode. Refer to *Scalar DLC Installation Guide, Installing Scalar DLC Software* and *Installing SCSI Target Drivers* sections. The server PC requires a restart.
- **Step 2** Enable appropriate SCSI target ports via the SCSI Target Port tool. Refer to <u>SCSI Target Port</u> <u>Tool</u> on page 233. The server PC may ask for a restart.
- **Step 3** Start the Management GUI. Refer to <u>Scalar DLC Management GUI</u> on page 9. Create at least one Target object and at least one LUN. Refer to <u>SCSI Target Tab</u> on page 178, <u>Create Target</u> on page 185 and <u>Create LUN</u> on page 186. The created target is *not active*.
- **Step 4** Create the library configuration that the client requires. Refer to <u>Configuration</u> on page 16. Create additional mailboxes and clean/scratch pools if necessary. Refer to <u>Create Mailbox</u> on page 125 and <u>Create Pool</u> on page 123.
- **Step 5** Create a SCSI client based on the created Target and LUN, and assign it to the created logical library. Refer to <u>Create SCSI Client</u> on page 171. The LUN becomes *active*.

**W** Note Either use LUN 0 or ensure that there already is a SCSI client configured for LUN 0 of the specified target. Otherwise, even when everything is properly configured and installed, the SCSI Client cannot be activated.

# **CAUTION** It is strongly <u>not</u> recommended either assign the non-SCSI client to the same logical library, or use the library partitions as shared resources in other logical libraries with the non-SCSI client assigned. Should that be done, some SCSI features will not be available for the client, mostly because of home position restrictions used in the Scalar DLC software for non-SCSI clients.

- **Step 6** Install the client application on the client PC and configure it to work with the appropriate Port-Target-LUN.
- Step 7 Now, the Scalar DLC software is ready to accept commands from a SCSI client.

# **General Characteristics**

The Scalar 1000 components include:

- Control Module (CM) a single cabinet containing an Insert/Eject station, storage cells, and tape drives. The CM uses one or two SCSI ports to connect to a SCSI host.
- Expansion Module (EM) a single cabinet that is added to a CM to provide additional storage cells and tape drives. The Scalar 1000 can have up to three EM's.
- Operator panel displays status and provides command entry.
- Accessor a device that moves cartridges to and from the Insert/Eject station, storage cells, and tape drives.
- Barcode scanner reads cartridge barcode labels to identify library volumes.

The Scalar 10K components include:

- Control Module (CM) a cabinet that attaches to the AM. It contains storage cells, tape drives, and the library Operator LCD Panel that displays library status and provides a command entry point. The CM uses one or two SCSI ports to attach SCSI hosts.
- Accessor Module (AM) a cabinet that contains four rack locations (Control Module, Insert/Eject stations, Tower Module, or Storage Cells), and the Accessor. Each AM can have an Expansion Module added.
- Expansion Module (EM) a cabinet that is added to an AM or to another EM to provide additional storage cell configurations and attachment capabilities for DMs and TMs. The Scalar 10K can have up to three EM's.
- Accessor located in the AM, it is a device that moves cartridges to and from Insert/Eject stations, storage cells, or tape drives.
- Barcode scanner located in the AM, it is a device that teaches the system configuration, and reads cartridge barcode labels to identify library volumes.
- Drive Module (DM) a cabinet that attaches to an AM or an EM. It contains a maximum of 48 drives.
- Tower Module (TM) a cabinet that attaches to an AM or an EM. It contains rotating storage locations.



There are four Scalar 10K modes of operation:

- ADIC native mode,
- EXABYTE compatibility mode,
- STK compatibility mode,
- EMASS compatibility mode.



The mode of operation determines how the library responds to the SCSI INQUIRY command.

The Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K supports half inch, DLT/SDLT, LTO, and AIT tape cartridges. For the Scalar 1000 library, a storage cell cartridge capacity ranges from 118 cells in the CM and up to 1182 cells with additional EMs. For the Scalar 10K library, a storage cell cartridge capacity ranges from 700 cells in the CM to 15938 cells with additional EMs, DM, and TMs. Total capacities are dependent on the media type configurations.

#### **Associated Documents**

For the details of the SCSI operations refer to:

- SCSI Reference Manual for the Scalar 10K library.
- SCSI Reference Manual for the Scalar 1000 library.

The SCSI client should use the document that describes the data format used by his software target application. Refer to <u>Target</u> on page 182 and <u>Logical Unit Number (LUN)</u> on page 184 for the details.

# SCSI Bus

A SCSI Bus is a shared resource that provides a pathway for exchanges between one or more hosts and their peripheral devices. A SCSI bus can be Single Ended, Differential, or Low Voltage Differential and must be terminated at both ends.

SCSI bus components are:

- SCSI initiator (host)
- SCSI target (peripheral)
- Cable connecting host and peripheral
- Bus terminators

Consider the computer system as the host and the Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K as the peripheral.

#### **Initiator Operation**

The SCSI bus adapter card in a host computer is the initiator of SCSI operations. The host initiates commands and messages or sends data to the target. The initiator also receives messages, data, and status from the target.

#### **Target Operation**

The Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K library target respond to control information or data from the host. The library does not:

- Generate unsolicited interrupts to the host
- Initiate its own SCSI commands
- Assert bus resets

#### **Element Addressing**

The host references source and target designations with element addresses within the library. Each element within the library has a unique address. The element addresses are established according to the firmware version of the library.

The Scalar 1000 has two firmware versions:

- Firmware earlier than Version 3.0
- Firmware Version 3.0

The addressing scheme of the Scalar 1000 depends on the firmware version that is used.

The Scalar 10K SCSI addressing scheme is:

- One Cartridge Accessor exists. Its assigned address is always 1h.
- The I/E station locations are addressed continuously from top to bottom, station by station.
- Tape drive locations are addressed from lower left to upper right, rack by rack.
- Storage element locations are addressed from the top left to lower right, column by column, rack by rack.

# **SCSI** Communications

Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K communications are implemented across the SCSI bus. The following paragraphs discuss the bus phases.

#### **Bus Phases**

The Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K conforms to the bus state transition table of the SCSI-2 standard, *Phase Sequences*. Bus phases determine the type of information and direction on the interface as shown in table below.

| Phase       | Description   |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--|--|--|
| Bus Free    | The Bus Free phase indicates that the bus is idle.  |  |  |  |
| Arbitration | The Arbitration phase allows devices to compete for bus access.   |  |  |  |
| Selection   | The Selection phase allows the host initiator to select the target destination for communication.           |  |  |  |
| Reselection | The Reselection phase allows the target to reconnect to the host initiator after a disconnect has occurred. |  |  |  |

| Phase    | Description   |  |  |  |  |
|----------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Transfer | The library supports asynchronous data transfer phases with differential and single<br>ended communications. Odd parity is generated during all information transfer phases<br>from the library. Parity is checked during all information transfer phases to the library.<br>Parity checking can be disabled.<br>Information Transfer phases include: |  |  |  |  |
|          | • The Message In/Message Out phases manage the physical path between the host initiator and target destination. Message In is a message to the host initiator, Message Out is a message to the target destination.  |  |  |  |  |
|          | • Command Out phase is a command from the host initiator to the target destination.   |  |  |  |  |
|          | <ul> <li>Data In/Data Out phase is either data sent from the target to the host initiator (Data<br/>In) or data sent from the host initiator to the target destination (Data Out).</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |

• Status In is a target status byte response to a host-initiated command.

# SCSI Message System

The SCSI message system (Message In/Message Out) allows communication between an initiator and a target for the purpose of physical path management.

| Message                     | Code | Description  | Direction |
|-----------------------------|------|--|-----------|
| COMMAND<br>COMPLETE         | 00h  | The COMMAND COMPLETE message is<br>sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that<br>the execution of a command is complete and<br>valid status has been sent to the initiator.   | In        |
| SAVE DATA<br>POINTERS       | 02h  | The SAVE DATA POINTERS message is<br>issued before every disconnect message<br>following a Data In or Data Out phase. The<br>message is not sent when disconnecting after<br>a Command Descriptor Block (CDB) that did<br>not transfer data. | In        |
| RESTORE<br>POINTERS         | 03h  | The RESTORE POINTERS message is sent<br>from a target to direct the initiator to continue<br>sending data.   | In        |
| DISCONNECT                  | 04h  | The DISCONNECT message is sent by a target to inform an initiator that the present data transfer will be suspended. The target will reselect the initiator at a later time to continue the current operation.                                | In        |
| INITIATOR<br>DETECTED ERROR | 05h  | The INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR<br>message is sent from an initiator to inform a<br>target that an error has occurred. This allows<br>the target to retry the operation.  | Out       |
| ABORT                       | 06h  | The ABORT message is sent from the initiator<br>to the target to clear the current or pending<br>operation. The target goes directly to the BUS<br>FREE phase after successful receipt of this<br>message.                                   | Out       |

| Message                 | Code       | Description  | Direction |
|-------------------------|------------|--|-----------|
| MESSAGE REJECT          | 07h        | The MESSAGE REJECT message is sent<br>from the initiator or target to indicate that the<br>last message received was inappropriate or<br>not implemented.  | Both      |
| NO-OP                   | 08h        | The NO-OP message is sent from the initiator<br>to inform the target that no message is valid in<br>response to the target request for a message.  | Out       |
| MESSAGE PARITY<br>ERROR | 09h        | The MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message is<br>sent from the initiator to the target to indicate<br>that one or more bytes in the last message<br>received contained a parity error.   | Out       |
| BUS DEVICE<br>RESET     | 0Ch        | The BUS DEVICE RESET message is sent<br>from an initiator to clear all commands, data,<br>and status at the target. When the target<br>recognizes this message, it aborts the<br>command currently being executed, proceeds<br>to the BUS FREE state, and executes a hard<br>reset.          | Out       |
| IDENTIFY                | 80h or C0h | The IDENTIFY messages are sent either by<br>the initiator or by the target to establish (or re-<br>establish) the logical connection path between<br>an initiator and target for a particular logical<br>unit. The Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K libraries<br>only support a logical unit of 0. | Both      |

# **SCSI** Commands

The topic provides information on Device Commands, SCSI Commands Format, and SCSI Command Status Byte.

#### **Device Commands**

Table below shows the SCSI medium changer commands that are supported by the Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K libraries.

| Operation code | Command                              |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 07h            | INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS            |
| E7h            | INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE |
| 12h            | INQUIRY                              |
| 4Ch            | LOG SELECT                           |
| 4Dh            | LOG SENSE                            |
| 15h            | MODE SELECT                          |
| 1Ah            | MODE SENSE                           |
| A5h            | MOVE MEDIUM                          |

**Operation code** 

#### Command

| 2Bh | POSITION TO ELEMENT            |
|-----|--------------------------------|
| 1Eh | PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL   |
| 3Ch | READ BUFFER                    |
| B8h | READ ELEMENT STATUS            |
| 1Ch | RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS     |
| 17h | RELEASE                        |
| 03h | REQUEST SENSE                  |
| B5h | REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS |
| 16h | RESERVE                        |
| 01h | RE-ZERO                        |
| 1Dh | SEND DIAGNOSTIC                |
| B6h | SEND VOLUME TAG                |
| 00h | TEST UNIT READY                |
| 3Bh | WRITE BUFFER                   |

#### **SCSI Command Format**

The SCSI command format follows the SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 standard. Table below describes the CDB fields that are common to all commands.

| Command                | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| Logical Unit<br>Number | The library has a single Logical Unit Number (LUN). The library always appears as LUN 0. If the LUN is specified in the IDENTIFY message, the LUN field in the CDB is ignored by the library.                             |
| Reserved               | The word Reserved or Rsvd refers to a field defined by the SCSI standard as 0. The library checks the field for 0. If the field is not 0, the library returns Check Condition status with a sense key of Illegal Request. |
| Control Byte           | The vendor unique portion of the Control Byte is defined in the specific command.   |
| Not<br>Implemented     | This description indicates that the field is a SCSI standard but is not supported by the library.   |

#### **SCSI Command Status Byte**

Both the Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K enter the status phase once per command, unless a retry is requested by the initiator. Table below describes the library return status bytes.

| Status                  | Value | Description   |
|-------------------------|-------|---|
| Good                    | 00h   | The library successfully completed the command.   |
| Check<br>Condition      | 02h   | An error condition occurred during command processing. The REQUEST SENSE command responds with detailed error information.  |
| Busy                    | 08h   | The target is busy. This status is returned when the device is unable to accept a command from an otherwise acceptable initiator. The initiator should reissue the command at a later time. |
| Reservation<br>Conflict | 18h   | This status is returned by the library when a SCSI initiator attempts to access the library after it is reserved by another initiator with a RESERVE command.                               |

# **SCSI** Operations

The following detail Scalar 1000 and Scalar 10K SCSI communication behavior.

#### Parity Checking

To enable parity checking on information received by the library, set the parity bit on the Parity Page of the MODE SELECT command.

#### Disconnection

The library disconnects from the SCSI bus whenever a command requires a lengthy time to complete. The library receives permission to disconnect from the initiator. The initiator grants permission by:

- Selecting the library with the Attention signal.
- Sending an Identify message with the DiscPriv bit set to 1.

Once the command processing completes, the library reselects the initiator and sends the Identify message.

#### **Resetting the Library**

The library is reset by a Power-On Reset (POR) or a SCSI Device Reset.

#### **Power-On Behavior**

- The library goes to the Bus Free phase.
- The checksum of the flash EEPROM is validated.
- All library parameters are loaded with either saved or default values.
- A Power On SelfTest is performed.
- The library responds to the SCSI bus within 10 seconds of power on.

#### **SCSI Device Reset Behavior**

- The library goes to the Bus Free phase.
- All library parameters are returned to their saved or default values.
- A Self Test is performed.
- The library responds to the SCSI bus within 250 milliseconds.

#### **Unit Attention Condition**

Unit Attentions are reported under the following circumstances:

- Reset occurred.
- A firmware (microcode) update completes.
- A library door closes.
- The Insert/Eject station closes.
- Another initiator changes the Mode Parameters.
- Another initiator changes the Log Parameters.



# **ROBAR Guide**

The ROBAR (ROBotic ARchive) software works with the Scalar DLC via the specific ROBAR interface. The ROBAR Client software is a flexible tool that works under various operating systems (Unix-based, Win9x, WinNT, Win2000, and so forth). The ROBAR interface was one of the first methods to operate the Automated Media Libraries and still remains very useful.

The ROBAR Client works with the Scalar DLC server software. Before the connection between the ROBAR Client and Scalar DLC can be established, the ROBAR Client object must be created and configured.

The sections are:

- Installation and Configuration on page 295.
- <u>ROBAR Commands</u> on page 296.
- ROBAR Command Format on page 298.
  - Command Header on page 298.
  - Command Structure on page 299.
  - <u>ROBAR Coordinates</u> on page 301.

# Installation and Configuration

- **Step 1** Install the Scalar DLC software with the ROBAR Client support on the server PC. Refer to *Scalar DLC Installation Guide, Installing Scalar DLC Software* section (either a Complete installation or a Custom installation with the ROBAR support selected). The server PC requires a restart.
- Step 2Start the Management GUI. Create the library configuration that the client requires. Refer to<br/>Configuration on page 16. Create additional mailboxes and clean pools if necessary. Refer to<br/>Create Pool on page 123 and Create Mailbox on page 125.
- **Step 3** Configure ROBAR interface to work with an appropriate port. Refer to <u>ROBAR</u> on page 172.
- **Step 4** Create a ROBAR client and assign it to the created library. Refer to <u>Create ROBAR Client</u> on page 176.
- **Step 5** Install the client application on the client PC and configure it to work with the appropriate server and port.

Example1 (for DOS or Windows-based system):

C:>\ Set PORT = 1010 C:>\ Set HOST = computer

Example2 (for Unix-like systems):

#PORT = 1010 export PORT
#HOST = computer export HOST

**Step 6** If the customer uses HCC/MVS, this also must be configured in the ROBAR client settings. Refer to <u>ROBAR Client</u> on page 174.

Now, the Scalar DLC software is ready to accept commands from ROBAR Client.

# **ROBAR Commands**

| Command | Description   |
|---------|---|
| ACOM    | Checks the communication to the Scalar DLC software and get information about the library status. |
| AOFF    | Programs end of the Scalar DLC software.  |
| AUTO    | Switches from manual or test mode to the automatic mode.  |
| BOF     | Switches the barcode reading for the sending host off.  |
| BON     | Switches the barcode reading for the sending host on.   |
| CLM     | Clean manager status and configuration command.   |
| CLU     | Closes the flap on a drive.   |
| DL      | Changes a archive catalog entry.  |
| EJ      | Ejects data cartridges - temporary.   |
| EJT     | Ejects data cartridges - complete.  |
| EJTC    | Ejects complete - used cleaning cartridges.   |
| FLIP    | Toggles the side of a Optical Disk in an Optical Disk drive.                                      |
| IN      | Inserts data cartridges by a logical range.   |
| INC     | Verifies the archive with the database by a given coordinate.                                     |
| INSC    | Inserts clean cartridges by a logical range.  |
| INV     | Inventory of a given volser.  |
| IVK     | Inventory of a given coordinate range.  |
| IVV     | Inventory of a given volser.  |
| KE      | Moves a cartridge from drive to the home position.  |

#### Table 42ROBAR Commands

#### Table 42 ROBAR Commands (Continued)

| Command | Description  |  |  |  |
|---------|--|--|--|--|
| KEC     | Moves a cartridge from drive to a given position.  |  |  |  |
| LJB     | Moves a cartridge to the I/O area of a integrated Jukebox.   |  |  |  |
| MAN     | Switches from automatic mode to the manual or test mode.   |  |  |  |
| МО      | Moves a cartridge to a drive from archive or the Insert/Eject unit.                                      |  |  |  |
| MOCL    | Initiates a drive cleaning.  |  |  |  |
| MV      | Moves a cartridge from archive or Insert/Eject unit to a coordinate in the archive or insert/eject unit. |  |  |  |
| ROPO    | Moves the robot to the given coordinate.   |  |  |  |
| ROSA    | Displays and change the library status to online.  |  |  |  |
| ROSO    | Moves the robot to a park position and set the status to not ready.                                      |  |  |  |
| SCH     | Sends the information of the first occupied compartment to the requester.                                |  |  |  |
| SIN     | Stops the running insert command.  |  |  |  |
| SIVK    | Stops the running inventory command.   |  |  |  |
| SWIT    | Toggles the library status passive-active.   |  |  |  |
| UJB     | Unloads the I/O unit of a integrated Jukebox.  |  |  |  |
| ULC     | Displays a archive catalog entry by a given coordinate.  |  |  |  |
| ULK     | Displays a archive catalog entry by a given coordinate.  |  |  |  |
| ULU     | Performs the robot to press button(s) on the drive.  |  |  |  |
| ULV     | Displays a archive catalog entry by a given volser.  |  |  |  |
| UPC     | Changes the archive catalog entry by a given coordinate.   |  |  |  |
| UPK     | Changes the archive catalog entry by a given coordinate.   |  |  |  |
| UPV     | Changes the archive catalog entry by a given volser.   |  |  |  |
| VI      | Inserts the first available Cartridge in the Insert area to the archive.                                 |  |  |  |
| VICC    | Inserts the cartridge from a given coordinate to a given target coordinate.                              |  |  |  |

VoteThe configuration of clean pools and insert/eject areas should be executed via the Scalar<br/>DLC Management GUI. Refer to Create Pool on page 123 and Create Mailbox on page<br/>125

The command is a string that contains:

- Start symbol (<)
- Command header
- Command
- Command parameters
- End symbol (>)

The standard command is a single command with a single answer. There are also block commands that contain one command, some data messages, and one answer.

Also, in some special situations, Scalar DLC will distribute a notification in this command format to all partners using the ROBAR command format.

# **Command Header**

The command header contains the following fields:

- Receiver
- Sender
- Telegram type
- Request ID

The command header format is shown in Table 43.

| Field            | Length    |                 | Example  |       |
|------------------|-----------|-----------------|--|-------|
| Receiver         | 2         | Name            | of the Receiver of the telegram.   | H1    |
|                  |           | Hx              | Requester from type "Host".  |       |
|                  |           | M1              | "Major HCC" only after a "Sign of Life" from<br>Host type "HCC/MVS".                           |       |
| Sender           | 2         | A1,<br>A2       | External name of the Scalar DLC host.  | A1    |
|                  |           | Vx              | Virtual host name (for VTLS)<br>This command will only be routed to the<br>VAMU (CentricStor). |       |
| Telegram<br>type | 2         | A00             | Standard command.  | A00   |
|                  |           | Vxx             | Message for the VAMU.  |       |
| Request ID       | Comma + 4 | 0 -<br>ZZZ<br>Z | Sequence identifier from the command originator.<br>Notification starts with the Prefix A.     | ,M085 |

# **Command Structure**

The command itself contains the following fields:

- Command header
- Command
- Acknowledge
- Returned code
- System
- Robot
- Device
- Volser
- Status
- 1st param
- 2nd param
- Time stamp
- Orig. Host ID
- Orig. Request ID

The details in command format are shown in Table 44.

| Field             | Length |                     | Value/Description   |                  |
|-------------------|--------|---------------------|---|------------------|
| Command<br>header | 9      | Comm<br>reques      | and header with information about sender and ster (refer to <u>Command Header</u> on page 298). | A1H5A00,<br>M875 |
| Command           | 4      | Name<br>notifica    | of the command or NTFY for an asynchronous ation.   | A01              |
| Acknowledge       | 1      | Messa               | ge specific response:   | Р                |
|                   |        | Р                   | Positive (command successful)   |                  |
|                   |        | Ν                   | Negative (command unsuccessful)   |                  |
|                   |        | D                   | Data (message in a block command)   |                  |
|                   |        | Е                   | End (end of block command)  |                  |
|                   |        | М                   | Asynchronous message ROBS   |                  |
| Return code       | 4      | Error o<br>notifica | or Status message in the answer/number of the ation.  | N005             |
| System            | 1 (2)  | Library<br>second   | <ul> <li>(if larger than 9, replaces the comma with the<br/>d digit of the system).</li> </ul>  | 2                |
| Robot             | 1      | Robot               | number for a twin robot system (1 or 2).  | 1                |

| Field               | Length |                  | Value/Description   | Example   |
|---------------------|--------|------------------|---|-----------|
| Device              | 3      | Dxx              | Drive name.   | D0R       |
|                     |        | 0xx              |   |           |
|                     |        | Ixx              | Logical range of the Insert/Eject unit.                     |           |
|                     |        | Exx              |   |           |
|                     |        | Рхх              | Pool name.  |           |
| Volser              | 6      | Volum            | e serial number.  | GR0815    |
| Status              | 2      | Coordi           | nate/cartridge type (1st byte):                             | MB        |
|                     |        | С                | Cleaning cartridge.   |           |
|                     |        | М                | Data cartridge.   |           |
|                     |        | 0                | Optical Disk.   |           |
|                     |        | 0                | Empty (Null).   |           |
|                     |        | Coordi           | nate/cartridge status (2nd byte):                           |           |
|                     |        | В                | Occupied.   |           |
|                     |        | Е                | Ejected.  |           |
|                     |        | М                | Mounted.  |           |
|                     |        | 0                | Optical disk mounted other side.                            |           |
|                     |        | J                | Optical disk in Jukebox.                                    |           |
|                     |        | L                | Empty.  |           |
|                     |        | 1/0              | Barcode reading on/off.                                     |           |
| 1st param           | 8      | First pa         | arameter (mainly the source coordinate)                     | 01010101  |
| 2nd param           | 8      | Secon            | d parameter (mainly, the target coordinate)                 | 00000Z01  |
| Time stamp          | 9      | Actual<br>synchr | Day, hour, minute and seconds used for<br>ronization (ROSA) | 26/211501 |
| Orig. Host ID       | 2      | Origina          | al Host ID in a HCC/MVS Major-Minor Complex                 | H7        |
| Orig.<br>Request ID | 4      | Origina<br>Compl | al Host request ID in a HCC/MVS Major-Minor<br>ex           | 0815      |

| Table 44 Command format ( | Continued) |
|---------------------------|------------|
|---------------------------|------------|

The following example represents the typical ROBAR command.

<A1H5A00,0010,MO , , ,1,2,DOR,GR0012, 1,02321810, ,26/ 211032,H1,0815>

Most ROBAR commands return an answer string that has the same structure as the command string. The answer string is returned whether the command is executed successfully or not.

# **ROBAR** Coordinates

For all physical positions in the system, the Scalar DLC software provides a signification coordinate. With the help of this coordinate, the Scalar DLC can compute the physical position. These are LSCI coordinates (the Scalar DLC database contains a coordinate decoder and uses the LSCI coordinate system as well as SCSI coordinates, and others). Refer to <u>Element Addressing</u> on page 260.

Additionally, for the Insert/Eject unit, Drives, Jukebox, and Problem box, the ROBAR interface uses special coordinates.

| Area                  | Description   | Example   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Storage area          | typical LSCI coordinate - device, column, row, position               | 01010101 (device 1, column 1, row 1, position 1)      |
| Insert area           | coordinate starts with 0001 followed by row and position              | 00010510 (row 5, slot 10)                             |
| Eject area            | coordinate starts with 0002 followed by row and position              | 00020608 (row 6, slot 08)                             |
| Foreign<br>Mount area | coordinate starts with 0003 followed by row and position              | 00030701 (row 7, slot 01)                             |
| Drive/<br>Jukebox     | coordinate starts with 0000 followed by the drive address/name and 01 | 00000F01 (drive addr. 0F)<br>0000ZQ01 (drive name ZQ) |
| Problem box           | coordinate starts with 000000 followed by number of the problem box   | 000000001 (problem box 1)                             |

Table 45ROBAR Coordinates

# Index

#### Α

Associated Documents ......1

#### С

| Command Line Interface                |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Configuration 16, 93                  |  |
| Additional 24                         |  |
| Create User 24                        |  |
| Email Notifications 24                |  |
| Installing New Slots                  |  |
| Update GCC Settings 24                |  |
| Advanced 18                           |  |
| Assign Drives to Cartridges           |  |
| Assign Partitions to a Library 19     |  |
| Configure Additional Libraries 24     |  |
| Configure Aliasing                    |  |
| Configure Clean Manager 22            |  |
| Create a Logical Library              |  |
| Create Clean Pool                     |  |
| Create Client 20                      |  |
| Create Mailbox 19                     |  |
| Create Partitions                     |  |
| Create Scratch Pool 21                |  |
| Define Drives and Cartridges 23       |  |
| Initialize the Logical Library        |  |
| Inserting New Media                   |  |
| Mark Cleaning Cartridges              |  |
| Rescan SCSI Bus                       |  |
| Reserve Drives and Cartridges 23      |  |
| Automatic 17                          |  |
| Clients 150                           |  |
| Create DAS client 160                 |  |
| Create ROBAR Client                   |  |
| Create SCSI Client                    |  |
| DAS Client 151                        |  |
| DAS Client Aliasing 159               |  |
| DAS Client Define Drives              |  |
| DAS Client Drives                     |  |
| DAS Client Properties 152             |  |
| DAS Client Reserve/Define Volsers 158 |  |
| DAS Client Volsers 157                |  |

| DAS Interface151                    |
|-------------------------------------|
| ROBAR Client                        |
| ROBAR Interface172                  |
| SCSI163                             |
| SCSI Client164                      |
| SCSI Client Drives                  |
| SCSI Client I/E Slots169            |
| SCSI Client Mode166                 |
| SCSI Client Properties164           |
| SCSI Client Storages                |
| Database Management                 |
| Archive Database                    |
| Backup Database Manually            |
| Compact Database Manually 28        |
| Restore Database from Backup 29     |
| Restore Database from File 29       |
| Schedule Database Backup 28         |
| Schedule Database Compact 28        |
| Schedule Transaction Logs Backup 28 |
| Sot Up Database Backup Mode 28      |
|                                     |
| Assign Modia to Dool 109            |
| Assign Dertition                    |
| Assign Parillion                    |
|                                     |
|                                     |
| Create Library                      |
| Create Mailbox125                   |
| Create Pool123                      |
| Drive                               |
| Drive Properties115                 |
| Drive Statistics117                 |
| Library                             |
| Library Properties                  |
| Library Resource                    |
| Library Statistics                  |
| Mailbox                             |
| Mailbox Slot113                     |
| Partition                           |
| Pool                                |
| Storage Slot 112                    |
|                                     |

| Manual                           |
|----------------------------------|
| Operating the Tape Library Doors |
| Front Door                       |
| I/E Station Door 27              |
| Physical 126                     |
| Create Partition                 |
| Drives                           |
| Library 127                      |
| Library Properties 127           |
| Library Statistics 131           |
| Mailboxes 141                    |
| Media Rules 129                  |
| Offline Cartridge 137            |
| Partition 136                    |
| Robot 132                        |
| Storage Slots 140                |
| SCSI Target 178                  |
| Create LUN 186                   |
| Create Target 185                |
| LUN 184                          |
| Port                             |
| Target 182                       |
| Users 144                        |
| Create User 149                  |
| User 147                         |
| Configuration Tab                |
| Clients Tab 150                  |
| Logical Tab                      |
| Physical Tab                     |
| SCSI larget lab 178              |
|                                  |
| Lontact GUC                      |

#### D

| DAS                     |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| commands                | 31 |
| commands overview 27    | 78 |
| client management 27    | 79 |
| DAS management 27       | 78 |
| media management        | 78 |
| scratch pool management | 79 |
| define                  | 79 |
| reserve                 | 79 |
| start                   | 78 |
| system description 27   | 77 |
|                         |    |

#### Ε

| Element Addressing | 260<br>261 |
|--------------------|------------|
| SCSI               | 260        |
| Events             | 189        |
| Acknowledge        | 194        |
| History            | 195        |
| Monitoring         | 192        |
| Queue              | 190        |

| Rules           | 195 |
|-----------------|-----|
| Events Tab      | 189 |
| Acknowledge Tab | 194 |
| History Tab     | 195 |
| Monitoring Tab  | 192 |
| Queue Tab       | 190 |
| Rules Tab       | 195 |
|                 |     |

#### G

| Glossary       255         Graphical User Interface       8         GUI Tabs       67         GUI Tabs Structure       74 |
|---|
| I   |

# 

#### L

| Library Tab               |
|---------------------------|
| Licensing                 |
| Cluster License           |
| Installing License 252    |
| Obtain License 248        |
| Standard License 248      |
| Logical Library           |
| Cartridges 82             |
| Cartridge State 84        |
| Home Position             |
| Move Cartridge to Element |
| Drives                    |
| Library                   |
| Library Diagnostics       |
| Random Mount Test         |
| Random Move Test          |
| Library Properties        |
| Mailbox                   |
| Pool                      |
|                           |

#### Μ

| Main Menu                |
|--------------------------|
| Connection               |
| Extended Service 56.60   |
|                          |
|                          |
| Registration Information |
| View Log 62              |
| Help                     |
| Screen Refresh           |
| Wizards                  |
| Assign Dertitions 40     |
|                          |
| Create Configuration     |
| Create Rule 47           |
| Create Ticket 42         |
|                          |

#### Ν

| No | tes<br>Drive Types<br>Mailbox Types | • | <br><br> | • | <br> | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | .263<br>266<br>265 |
|----|-------------------------------------|---|----------|---|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------------------|
|    | Media Types .<br>Storage Types      | • | · ·      | • | •••  | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 263<br>264         |

#### R

| Requirements                   |
|--------------------------------|
| Failover Solution 6            |
| PC 5                           |
| Tape Library7                  |
| Firmware 7                     |
| Operating Mode 7               |
| ROBAR client                   |
| installation and configuration |
| ROBAR command format           |
| command header 298             |
| command structure 299          |
| ROBAR commands                 |
| ROBAR coordinates              |
|                                |

#### S

| Scalar DLC Management GUI             | 9    |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Browser Applet                        | . 14 |
| Firewall and Proxy Issues             | . 15 |
| Browser Pre-Installation              | . 10 |
| Java Plug-In                          | 14   |
| Remote                                | 13   |
| Resizing Windows and Panes            | 10   |
| Scalar DI C Manager Application       | 15   |
| SCSI                                  |      |
| Client Installation and Configuration | 285  |
| general characteristics               | 286  |
| SCSI bus                              | 287  |
| element addressing                    | 288  |
| initiator operation                   | 287  |
| target operation                      | 288  |
| SCSI commands                         | 200  |
| device commands                       | 200  |
| SCSI command format                   | 200  |
| SCSI command status byte              | 201  |
| SCSI communications                   | 201  |
| bue phases                            | 200  |
| SCSI message system                   | 200  |
| SCSI message system                   | 209  |
| disconnection                         | 292  |
| other SCSI functionality              | 292  |
|                                       | າດາ  |
|                                       | 293  |
| panty checking                        | 292  |
|                                       | 292  |
|                                       | 292  |
| SUSI device reset benavior            | 292  |

| Service                        |
|--------------------------------|
| Cluster                        |
| Diagnostic                     |
| Logs                           |
| Command Log                    |
| Error Log                      |
| Send Log via Email             |
| Operator Panel                 |
| SNMP                           |
| Agents                         |
| Security                       |
| Traps                          |
| Service and Maintenance Alerts |
| Service Tab                    |
| Cluster Tab                    |
| Diagnostic Tab                 |
| Logs Tab                       |
| Operator Panel Tab             |
| Tickets Tab                    |
| Symbols1                       |
| System Description             |

#### U

#### Utilities

| Cluster Configurator                   |
|--|
| Database                               |
| Backup                                 |
| Compact                                |
| Extended Mode                          |
| Restore                                |
| Save                                   |
| Log Viewer                             |
| Problem Report                         |
| SCSI Target Port Tool                  |
| Trace Manager                          |
| Trace Viewer                           |
| ······································ |